Linguistic Insights

Studies in Language and Communication

Edited by Maurizio Gotti,
University of Bergamo

Volume 8

Maurizio Gotti

Specialized Discourse

Linguistic Features and
Changing Conventions

Contents

Introduction

Some readers may question the need for yet another book on specialized discourse. There are already so many titles on the subject, and it has been approached from so many different angles that it seems arduous to say something new or original. There is, however, a feeling of unease among linguists who, like myself, have examined the work published over the years in this field. Analyses are often partial and inconsistent with findings based on inadequate corpora, which are taken for granted and used to formulate unwarranted generalisations. There is also disagreement, and at times opposing views, on such fundamental aspects as the very notion of specialized discourse. For some authors it is based on a set of common features and forms an expressive resource separate from general language; for others its distinctive traits are negligible compared to similarities with the constituents of general language – to the point of denying any formal difference between the two. Some linguists have criticised the excessive selectiveness of specialized discourse, which makes it incomprehensible to the layman, while others consider formalisation fundamental to its nature – a 'legitimate privilege' (Weinrich 1985) of any disciplinary code.

The wider public viewpoint reflects the same contradictions: on the one hand specialized discourse is criticised for its obscurity and complexity, on the other hand it is treated with deference and its prestige is confirmed by the widespread tendency to quote technical terms, sometimes even inappropriately. This phenomenon has attracted the attention of copywriters, who exploit our passion for technical jargon by peppering advertising messages with specialized terminology in order to increase persuasiveness. The use of specialized discourse makes the addressee attach greater objectivity and truthfulness to a given text.

Another disagreement in the literature on specialized discourse regards the relevance of data and the possibility of generalising its findings. Once again there are different, and at times opposite, view-

points: some treat specialized languages as though they formed a homogeneous entity sharing the same phenomena and principles; others argue that a single approach is impossible, as specialized languages must be taken into consideration separately or grouped by level, genre, etc. The latter view is arguably confirmed by the findings of several studies and authors working with different texts, fields and specialized genres. The results drawn from one field cannot *per se* be extended to others; the findings for a given genre call for adjustment and additions if applied to another.

A similar difference of views is found as to the international relevance of such phenomena. Many studies focus on a single language (e.g. French in business communication, English for air-traffic control, German for mechanical engineering, etc.) while at the other end of the spectrum, scholars have also approached specific phenomena in a wider perspective, emphasising the increasing internationalisation of specialized terminology. In Western cultures, identical or similar terms tend to recur in different languages, as groups involved in a particular discipline rely on hybrid neologisms based on foreign lexis adapted to the phonology and morphology of the target language. Another flaw observed in the literature in this field is when features of general language or of the communicative context are classified as distinctive of a specialized variety. Various errors of this mistake are given in the first chapter of this volume.

The purpose of this book is therefore to review the various features of specialized discourse in order to assess its degree of specificity and diversification, as compared to general language. Prior to any analysis of such traits, the notion of specialized discourse and its distinctive properties should be clarified, also as compared to other features frequently occurring in specialized texts which cannot be considered distinctive. Whenever possible, the presence of such properties will be accounted for not only in linguistic but also in pragmatic terms (hence the preference for the term *discourse* rather than *language* to refer to the object of this analysis). Although aimed at a detailed and integrated analysis, this book does not advocate a unilateral interpretative model (which, as I argue, is untenable) but seeks to highlight the main constituent traits and generalisable features, without neglecting the peculiarities of individual disciplinary

fields. As far as possible, the approach will be interpretative rather than merely descriptive.

The complexity of this discourse calls for a multidimensional analysis, covering both lexis and morpho-syntax as well as textual patterning. Though targeted by separate chapters, such features are kept separate only for the sake of convenience; there is no doubt that they coexist and are closely interconnected, to the point that pragmatic, lexical, morphosyntactic and textual elements constantly influence one another as the discourse unfolds. These phenomena will therefore be approached in a mainly semiotic perspective, on the understanding that surface divergences point to, and are determined by, semantic-pragmatic variations. The differences observed between specialized languages and general language may therefore be viewed as evidence of markedness or foregrounding, as observed by Halliday:

A text, as well as being realised in the lower levels of the linguistic system, lexicogrammatical and phonological, is also itself the realization of higher-level semiotic structures with their own modes of interpretation, literary, sociological, psychoanalytic and so on. These higher-level structures may be expressed not only by the semantics of the text but also by the patterning at these lower levels; when such lower-level patterning is significant at some higher level it becomes what is known as 'foregrounded'. Such foregrounded patterns in lexicogrammar or phonology may be characteristic of a part or the whole of a text, or even of a whole class or genre of texts. (Halliday 1978: 138-139)

Many phenomena are well-known and have been discussed in earlier publications. The contribution of this book is to offer an integrated overview of the subject, with an account of its underlying motives. The lexical, morphosyntactic and textual features of specialized discourse have often been presented in purely descriptive terms, with no explanation of the forces which produced them. Though centred on qualitative analysis, reference will also be made to quantitative data for statistical assessment of the phenomena concerned. Such data will at times be included to highlight the significance and stability of a given phenomenon. Quantitative analysis always calls for caution because of its limited interpretative use, but no one can deny that it yields valuable data as to the dimensions of phenomena, provided

these are integrated by research into its semantic and pragmatic roots. I am in complete agreement with Halliday's view:

A distinctive frequency distribution is in itself no guarantee of stylistic relevance as can be seen from authorship studies where the diagnostic features are often, from a literary standpoint, very trivial ones. Conversely, a linguistic feature that is stylistically very relevant may display a much less striking frequency pattern. But there is likely to be some quantitative disturbance if a particular feature is felt to be prominent; and therefore, a few figures may be very suggestive. [...] A rough indication of frequencies is often just what is needed, enough to suggest why we should accept the writer's assertion that some feature is prominent in the text and to allow us to check his statements. The figures, obviously, in no way constitute analysis, interpretation or evaluation of style. (Halliday 1973:116-117)

The following analysis is therefore linguistic and not content-oriented, though at times it takes into account the epistemological theories used by specialists to explain certain options in the patterning of discourse. Indeed, there is a close link between the epistemological framework underlying each field and its realisation through language. For this reason, whenever possible, I shall also take into account the metalinguistic resources deployed in specialized texts (highlighting any explicit reference to specialized discourse) and in monographs written by scientists targeting the relationship between disciplinary epistemology and specialized language.

The texts taken into consideration are those employed by specialists to communicate with their peers; they do not include popularisations or textbooks, which serve other communicative purposes and follow linguistic-pragmatic criteria different to those of genuine specialized texts.[1] This exclusion is justified by the close link between a text's macrofunction, genre and linguistic realisation. The main objective, therefore, is to identify the distinctive traits of specialized discourse, which do not necessarily depend on a specific linguistic code, though the emphasis (for exemplification and in the bibliography) is on English in particular. At times, however, examples will be given for other languages, so as to give a deeper perspective of the phenomena considered. For a comparison between the features

---

1   However, some features of the language of popularisation are presented in Chapter 14.

---

observed in different specialized languages, equal space will be given to several disciplines across the spectrum.

Some of the issues raised here have been central to my research in recent years and have been discussed in various seminars and conference presentations (cf. References). A certain degree of overlapping between parts of this volume and earlier publications is therefore inevitable. Nevertheless, any point covered elsewhere has been revised in accordance with the book's overall approach: in particular, the opinions and examples presented in Gotti (1991), which was favourably welcomed by Italian scholars and linguists. Its use of Italian, however, made it inaccessible to most readers abroad – an obstacle that this new edition seeks to overcome. The version presented here is therefore an expanded and updated rendering of that text rather than a mere translation.

Linguistic features

I. Defining the Notion of 'Specialized Discourse'

Interest in specialized discourse dates back to the early decades of linguistic investigation.[1] In the 1920s-1930s, scholars belonging to the Prague school turned their attention to the so-called 'functional style' which characterises scientific and technical discourse (cf. Fried 1972). At first, their approach was conservative, since it tended to classify such discourse at a lower level, totally separate from the language of everyday use. Scholars sought above all to produce clear-cut definitions of the differences between specialized and general discourse:

> Differences between current English and technical English can be found at all linguistic levels and they manifest themselves in a different way both qualitatively and quantitatively. (Bareš 1972:129)

Yet the specific features of word morphology (foreign words retaining their original plural suffix, obsolete forms of verbs and adjectives) and formation (the use of typically classical prefixes, certain types of nominal premodification) pointed out in those studies are not limited to scientific or technical discourse, though they certainly occur more frequently and regularly in such varieties.

Research into the concept of 'register' published after the Second World War attempted to identify the morphosyntactic, lexical and stylistic features that characterise specialized discourse. Studies on register analysis were part of a wider enquiry into language varieties – an enquiry inspired by a new perspective on linguistic phenomena. The transition from an uncontextualised view of language, typical of the Chomskyan tradition, to its perception as a highly flexible means of communication employed in different

---

1   It is not my aim to provide a detailed history of language variation and description; only the stages functional to my argumentation will be mentioned here. For a more complete overview of the development of the studies on this subject cf. Bhatia (2002a).

situations placed the study of specialized discourse within the wider spectrum of situational-contextual varieties. The view taken by such studies has led to several taxonomies and typologies seeking to isolate the distinctive features of each situational variety (cf. Brook 1973, Bolinger 1975 and Gregory / Caroll 1978); in particular, they focus on the link between the receiver and the type of communicative or social relationship established, while highlighting the synchronic varieties shaped by geographic, social or situational factors. Here a number of 'subcodes' are seen to be at work, i.e. situational varieties specifically correlated to the topic of communication and to the approach chosen by a determined 'community' of users. Register studies by British linguists often signal a keen interest in the autonomy of specialized discourse as compared to general language; their interest in marked / unmarked forms is linked to the Firthian assumptions underpinning such studies, as shown by the following citation:

> A restricted language serves a circumscribed field of experience or action and can be said to have its own grammar and dictionary. (Firth 1957 quoted in Gregory / Caroll 1978: 26)

Without taking quite such a clear-cut view, register analysis turned its attention to the description of any feature that diverges from the default level of common language. Scholars generally concentrated on the lexical dimension, which is clearly the most marked, also in response to the recommendations of such pioneers as Halliday, McIntosh and Strevens:

> Some lexical items suffice almost by themselves to identify a certain register: 'cleanse' puts us in the language of advertising, 'probe' of newspapers, especially headlines, 'tablespoonful' of recipes or prescriptions, 'neckline' of fashion reporting or dressmaking instruction. (Halliday et al., 1964: 88)

As we shall see later in this book, however, there is far more than a straightforward lexical distinction at the root of specialized discourse. The mere identification of marked elements is not enough to account for their origin or for the rationale which has led to their appearance. Register analysis has helped, on the other hand, to shift the researchers' focus from a chiefly statistical-quantitative approach

(which continues to this day, also thanks to digital word-processing technology) and a mainly 'qualitative' approach, which seeks to identify the peculiarities of specialized texts in a perspective that is not only microlinguistic but takes into account the discourse in which they are embedded.

The last few years have seen the appearance of a great many articles and books that highlight all types of detail in various disciplinary fields and at every level of linguistic analysis. Sometimes, however, phenomena classified as distinctive of specialized discourse have turned out not to be so. An example of this analytical error may be found in research on the phonetics of specialized discourse (see, for example, Gaultier / Masselin 1973), which draws attention to difficulties experienced by speakers in the pronunciation and comprehension of specialized lexis of classical or foreign origin. Yet these features cannot be linked to specialized discourse as such, but rather to the limited competence of speakers and their poor knowledge of foreign or classical languages, which causes problems also in the pronunciation and oral comprehension of foreign or classical words occurring in everyday language.

At other times the analysis of a given register relies instead on parameters which are alien to the linguistic domain under investigation. This, for instance, is the mistake made by Charrow when, in order to define the registral status of legal language, such non-linguistic criteria as the number of users and its mode of acquisition are drawn on:

> It is not a register, as only a small proportion of the population controls it, and it is acquired only through a very special type of schooling. (Charrow 1982: 82)

It also occurs that specialized languages are often assigned certain features which do not qualify them as subsystems but as varieties stemming from other factors within their sociolinguistic setting. This is the case, for instance, of the omission of contracted forms in English technical language (cf. Sharma 1978), which is due not to its being a specialized type of discourse as such but rather to the formal variety employed in most written texts. This, of course, does not imply that several features (in this case those of a specialized language and a

formal variety) cannot coexist within the same text – a common scenario, considering the great number of different factors at play in a communicative situation. What matters is that no confusion is made between the distinctive elements of specialized discourse and features due to other factors.

Indeed, the communicative situation combines several contextual factors, making it difficult to attribute a given linguistic peculiarity to a single originating factor. This awareness has led to the identification for each specialized language of textual genres linked to sets of consistent features. For the same reason, many scholars have tried to group together the contextual factors capable of identifying the parameters which distinguish different genres within a specialized language. Thus, for legal language, Danet (1980) adapted Joos's (1961) stylistic categories for degree of formality to the different modes of text production (distinguishing between WRITTEN and ORAL, with the former subdivided into COMPOSED and SPONTANEOUS). By this route she developed a sociolinguistic scheme for the genres of legal language (cf. Table 1).

| Mode | STYLE | | | |
	Frozen	Formal	Consultative	Casual
Written	Documents: Insurance policies Contracts Landlord-tenant leases Wills	Statutes Briefs Appellate opinions		
Spoken-composed	Marriage ceremonies Indictments Witnesses' oaths Pattern instructions Verdicts	Lawyers' examinations of witnesses in trials and depositions Lawyers' arguments, motions in trials Expert witnesses' testimony	Lay witnesses' testimony	
Spoken-spontaneous			Lawyer-client interaction Bench conferences	Lobby conferences Lawyer-lawyer conversations

Table 1. Danet's (1980: 471) sociolinguistic scheme for legal genres.

As can be seen in Table 1, there are genres – e.g. wills, contracts and insurance policies – which combine highly formal traits with features typical of the written mode. Others, although written (e.g. statutes, briefs, appellate opinions) exhibit a lower degree of formality, on a par with that of witness examinations and motions, which belong to the oral mode. Also oral texts, however, may contain highly formal traits, as observed for example in verdicts, wedding vows, oaths and indictments.

These genres are highly codified and typically exhibit standardised, easily predictable sentences, often amounting to formulaic expressions. There are also less predictable genres, however, which allow for a greater degree of spontaneity and variation, both in content and expressiveness. They are usually oral and take on different levels of formality: higher in witness examinations or expert statements, lower in non-expert statements and client-lawyer conversation, right down to the informality of private conversation between lawyers.

This interrelationship between various contextual factors has led scholars to examine specialized discourse according to a coordinate system with a horizontal dimension concerning the disciplinary domain dealt with (e.g. economic discourse, legal discourse, scientific discourse, etc.) and a vertical dimension relating to its sociological 'layer' (e.g. its degree of formality and functional style). Such a coordinate system is illustrated in Figure 1.

```
(vertical LSP)

            LSP

layer n

layer 3
layer 2
layer 1

            subject 1, 2, 3 ............ subject n

            (horizontal LSP)
```
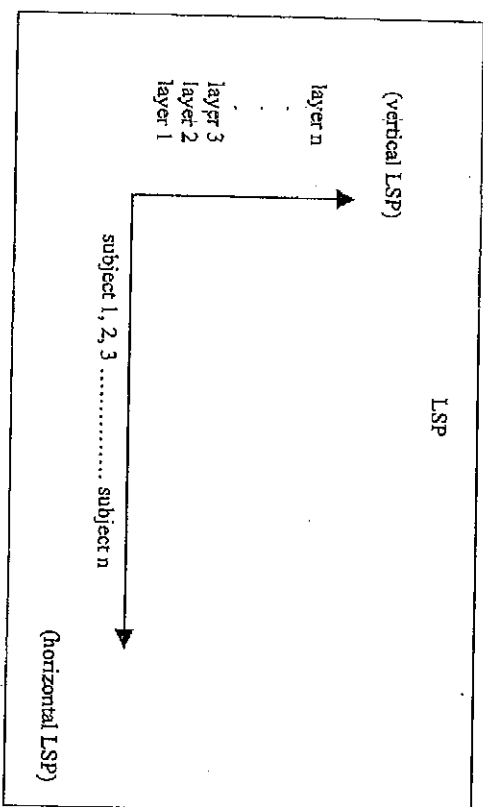
Figure 1. Coordinate system for the representation of specialized discourse (From Trosborg 1977: 16)

1. The issue of terminology

Another controversial aspect which still seeks consensus by scholars investigating specialized discourse is the term used to define its object. Different expressions are commonly used to denote this variety of use, but they are not all equally acceptable – especially when they refer to something beyond their object of study. The choice of terminology may appear secondary but is in fact central, because of the close link between term and referent which also reflects different ways of looking at language from a theoretical standpoint. Sometimes specialized discourse has been thought comparable to the notion of 'restricted language' (Wallace 1981), although the term is applied in particular to restricted codes that employ certain sentences of general language in specialized communication. This is the case, for example, of flight control communication, based on the exchange of standard messages using set phrases with a set of agreed variants (cf. Dodson

1974). Such instances, however, are rather rare and the terms 'restricted code' and 'specialized discourse' are not interchangeable because the latter exploits the language code in a far more creative and varied way.

Elsewhere the term 'special languages' has been used, but this should denote languages with special rules and symbols deviating from those of general language. An example in this class is Code Q, which is frequently used in the telecommunications sector. But here the code for communication is non-linguistic; even though it involves numbers and punctuation marks borrowed from language, it follows totally independent conventions. A few messages expressed in this code may help to clarify its nature (the translation of the messages into English is given in parenthesis):

(1)   - QOB?   [Can you communicate by radiotelephony (2182 kHz)?]
       - QOC   [I can communicate by radiotelephony (channel 16 – 156.80 MHz).]
       - QODS?   [Can you communicate with me in Italian?]
       - QODI   [I can communicate with you in English.]
       - QOF?   [What is the commercial quality of my signals?]
       - QOF3   [The quality of your signals is commercial.]
(*Manual for Use by the Maritime Mobile and Maritime Mobile-Satellite Services*, Geneva: General Secretariat of the International Telecommunication Union, 1976)

Arguably, the term 'special language' could also be applied to languages sharing the communicative conventions of a given language but also possessing other conventions which are not part of these resources. An example in this class is SEASPEAK, whose features are illustrated in Chapter 13. For the sake of terminology, therefore, the terms 'special languages' and 'specialized discourse' should be kept separate because, as we shall see below, the latter is distinguished from general language not for its use of special linguistic rules absent from general language but for its quantitatively greater and pragmatically more specific use of such conventions.

The term 'microlanguage', often employed in specialized discourse studies, is also inappropriate for its reference to a microcosm lacking the expressive richness of standard language. Specialized discourse does not appear to share the constraints and

simplifications assumed by some authors but possesses all the lexical, phonetic, morphosyntactic and textual resources of general language. Such resources are commonly employed (and sometimes even hyper-employed) in the construction of specialized texts.

I shall therefore adopt the expression 'specialized discourse', which reflects more clearly the specialist use of language in contexts which are typical of a specialized community² stretching across the academic, the professional, the technical and the occupational areas of knowledge and practice. This perspective stresses both the type of user and the domain of use, as well as the special application of language in that setting. For specialized discourse to develop, all three of these factors need to be present.

Instead the emphasis has often been placed on one factor alone, as in Halliday (1978) or Gregory / Carroll (1978), who subordinate the specificity of specialized discourse to their topic. They classify all registers according to three parameters: mode, field, and tenor. The first concerns chiefly the channel and medium of communication and the third the relationship between participants, while the second (field) regards the object of communication, i.e. its topic and everything related to it or to its realisation within the communicative event. However, the choice of specialized discourse is not determined solely by its topic, as shown in the following example:

(2)   PATIENT (to nurse): Good morning, I'm here to have my tonsils out.
      NURSE (to GP):   Doctor, there's a patient here for a tonsillectomy.

In this case the topic is the same, but is expressed through different linguistic options, especially at a lexical level. The use of specialized terminology depends on the speaker's profession (GP, nurse) and

---

2   The concept of 'community' is crucial to the field of specialized discourse as the features and forms of specialized texts are recognized and shared by the members of specific professional groups. As Candlin / Hyland aptly point out, "individuals write as community members and the specific properties of writing are seen as reflecting, and in part constituting, the interactions between members of social groups" (1999:10). Several studies have recently investigated chosen forms of language and discursive practices in different specialized communities, such as Bazerman / Paradis (1991), Cicourel (1992), Porter (1992), Bazerman (1994), Prior (1998), Swales (1998) and Hyland (2000).

presumed knowledge of lexis. This kind of use, linked to the interactants' profession, has often been classified (because of its degree of opacity) as jargon – indeed, Turner 1980 considers opacity the main feature of specialized discourse. But jargon avoids transparency in a deliberate attempt to make the message incomprehensible to outsiders, whereas in specialized discourse comprehension problems encountered by the uninitiated depend not only on unfamiliar lexis but also on conceptual content. Of course, there are cases of people using specialized terms to prevent others from understanding, but they remain the exception rather than the rule.

2. The multi-dimensional nature of specialized discourse

The world of specialized discourse is by no means as homogenous as it may at first appear. There is a clear distinction between different specialized languages, though any distinction based mainly on lexis is far too simplistic in this context. The following chapters explore the fact that disciplinary variation produces not only special lexical connotations but often also influences other options (morphosyntactic, textual and pragmatic), thus reflecting at the same time the epistemological, semantic and functional peculiarities of a given variety of specialized discourse. Specific use does not necessarily imply the presence of exclusive rules but it calls for appropriate analytical tools and caution is needed whenever the features observed in one specialized language are extended to others. Just as general language is not a uniform entity but contains many varieties, common rules and features of specialized discourse coexist with specific ones separating each variety from the others.

There is a further distinction to be made in the field of specialized languages – a distinction that cuts across each of them, determining its level of specialisation. As observed above, the mere presence of a specialist is not sufficient to ensure specialized use of a language, and this in turn is not limited to peer-communication alone. There are in fact three different situations in which a specialist may

address a topic relating to his profession. The first case is when the expert addresses other specialists to debate issues within his disciplinary field, to describe a research project, report results, explain the use of equipment, etc. If the addressees share a considerable amount of knowledge, the author can make frequent use of specialized terminology whose semantic value is taken for granted; the only words or phrases explained are those coined or re-defined by the author himself. Considering the small number of potential decoders of such specialized messages, some scholars even argue that they lack a communicative function. This is the opinion, among others, of Crystal and Davy, who claim that:

> To speak of legal language as communicating meaning is itself rather misleading. Of all uses of language it is perhaps the least communicative, in that it is designed not so much to enlighten language-users at large as to allow one expert to register information for scrutiny by another. (Crystal / Davy 1969: 193-4)

Despite its striking semantic opacity, there is no doubt that specialized discourse retains its essentially communicative function, which is an inherent quality of any type of text. This is even more crucial when (as in legal discourse) language codifies rights and duties, agreements and conventions among parties to a contract or a resolution.

The second case is when specialists address non-specialists to explain notions pertaining to their discipline. For educational purposes the meaning of specialized lexis is illustrated whenever it occurs for the first time. Typical texts of this nature are academic textbooks and instruction manuals.[3] The third case is when a specialist provides information of a technical nature mainly through everyday lexis, while drawing on the layman's everyday experience when a specialized concept is introduced. The purpose here is to reach out to a wider audience, as generally observed in newspaper or magazine articles presenting scientific or technical information (some of the features of this type of discourse are discussed in Chapter 14). These three

---

3 These texts are the object of analysis of a particular branch of specialized discourse studies, i.e. those concerning Languages for Academic Purposes. For a presentation of the main research topics and methods in this field cf. Hyland / Hamp-Lyons (2002).

situations lead to three different uses of language, or rather to three levels of specificity in language use, which Widdowson (1979) terms 'scientific exposition', 'scientific instruction' and 'scientific journalism'; it is clear, however, that only the first two involve a truly 'specialist' use of language.

Some authors (see for example Altieri Biagi 1974) also allow for a fourth level – the highest in the hierarchy – namely 'formalisation' or 'condensation into formulae'. There is a fundamental difference, however, between this level and the three previously mentioned, since it relies on non-verbal rather than verbal language. An example is the botanic formula for a flower cited by Altieri Biagi (cf. Figure 2):

$$\female \oplus K\,(5)\ C\,(5)\ A\infty \div 5\ G\,(5)$$

Figure 2. Botanic formula for a flower (From Altieri Biagi 1974: 90).

This formula, which condenses the structural qualities of a hermaphrodite flower with a symmetric radial configuration, a five-sepal calyx, a five-petal corolla and five stamens, does not employ the conventions and elements of a verbal code but points directly to its own symbolic conventions. This distinction does not rule out the presence of a formalised level in specialized texts, nor does it disprove Altieri Biagi's observation that all scientific disciplines tend to adopt symbolic formulations, in a desperate attempt to steer clear of the connotative constraints of general language. The search for pure denotation, however, often leads specialists to avoid the verbal code, which is inherently polysemous. When combined with the inherent conciseness of specialized communication, this tendency generates a wealth of formulae, symbols, flow-charts, diagrams and other non-verbal conventional codes.

The constant presence of non-verbal elements in specialized texts led Widdowson (1979: 52) to speculate that they form the 'deep structure' of such texts – similar to a 'universal' knowledge-bank forming the basis of specialized discourse. He argues that when this

deep structure is textualised, it codifies into specialized discourse in the following manner (cf. Figure 3):
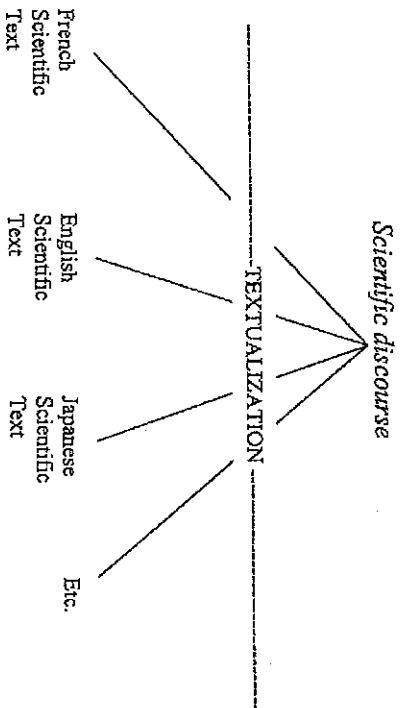
Figure 3. Widdowson's (1979: 52) diagram representing the 'deep structure' of specialized texts.

Widdowson includes non-verbal elements (formulae, diagrams, tables, etc.) in the deep structure of specialized discourse, on the assumption that they are 'universal' and independent of any single language. It is difficult, however, to accept this view because of the largely conceptual nature of non-verbal elements, which simply offer an alternative, non-linguistic representation of specialized notions. The aforesaid diagram could therefore be revised as shown in Figure 4.

3. General features of specialized discourse

The numerous partial analyses in this field are backed up by studies devoted to the general characteristics at the basis of specialized discourse. They concentrate particularly on the pragmatic criteria reflected in the various features of its varieties. Without attempting to provide a complete or detailed picture of all these studies, I shall mention two significant contributions to our understanding of the subject.
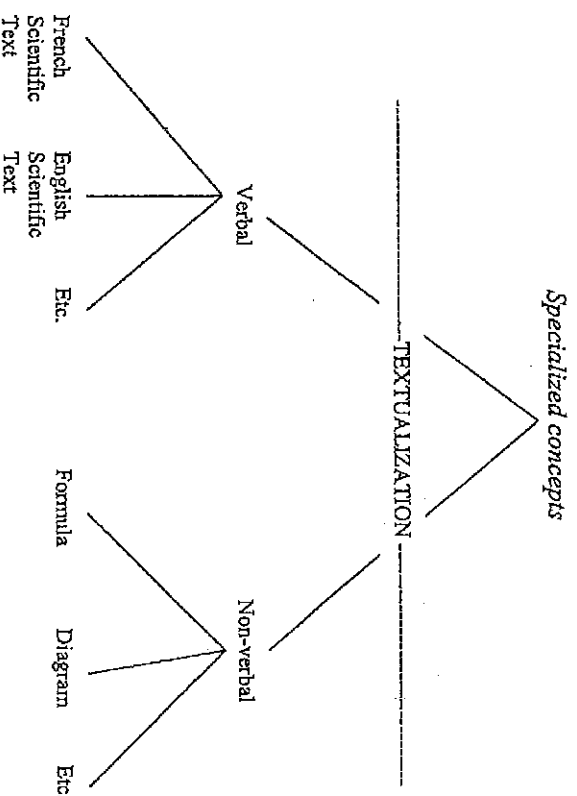
Figure 4. Revised diagram representing the 'deep structure' of specialized texts.

Hoffmann (1984) provides a long list of the desirable qualities of specialized discourse. In a concise form, he reviews eleven main points:

1. exactitude, simplicity and clarity;
2. objectivity;
3. abstractness;
4. generalization;
5. density of information;
6. brevity or laconism;
7. emotional neutrality;
8. unambiguousness;
9. impersonality;
10. logical consistency;
11. use of defined technical terms, symbols and figures.

Even without an analytic discussion or a full illustration of each feature, and despite certain flaws in its structure (some categories are not very consistent[4] while others are repeated[5]) this list offers a concise overview of the different points highlighted by various scholars. Its most obvious shortcoming seems to be the excessive generalisation of these criteria. As we shall see, not all the criteria mentioned by Hoffmann are applicable to all specialized languages, and likewise the criteria chosen for a given specialized language are not always applicable to its various genres. There are also inconsistencies in Hoffmann's criteria: the need for clarity may conflict with simplicity, the need for unambiguous expression may at times make it impossible to ensure conciseness or abstractness. Hoffmann's study does not discuss such conflicting links and fails to identify which criteria become dominant in a situation of conflict.

The issue is taken up, albeit briefly, by Sager et al. (1980) who hypothesise three main criteria governing the choices made in specialized discourse. They are the same criteria that inspire Shannon and Weaver's (1949) linguistic theory, with its emphasis on the need for accuracy in the conveyance of a message, precision in the linguistic signs employed to express the required meaning, and perlocutory effectiveness of the message for successful communication. Drawing on this model, Sager et al. suggest three dominant criteria in specialized discourse: i.e. economy, precision and appropriateness. These are considered interdependent, in that maximum communicative effectiveness is achieved when the requirements of all three are satisfied. Sager et al. aptly remark that the degree of interdependence varies according to the communicative situation. They also point out that these three criteria are inherent in the general language system and that their balance ensures maximum efficiency within the specialized communicative process. If conflict arises between the first two (economy and precision), the criterion of appropriateness becomes decisive:

---

4   For example, as regards the first point, the criteria of exactitude and simplicity are not always easy to reconcile.

5   This is the case, for instance, of 'clarity' in the first category and 'unambiguousness' in the eighth.

Appropriateness is the measure of the effectiveness of the intention as it is expressed and understood in a message and, at the same time, it arbitrates between precision and economy. It decides the amount and type of cognitive effort involved in a speech act and therefore influences the presuppositions that can be made about prior knowledge. It regulates the explicitness of the psychological intention and therefore influences the assumptions that can be made about the correct interpretation of the intention of text forms. (Sager et al. 1980: 323)

Sager et al.'s criteria constitute a landmark in interpretation because they approach language as the outcome of decisions and choices within a global semiotic dimension. They also emphasise the interrelationship between semantic and pragmatic requirements in the general language system to which specialized communication belongs. However, as this scheme borrows its principles from general linguistic theory, it is somewhat constrained and limited as a result. The first two criteria (economy and precision) are clearly subordinate, in terms of quantity and quality, compared to those actually governing the production of specialized discourse. A brief look at Hoffmann's taxonomy is sufficient to confirm this observation. Even the criterion of appropriateness – which admittedly draws attention to the pragmatic orientation of utterance production – remains trapped within a conceptual fuzziness that is observable also in general language (Sager et al. themselves recognize the 'elusive nature' of their appropriateness criterion). The aforementioned study represents, nevertheless, an interesting effort to move beyond the mere description of linguistic phenomena and offers a practicable approach to their interpretation. The following chapters will discuss which criteria seem to influence the expressive choices of specialists and, when conflict arises among such criteria, which of these are hierarchically dominant.

II. Lexical Features of Specialized Discourse

This chapter analyses the main lexical features of specialized discourse. In particular, it first reviews the findings of leading studies in the field, especially those employing controversial criteria or criteria that are not applicable to all specialized languages as such.

1. Monoreferentiality

The most widely-investigated distinctive feature of specialized lexis, as compared to general language, is monoreferentiality. The term 'mono-referentiality' is not used here to indicate that each term has only one referent, as words generally have several referents, but to signal that in a given context only one meaning is allowed. Indeed, specialized lexis stands out not only for its limited, highly specific occurrence but also for its semantic uniqueness: due to the 'protected status' (Pearson 1998) words acquire in specialized subject domains, denotation is prevalent and the meaning of specific terms may be inferred without reference to their context. Term and concept are related by a fixed 'defining agreement' (Bloomfield 1939: 48), whereby the term cannot be suitably substituted by a synonym but only by its definition or a paraphrase. Sinclair defines this 'terminological tendency' as:

> the tendency for a word to have a fixed meaning in reference to the world, so that anyone wanting to name its referent would have little option but to use it, especially if the relationship works in both directions. (Sinclair 1996: 82)

This means that every term signals a concept and effectively condenses the semantic value contributed by the defining process which generated it. The highly referential nature of terminology is a major advantage for conciseness (which, as discussed later, is another

fundamental criterion of specialized languages). As Naess rightly observes with regard to the defining process:

> The special merit of definition is not that it allows us to say more, but that because a *definiendum* is much shorter than a *definiens* and the latter contains a high level of preciseness, once having stated a definition we can express in a few lines what, without its help, would require many volumes. The relevance of this to the exact sciences, which are largely made up of definitions, should be obvious. (Naess 1966: 54)

The need for a single referent generally means that users are forced to create new terms, rather than use existing terminology, in order to define new concepts without ambiguity or misunderstandings. Piesse summarises the prevalent rule among specialists as follows:

> Never change your language unless you wish to change your meaning, and always change your language if you wish to change your meaning. (Piesse 1987: 58)

Monoreferentiality is, of course, limited to the disciplinary field in which a term is employed. It is not surprising, therefore, that dictionaries list several definitions of the same term, each applicable to a separate context. Each scientific field adopts its own epistemology for theoretical speculation, and this implies specific languages that sometimes contain lexical items occurring also in other disciplinary contexts.

The difficulty of substituting a term with its synonym has major consequences for lexical choices made in the textualisation of specialized discourse and produces a certain lexical repetition. Consequently, while in literary texts the type / token ratio is around 1, in specialized texts it drops to far lower values. According to a survey of Russian specialized texts (Mitrofanova 1973, quoted in Nencini Rotunnó / Lasorsa Siedina 1988: 15), the ratio varies from 0.043 to 0.135, reaching the lowest values in theoretical mechanics and biology. In technical jargon, specialized texts may therefore be classed as lexically 'poor'. As a result, the number of lexical items found in each specialized field is not particularly large. For example, as observed by Mitrofanova (1973, quoted in Nencini Rotunno / Lasorsa Siedina 1988: 15-16), the basic lexis of Russian theoretical mechanics

amounts to 480 words, which alone form up to 91% of texts in this discipline. Hoffmann (1979) confirms the dearth of specialized lexical resources (though his data reach higher figures) not only in Russian but also in French and English. As for English, Hoffmann claims that 85% of any medical text relies on the 1,178 most frequently-used medical terms, while the proportion is 86% of the 1,114 in mathematics.

The relative dearth of lexical resources in each discipline is due primarily to the scientific community's effort to avoid alternative terms for the same concept. This need arose in the 17th-18th centuries in response to research by such pioneers as Galileo, Newton and Lavoisier. The pursuit of a perfectly biunivocal link between concept and language was so urgent in the 1700s that scientists in various parts of Europe sought not only to eradicate ambiguity from everyday language but also to create a new universal language unfettered by the historical and geographical constraints of each country and capable of expressing both clearly and directly the new concepts employed by the international scientific community. This effort induced, among others, John Wilkins (a founding member of the Royal Society) to write an entire treatise on the need for a universal language of learning: *An Essay towards a Real Character and a Philosophical Language* (for more details about this issue cf. Chapter 5).

2. Lack of emotion

Another feature of specialized languages highlighted in the literature is their lack of emotive connotations. Unlike words (which are often richly connotated), terms have a purely denotative function. The word *lion*, for instance, is generally associated with such qualities as fierceness, aggressiveness, pride, majesty, etc.; in specialized language these connotations are lost. For zoologists, *lion* means a specific feline species, in heraldry it is a conventional symbol used in coats of armour, and so on. The tone of specialized discourse is usually neutral, as its illocutionary force derives from the logical,

consequential arrangement of concepts and of supporting evidence rather than the use of emphatic language. The informative purpose of specialized language prevails over other traits (emotive, aesthetic and other) typical of general language, lending professional communication a seemingly cold and artificial tone. Moreover, as aptly observed by Johnson and Sager, the monoreferentiality inherent in the defining process of specialized terms maximises their semantic value, making emphasis redundant:

> In general reference, if a particular attribute is to be emphasized, the emphasis must be achieved by contextual contiguity, syntactic devices, additional reference, etc., but in special codes the emphasis is already present through prior delineation of the subspace, which effectively excludes all attributes (dimensions) which are not assigned by the social norm to the discipline. (Johnson / Sager 1980: 87)

It is evident that, lack of emotion prevails whenever a text is mainly informative. If the pragmatic purpose is persuasive (as for example in advertising messages or in argumentative texts), the emphasis on emotion surfaces also in specialized texts. This confirms the superiority of needs stemming from the pragmatic purpose of discourse, as encoded by linguistic choices made at the lexical, morphosyntactic and textual level.

3. Precision

Another characteristic of specialized lexis is referential precision. Every term must point immediately to its own concept. This requirement excludes the recourse to indirect reference systems in specialized communication, through such devices as euphemism. Also this phenomenon arose in response to the need for precision advocated by the scientific revolution of the 17th century. As evidence of the inappropriateness of euphemisms in legal language, reference may be made to the case mentioned by Pannick (1985) of a Cambridge don reported to the academic authorities for immoral behaviour towards a student. The complaint, however, was insufficient for the professor to

be charged, because of the euphemistic wording used by the authorities ("[She was] walking with a member of the University"). Despite their insistence that in academic circles the expression was an equivalent of the more overt form 'to be in company' with an undergraduate for an immoral purpose", the court rejected the University's complaint on the grounds that 'to be walking with a member of the University' does not constitute a criminal offence under common law or any official law or explicit rule contained in the statute of the University. Despite the sworn statement made to the court by the Pro-Proctor of the University of Cambridge, confirming that the expression clearly referred to the professor's immoral behaviour (she was openly defined by the Pro-Proctor "to be a reputed prostitute"), the judge upheld the literal meaning of the complaint, acquitting the professor with the following motivation:

> Nobody would suppose that a person simply walking with a member of the University, who might be that member's mother, or sister, or wife, or friend, was guilty of an offence against the law which would justify the Vice-Chancellor in imprisoning him or her. (Pannick 1985: 135)

4. Transparency

Another important feature of specialized lexis is the possibility to promptly access a term's meaning through its surface form. This criterion was particularly valued by the French chemist Lavoisier, who developed a new naming system for chemical compounds to allow readers to immediately identify the nature of the compound concerned. The system reflects the author's globally coherent view of science and covers both its conceptual and terminological dimension. In his preface to the famous *Méthode de Nomenclature Chimique* (1787), co-authored with G. de Morveau, C.I. Berthollet and A.F. Fourcroy, Lavoisier remarks that every science comprises three elements: a body of facts, the ideas based on these facts, and the words used to express such ideas. As an idea should refer directly to the facts observed, likewise the terms used should immediately

suggest the idea they express. Under this coherent system, built on three closely-linked elements, nomenclature has to convey facts and ideas precisely – indeed, almost graphically – without any additions or deletions.

The use of mostly Greek-based suffixes dates as far back as the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, although the best choice when coining a neologism was often a matter of the author's personal preference. Under Lavoisier's reform, each suffix was assigned a precise meaning that allowed a functional distinction of similar terms (e.g. *nitric acid* and *nitrous acid*, *sulphite* and *sulphate*) and clearly established the physical properties shared by compounds employing the same suffix. This change introduced a systematic order to specialized knowledge, whilst providing rules of terminological development not only for the redefinition of known elements but also for naming new elements as they were discovered. Before Lavoisier's reform, terminology was coined according to divergent criteria, based on such arbitrary assumptions as reference to the element's appearance, the name of its originator or its possible applications. As an example, one may compare the following chemical terms before and after publication of Lavoisier's treatise: *blue vitriol (copper sulphate)*, *Rochelle salt (potassium sodium tartarate)*, *salt of wormwood (potassium tartarate)*, *tartar emetic (potassium antimony tartarate)* (examples from Hogben 1969: 29).

A similar attempt was made in Linnaeus's *Systema Naturae*, published in 1737, which divided the natural world into three main categories (animal, vegetable, mineral), each comprising separate groups and subgroups (e.g. genera, orders, classes) divided according to clear, coherent criteria signalled by Latin or Greek terms. The frequent use of classical words in science reflects the widespread effort of 18th century scientists to avoid the lexis of general language, prone to dangerous misunderstandings and ambiguities associated with everyday use. By drawing their lexical repertoire from two dead languages, scientists could redefine the natural elements with univocal meanings; free of the polysemy so common in a living language.[1] The

---

[1] A confirmation of the advantage offered by the use of Latinate terminology can be found in the following remark by Jacob Berzelius (1779-1848), one of the creators of the nomenclature of chemistry: "Learned men need expressions

value of Linnaeus's nomenclatory system is confirmed by its integral application to the present day, not only for terminology but also for defining new items. An example of this is the surviving use of the suffix *-ptera* proposed by Linnaeus for each order of insects: *Coleoptera, Hemiptera, Lepidoptera, Neuroptera, Hymenoptera, Diptera.*

A considerable advantage afforded by this kind of system is its extension of the principle of transparency also to other fields (such as medicine) where the separate lexical components of a specialised term can easily be decoded to reconstruct the meaning of the whole word. Thus, there is a correlation between the qualitative and quantitative aspect, with each adjunct to the lemma signalling also a semantic addition. The convenience of this system for lexical formation is illustrated by the following example: when processing the term *gastroenterology*, we recognise its components *gastro*, *entero* and *logy*, which in turn point to three semantic equivalences: *gastro* = stomach, *entero* = intestine, *logy* = study. By joining these part-meanings together, the overall meaning of the term *gastroenterology* is identified as 'study of the stomach and intestine'. The composite organisation of specialized languages is noticeable not only in their highly codified terminological formation but also in the arrangement of words. Biology, for example, has taxonomies constructed along clearly-defined lines, whereby each item is generally classified by two terms: the first for its genus, the second for its species (e.g. *Felis leo, Homo sapiens*).

One of the most widely employed devices ensuring transparency in specialized discourse is the use of conventional affixes, which have acquired precise values in each discipline as a result of the aforementioned systematisation and standardisation process. The structure of such affixes regulates the cataloguing of terms in logical categories but also allows (and fosters) the enlargement of each category within an open system that is both highly organised and codified. In such disciplines as chemistry, medicine and mineralogy suffixes have a clearly-defined meaning. For example, in chemistry or

---

common to many languages even if they use their local ones. Due to the use of Latin expressions in the nomenclatures, terms become stable and are used in the same way by different authors." (Quoted in Laurén 2002: 92)

mineralogy the suffix *-ite* denotes derivatives of other elements – usually mineral compounds (e.g. *magnetite, calcite, fluorite*). These examples show that despite the process of simplification and rationalisation, certain suffixes retain more than one meaning and function. Their polysemy originates from the incomplete re-organisation of defining processes in each discipline and from the constantly evolving nature of scientific knowledge, which is often so rapid that there is no time to develop new linguistic tools suited to the purpose; in such cases, rather than create new items, existing lexemes are often assigned new meanings and functions.

5. Conciseness

Another highly-regarded criterion applied to word-formation by specialists is conciseness, which means that concepts are expressed in the shortest possible form. The need for conciseness generally leads to a reduction in textual surface, as for example in zero derivation (far more frequent here than in general language), which allows the omission of affixes. Examples in Italian are: *saldo* from *saldare, convalida* from *convalidare, utilizzo* from *utilizzare, rimborso* from *rimborsare*, and so forth.

Another neological process in this class is the merging of two lexemes into a single term. Possible instances include the Italian *informatica* (a loan translation of the French *informatique*, which in turn contains the two lexemes *information + automatique*) and *telematica*, produced by the merging of *telecomunicazione* and *informatica*. In other cases, greater conciseness is achieved through reduction of the term itself, either internally (cf. *urinalysis* is a reduced form of *urinoanalysis*, and *contraception* of *contra-conception*) or terminally (e.g. *haemostat* for *haemostatic forceps*).

Another type of conciseness device observed in specialized languages is juxtaposition, which omits prepositions and premodifiers in nominal groups containing two nouns. Italian examples are *estratto conto*, with omission of the preposition + article *del*, and the term

analista-programmatore, which concisely denotes an analyst who also works a programmer.

Sometimes conciseness in specialized discourse relies on acronyms and abbreviations. An example of this are sentences used in oral medical texts: "We had a DOA last night" (= dead on arrival), "He entered in a bad DKA" (= diabetic ketoacidosis), "[I'm giving the patient] oids" (= steroids / corticosteroids), "Was this man anemic PTA?" (= prior to admission) (examples from Christy 1979).

6. Conservatism

As mentioned earlier, one of the main principles asserted by 17th-18th century scientists was the need to redefine specialized concepts and replace existing (often imprecise or synonymous) terms with new ones, usually drawn from classical languages for greater mono-referentiality. The same innovative thrust is not found, however, in all fields of knowledge. For some, such as the law, the trend is, instead, intensely conservative. Fear that new terms may lead to ambiguity favours the permanence of traditional linguistic traits, which are preserved even when they disappear from general language. Old formulae are preferred to newly-coined words because of their century-old history and highly codified, universally accepted interpretations. Conservatism of this type accounts for the custom of opening the preface to many English legal texts with the conjunction *whereas*. This conventional signal parallels the use of *cum, quum, quandoquidem* and *quoniam* in Latin legal texts, or of *là* and *où* in French legal texts. The reverence for tradition observed in legal language is also due to its close link with the ancient practice of using special formulae for oaths or appointments, for drafting edicts and statutes, for issuing laws, conferring honours or assigning property. In this context, formulaic language used to ensure the action's validity.

An amount of conservatism is also found in business language, where a number of age-old terms and expressions may still be encountered and have not been replaced because their meaning is

crystallised and widely accepted across the discourse community. In shipping contracts, for instance, the term *bill of lading* includes an antiquated form of the modern word *loading*, which has survived to this day only in this kind of document.

Some disciplines are conservative to the utmost degree, producing a language whose subservience to tradition leads to empty archaic formulae. An example of this in legal lexis are the antiquated forms *whosoever, wherefore, thereof, forthwith, henceforth, thereto-fore, hitherto*, etc. and lexemes which have disappeared from general language, such as *expiration, terminate, deem, upon*. The archaic nature of legal discourse is also seen in the use of third-person singular *-eth* with the present indicative of verbs (e.g. *witnesseth* instead of *witnesses*) that in modern English bear the morpheme *-(e)s*. A similar case is the obsolete auxiliary form *doth* instead of its modern equivalent *does*.

6.1. Reforming legal discourse

Legal discourse has often been criticised, even by legal experts. Sometimes it has attracted fierce condemnation, like Francis Bacon's reference to its "prolixity [...] tautologies and impertinences" (cited in Mellinkoff 1963: 193) or Jeremy Bentham's deploration of its extreme "voluminousness, indistinctness, and unintelligibility" (Bentham 1843: 332). Criticism of legal language is found also in literary works, which often convey an extremely negative view of legal argumentation. In *Utopia*, for instance, Thomas More has no place for lawyers in his ideal world, because they are "a sort of people whose profession is to disguise matters" (cited in Mellinkoff 1963: 202). Even worse is Jonathan Swift's opinion of the profession described in *Gulliver's Travels*:

> I said there was a Society of men among us, bred up from their Youth in the Art of proving by words multiplied for the Purpose, that White is Black, and Black is white, according as they are paid. [...] It is a Maxim among these lawyers, that whatever hath been done before, may legally be done again: And therefore they take special care to record all the Decisions formerly made against common Justice and the general Reason of mankind. These, under the name of precedents, they produce as Authorities to justify the most iniquitous

> Opinions; and the Judges never fail of directing accordingly. [...] It is likewise to be observed, that this Society hath a peculiar Cant and Jargon of their own, that no other Mortal can understand, and wherein all their Laws are written, which they take special Care to multiply; whereby they have wholly confounded the very Essence of Truth and Falsehood, of Right and Wrong. (Swift 1726 / 1947: 295-7)

Many magistrates and legal experts now advocate an end to the use of archaic formulae and obsolete lexis. Judge Staughton (1987, 1988), for instance, has written articles in legal journals urging his colleagues to abandon the use of certain lexemes (e.g. *verily, crave, learned*) which have lost their original semantic value, becoming either redundant or inaccurate in referential denotation. His reforming zeal is reflected in the following statement:

> Could 1987 be the year in which advocates in court and those who swear affidavits say what they mean, in language which ordinary people can understand and without conscious archaism? (Staughton 1987: 50)

The need for reform in legal language is especially felt as regards interpretative difficulties of statutes and circulars, which target not only specialists but also the general public. In the 1970s, this need gave rise in the United States to the Plain English Movement, whose efforts to obtain a reform of legal language eventually convinced President Jimmy Carter to issue guidelines for the use of "clear and simple English" in all government regulations. This change in language use was not limited to government documents but soon spread to other public and private organisations, such as banks and insurance companies, which thoroughly revised the standard expressions allowed in their forms and contracts. The following paragraph is taken from a sample contract for a bank loan before (TEXT A) and after (TEXT B) the redrafting process (from Charrow / Crandall 1978):

(1)

TEXT A

In the event of default of this or any other obligation or the performance or observance of any term or covenant contained herein or in any note or any other contract or agreement evidencing or relating to any obligation or any collateral on the borrower's part to be performed or observed; or the undersigned borrower shall die; or any of the undersigned become insolvent or

make assignment for the benefit of creditors; or a petition shall be filed by or against any of the undersigned under any provision of the Bankruptcy Act, or any money, securities or property of the undersigned now or hereafter on deposit with or in the possession or under the control of the Bank shall be attached or become subject to distraint proceedings or any order or process of any court; or the bank shall deem itself to be insecure, then and in any such event, the Bank shall have a right (at its option), without demand or notice of any kind, to declare all or any part of the obligations to be immediately due and payable, whereupon such obligations shall become and be immediately due and payable, and the Bank shall have the right to exercise all the rights and remedies available to a secured party upon default under the Uniform Commercial Code (the 'Code') in effect in New York at the time and such other rights and remedies as may otherwise be provided by law.

(2)

TEXT B

I'll be in default:
(1) If I don't pay an installment on time; or
(2) If any other creditor tries by legal process to take any money of mine in your possession.

Apart from the many syntactic and textual transformations observable in this example, for which the reader is referred specifically to the next two chapters, there are also lexical changes affecting such obsolete terms as *distraint, assignment* (meaning a 'transfer of rights, stock or interest'), *note* (meaning 'contract'), *attached* (meaning 'seized') and *insecure* (meaning 'uncertain of repayment'), which are replaced by the more familiar *installment, creditor, take money, possession*.

In order to implement this Plain Language policy, several official guidelines have been drawn up to make public documents easy to read and interpret. Here, for instance, are some requirements specified by a recent Pennsylvania law:

(1) The contract should use short words, sentences and paragraphs.
(2) The contract should use active verbs.
(3) The contract should not use technical legal terms, other than commonly understood legal terms, such as 'mortgage', 'warranty' and 'security interest'.
(4) The contract should not use Latin or foreign words or any other word whenever its use requires reliance upon an obsolete meaning.
(5) If the contract defines words, the words should be defined by using commonly understood meanings.

(6) When the contract refers to the parties to the contract, the reference should use personal pronouns, the actual or shortened names of the parties, the terms 'seller' and 'buyer' or the terms 'lender' and 'borrower'.
(7) The contract should not use sentences that contain more than one condition.
(8) The contract should not use cross references, except cross references that briefly and clearly describe the substance of the item to which reference is made.
(9) The contract should not use sentences with double negatives or exceptions to exceptions.

(*Pa. Stat. Ann.* tit. 73, § 2205(b), 1997 quoted in Tiersma 1999: 224)

This reforming movement has been so strong in the United States that it has inspired similar movements in other countries for clearer language in the drafting of government circulars and statutes (cf. Stanimesco 2002 for France; Wieners-Horts 2002 for Germany; Murgia / Rizzoni 2002 for Italy; Danet 1980 for Norway; Asprey 1991 and Ehrenberg-Sundin 2002 for Sweden; Asprey 1991 for the United Kingdom; Asprey 1991 for Australia, Canada, Denmark, India, New Zealand and South Africa). Indeed, it is in the field of business and governmental documents that the simplifying and reorganising action of the Plain Language Movement has been more successful (cf. Danet 1990). Instead, despite continued efforts by reformers, changes to legal language have been few and far between.[2] The survival of archaic linguistic forms has been attributed, among other things, to the use of standardised formulae as a convenient smokescreen for law-makers and lawyers unwilling to relinquish the "comforts of precedent" (Procaccia 1979). Even less noble motives are alleged to bolster the conservatism and imprecision of legal language, which increases the amount of speculation (and work) for legal practitioners.
An example of this is Danet's view that:

---

2   For example, a year after having put forth his proposals, Staughton had to admit that they had found scarse support in the legal circle: "Fifteen months ago I suggested a New Year's resolution for those who draft affidavits – not to write that the deponent believes anything *verify*. Some adopted it, but like most New Year's resolutions it has not proved to be of lasting effect" (Staughton 1988: 19)

> If legal language were always so precise, there would never be disagreements over the meaning of contracts, and people would never have to go to court to resolve their differences. (Danet 1980: 541)

Another, more ideological motive, is the preference of lawyers and law-makers for obscure legal language as a means to retain their power over ordinary citizens, relying on exclusive access to the hidden significance of laws and legal procedures. In this view, courtroom debates are in the hands of those proficient in legal jargon, which allows control of specialist knowledge and information. The picture is typical not only of legal practitioners but may be extended to other specialist fields (e.g. the master-servant relationship established by specialized language in doctor-patient interactions). As Bloch rightly argues:

> Because the formalization of language is a way whereby one speaker can coerce the response of another [...] it can be seen as a form of social control. (Bloch 1975: 20)

7. Ambiguity in specialized discourse

The survey of the literature on specialized discourse has enabled us to identify the main criteria which influence the creation of specific terminology. Our analysis of the texts taken into consideration, however, has highlighted several exceptions to those principles. For example, as regards the criterion of monoreferentiality, many texts show frequent violations to that principle, and the presence of many cases of ambiguity and polysemy. At times this ambiguity is not planned, but in other cases it is the result of the author's decision. This is, for instance, the position adopted by those economists who are against the use of a monoreferential type of language because of its excessive rigidness and its inability to describe complex phenomena in an adequate way. This linguistic view is a consequence of a clear methodological choice, which opposes a positivistic approach to economic epistemology. An exponent of this methodological stand is Keynes, who is convinced that:

> too large a proportion of recent 'mathematical' economics are merely concoctions, as imprecise as the initial assumptions they rest on, which allow the author to lose sight of the complexities and interdependencies of the real world in a maze of pretentious and unhelpful symbols. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 298)

What makes a formalized language inappropriate for the discussion of theoretical matters, not only in Keynes' principles but in economics in general, is that the univocal reference of each term in the vocabulary to a specified concept cannot take into account the need to give words different meanings in different contexts, and at different points in the procedure. Such a language can be useful only in those disciplines in which theoretical discussion does not call for multiple definitions of the concepts they employ. This does not apply to economics, where the complexity and interconnectedness of its parts do not permit atomistic analysis. As Keynes puts it:

> It is a great fault of symbolic pseudo-mathematical methods of formalising a system of economic analysis [...] that they expressly assume strict independence between the factors involved and lose all their cogency and authority if this hypothesis is disallowed; whereas in ordinary discourse, where we are not blindly manipulating but know all the time what we are doing and what the words mean, we can keep 'at the back of our heads' the necessary reserves and qualifications and the adjustments which we shall have to make later on, in a way in which we cannot keep complicated partial differentials 'at the back' of several pages of algebra which assume that they all vanish. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 297-8)

According to Keynes, translating thought into the precise and unequivocal terms of a symbolic-mathematical language is an obstacle to the further development of that thought itself, as the continuous conceptual changes require a more flexible expressive system allowing for a constant redefinition of the referents of the terms employed. This inadequacy induces Keynes to accuse symbolic-mathematical language of causing confusion and misunderstanding. As a matter of fact, the possible confusion does not derive from the specialized discourse employed – which, instead, is extremely precise – but from the fact that this instrument, which is typical of the positivistic sciences (where univocal reference to phenomena and concepts highlights the objective referential function), is used

(obviously, with unsatisfactory results) also for a non-positivistic science such as economics.[3]

The need to differentiate specialized disciplines into different kinds of sciences is also felt by Keynes himself, who is convinced that economics cannot be included in the category of the exact sciences but in that of the moral sciences.[4] In inserting economics in a particular specialized group, Keynes is aware that consistent linguistic consequences will be drawn from this choice, due to the strict relationship existing between the epistemological and the linguistic aspects of each discipline. In his choice of everyday language, Keynes adopts the tripartite division proposed by Malthus, who – in examining the definitional processes adopted in various specialized branches – identifies the definitional patterns employed in three main research fields: the mathematical sciences and the natural sciences and the moral sciences. Each type of science is characterised by a particular kind of language and therefore adopts its own definitional pattern (for a detailed analysis cf. Chapter 10).

In the moral sciences, the use a person makes of a certain term determines the meaning that he attributes to it. The author may base his definition on the existing meaning(s) of a specific term, but he may also provide a very idiosyncratic definition corresponding to his own view of the world. This 'nominal' definition confers the authors's personal value on the term, which is then to be adopted by the interlocutor as a premise for the correct interpretation of the text. Indeed, as Mangler and Kessen remark:

> The fact that the reader may disagree with any or all of these definitions is not relevant to the use of nominal definitions. They are stipulations, often shorthand substitutions for more cumbersome expressions, and cannot be considered as either correct or incorrect. (Mandler / Kessen 1959: 92)

Moreover, if a clear interpretation of a text is to be guaranteed, the author should use his terms in a consistent way, making sure that there

---

3   For a more detailed discussion of Keynes' views on the language of economics cf. Gotti (1994a).

4   Indeed, the concept of 'objectivity' of scientific research has been questioned by several scholars in recent years (cf. Bazerman 1984; Hunston 1993a, 1993b, 1994a; Myers 1989, 1990a; Thomson / Ye 1991).

is a constant reference of a specific *definiens* to the same *definiendum*. The specialist is not denied the right to redefine the value of some concepts or the meaning of some terms, especially when this redefinition is part of an innovative conceptual revision or the adoption of a new paradigm (cf. Kuhn 1962); however, in order not to give rise to misunderstanding or incomprehension, this semantic redefinition should be clearly stated, and terms should be used consistently with the new meaning(s) throughout the text.

8. Imprecision in specialized discourse

Despite the recurring claim that precision is a prominent feature of specialized discourse and one of its distinctive qualities, there are several exceptions to this rule in certain disciplinary fields. One of the least consistently precise areas is legal language, where terms are to a certain extent referentially fuzzy: in particular, the use of adjectives sometimes allows subjective, if not arbitrary, interpretation. An example of this is the use of *proper* in the following legal clause taken from the contract in Appendix 1 at the end of this volume:[5]

(3)   The Tenant will [...] pay for [...] a proper proportion of the rental or other recurring charges to be assessed according to the duration of the tenancy (1: 40-47)

The text does not clarify what a *proper proportion* amounts to in monetary terms. Also the adjective *reasonable* below is indeterminate and allows for a highly personal evaluation of the subsequent noun:

(4)   reasonable wear and damage by fire [of the Fixtures Furniture and Effects] excepted (1: 56)

(5)   the reasonable use thereof nevertheless to be allowed for (1: 62)

---

5   Thanks are due to Ms E. Welsh for her authorisation to reproduce the two legal documents shown in the appendices to this volume.

(6) The Tenant will [..] permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at reasonable hours in the daytime to enter the Property to view the state and condition thereof (1: 40-64)

(7) The Tenant will [..] permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at reasonable hours in the daytime within the last twenty-eight days of the tenancy to enter and view the Property with prospective tenants (1: 40-77)

9. Redundancy in specialized discourse

Some specialized languages contain instances of redundancy, generally due to the pleonastic use of lexical items. This involves a violation of the principle of conciseness (mentioned above as a distinctive feature of specialized discourse), when the number of lexemes employed is far higher than necessary. Legal language, in particular, displays the highest occurrence of violations to the principle of conciseness. Crystal and Davy's (1969) analysis of legal discourse, for example, stresses the habit of English legal drafters to employ two interchangeable terms for the same concept: e.g. *new and novel, false and untrue, made and signed, terms and conditions, able and willing*. Each of these pairs clearly consists of a neo-Latin term coupled with an Anglo-Saxon parallel – a practice rooted in the age following the Norman Invasion, when England had two spoken languages: English (which accounts for the Anglo-Saxon term) and Norman French. The naming of concepts through both languages ensured comprehension by all sectors of the population (cf. Mathew 1938).

Sometimes, however, lexical doubling involves the same language and derives from its historical development, as in *null and void* (both from French) or *without let or hindrance* (from Old English) (for more examples cf. Hiltunen 1990: 54-55). Here the device seems to serve no specific purpose and one of the two terms appears redundant, as it adds no semantic content to the sentence. Also in the following expressions (taken from shipping contracts) the meaning of each term is implied by its parallel: *lawful authority, mutually agreed, solemnly declared*. A degree of redundancy is

further observed in English contract lexis: e.g. *undertakes to employ* (instead of the straightforward verb *employs*) and *undertakes to be employed* (instead of the straightforward verb *employ*). Another case of redundancy is the repetition of a concept through its negated opposite, as in the expression *within and not exceeding two months* (examples from Opitz 1983). Redundancy is demonstrated in a study by Marita Gustafsson, who ends her analysis of a dozen cases saying that:

> In legal English, binomials are 4-5 times more common than in other prose texts, and they are definitely a style marker in law language. Binomial expressions have a long tradition in legal English. Sometimes they are needed for technical accuracy and for the sake of precision and unambiguity, but there are cases where doubling-up serves no specific purpose. (Gustafsson 1984: 123)

Some cases are apparently unaccountable by standard interpretative resources but may be explained in diachronic terms, as in the past terms did not always possess their present-day meaning: words that now appear synonymous could be semantically distinct in earlier centuries. Their combined use could help ensure semantic coverage of the whole target meaning. A possible example of this is the phrase *last will and testament*, which sounds redundant because it violates the principle of conciseness. According to Mellinkoff (1963), the pair is linked to the use of such terms made by English lawyers, who often applied *will* to movables and *testament* to real estate. To avoid partial reference, the expression *last will and testament* appeared whenever both movables and real estate were intended.

In past centuries, lexical doubling featured not only in legal language but also in other types of text, as demonstrated by the tautological title of Caxton's first printed volume *The Dictes and Sayenges of the Philosophers* (1477). This is proof of an inherent feature of the English language, probably stemming from the Anglo-Saxon repetition of words for alliterative purposes. The explanation is supported by Opitz's claim that lexical doubling also functions as an enhancer of perlocutory force:

> In semantic respect such doubling and tripling can be both distinctive and allusive, providing on the one hand an aid to necessary disambiguation, and on the other serving as a rhetorical device aiming at intensity of effect rather than at increased clarity. It is frequently difficult to distinguish between the two,

particularly so if alliteration adds to the prosodic dimension of the syntagm, blurring its denotative implications: <u>o</u>wned and <u>o</u>perated, <u>v</u>essels and <u>v</u>oyage, <u>b</u>y and <u>b</u>etween, <u>s</u>aid and <u>s</u>olemnly declared. Generally it may be said that redundancy aims at an increase in persuasive force; thus it differs in a fundamental way from efforts of discriminating on the basis of detailed enumeration. (Opitz 1983:164)

Assonance and alliteration are common also in contemporary legal texts, as in these examples from the contract in Appendix 1: *Fixtures Furniture and Effects* (1: 21), *alteration in or addition to* (1: 48-49), *destroyed or damaged* (1: 50-51), *nuisance or annoyance* (1: 72), *rights and remedies* (1: 83), etc.

A degree of redundancy may be observed in the expression *to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth,* used in the oath taken by witnesses in court. The formula may sound highly tautological and even misleading, for it may imply the presence of different types of truth: whole or partial. But in oaths this repeated lexeme and its subsequent qualification are a century-old practice inherited from an age when law-makers needed to specify that the whole truth was required, as opposed to Thomas Aquinas's argument that this kind of oath did not compel a witness to tell "the whole truth".

Apart from these historical considerations, legal English clearly retains to this day examples of redundancy. Many legal texts could be redrafted in a more concise form, with no loss of meaning or increased ambiguity. As Mellinkoff (1963: 388) rightly observes, many of the terms employed in the following text could easily be omitted:

(8a)   This lease can be modified and changed only by an instrument in writing signed by the landlord and by the tenant.

The verb *modified* can be omitted because synonymous with *changed.* The qualification *in writing* could also be dropped, because the lexeme *signed* already specifies the written status of the term *instrument.* With these amendments, the text would become more concise and transparent:

(8b)   This lease can be changed only by an instrument signed by landlord and tenant. (Mellinkoff 1963: 388)

As explained earlier, however, compliance to tradition is stronger in legal discourse than the search for concision. Specialists in the field shun the responsibility of further simplifying the standard language and closely follow the practices codified by centuries of use.

10. Semantic instability

One of the qualities identified by Guilbert (1973) as distinctive of specialized terminology (alongside univocal meaning, mode of designation and referential specificity) is stability of meaning. But this feature does not apply indistinctly. In fact, terms undergo many semantic transformations, which in turn are linked to ongoing disciplinary evolution. Keynes's use of the lexeme *interest* illustrates how the nature of a concept may change repeatedly in a short time even in the writings of a single author.

Therefore the semantic variation of words due to cultural innovation and evolving social usage is not only typical of general language but also of specialized discourse. Indeed, each variation in the meaning of a word does not always entail variation in, or replacement of, its form. Sometimes semantic change is gradual, in line with slow conceptual transformations related to the evolving view of a given item. For example, the term *purchase* (derived from *chase* and associated to the idea of hunting and force, cf. *The Oxford English Dictionary*) denoted in its early stages the acquisition of something through force. Slowly it specialized and came to mean acquisition through one's actions (as opposed to acquisition by payment or of a sum (cf. Hughes 1988).

Sometimes the transformation process is due to specific actions that enable us to date exactly when the change occurred. This is the case of certain terms concerning ownership rights which, in response to legislative innovations introduced in 1922 and 1925, underwent even radical changes in meaning. For example, the term *freehold* from 1 January 1926 lost its old meaning of 'a grant issued directly by the

sovereign or a high-ranking lord' and came to mean 'ownership rights not originating from a lease' (as opposed to the term *leasehold*, which refers specifically to temporary ownership rights) (cf. Cecioni 1986).

The presence of new meanings which eventually replace existing ones may lead to ambiguity, because the two may overlap in actual use. The ambiguity may become greater when semantic transparency is applied to the original term, since the tight link between a term and the concept originally assigned to it is weakened when the concept's constituent features change in response to evolving disciplinary knowledge. The term *atom*, for example, points to the notion of individibility; the term *hypnosis* to the Greek word for sleep. Scientific discoveries have altered the essential nature of these terms, which now fail to reflect their original etymological meaning.

11. The relationship with general language

Semantic evolution very often originates from the specialisation of word meanings in the general language. Williams (1976) observes that such terms as *experiment* and *experience* – largely interchangeable until the 1700s – have since acquired an increasingly precise specification, which now denotes two separate types of knowledge: objective observation based on experimental evidence (*experiment*) and subjective knowledge acquired mainly through the senses (*experience*).

The specialization of words borrowed from everyday language was particularly intense in the 17th and 18th centuries, when rapid technological and scientific development made it necessary to establish a specific lexis for separate disciplines and phenomena. The impact of technology and scientific discoveries was so strong that the secondary meanings added to such terms over the last two centuries have in fact displaced their semantic priorities and now the specialized meaning often prevails over more general interpretations. Examples of this are the terms *industry* and *recession*, whose economic

significance usually prevails over the original notion of 'creative activity' or 'retreat'.

At other times the specialization process has produced new lexemes alongside existing ones which are no longer appropriate. The words *healing, treatment* and *therapy*, for example, all refer to the same semantic field of disease treatment but the concept's semantic evolution reflects a parallel change in medical science, whereby the lexeme *healing* was eventually joined by *treatment* and later by *therapy*, in a process of increasing specialization.

For increased referential specialization and terminological contrast with general language, the preferred option is to use Latin or Greek. Thus, for the physical concept of 'speed' the Latin-based *velocity* was chosen, as opposed to the everyday word *speed*; similarly, the Greek-based *gynaecologist* was coined for a specialist in the female reproductive system and its ailments instead of the existing term *midwife*, which was inadequate because it implied a different, less specialized profession.

In his study of English lexical development, Hughes (1988) identifies five generations of borrowings from classical languages. The first phase, dating from the Roman occupation of England, chiefly concerned Latin and its influence. The second phase occurred in the 6th-7th centuries and involved above all religious terminology. A third phase of classical borrowings with literary connotations took place during the Renaissance. In the 17th-18th centuries classical borrowings extended to specialized discourse, as exemplified by the terms *appendix, antenna, premium, carnivorous*, etc. According to Hughes, the classical borrowings of the last two centuries belong to a fifth phase, as they preserve their original inflection and spelling to the point of appearing perfectly 'foreign' to native English speakers. These borrowings are also likely to agglutinate, as observed in the words *otorhinolaryngology, chthononosology, sphygmomanometer*, etc.

Many classical-rooted terms have produced hybrid prefixes and suffixes that are widely used in specialized languages, e.g. *kilo-, auto-, mega-, micro-, mini-, multi-*. Within this category, there is a group of items used initially or terminally: Bauer (1983) refers to them as 'combining forms' rather than affixes because, unlike the latter, they

are combinable. Their union produces such compounds as *protogen*, *biocrat, graphoscope, electrophile*, etc.

The study of lexemes within a given semantic field may therefore provide interesting evidence for our understanding of conceptual evolution. An example of this insight are the names of body parts (in the left-hand column below) and their equivalent adjective:

(9)
brain	cerebral
chest	thoracic
heart	cardiac
liver	hepatic
rib	costal
skin	dermal
lung	pulmonary

An investigation of lexical resources related to body parts shows that the nouns are mostly Anglo-Saxon, whereas the adjectives are generally rooted in classical languages. This reflects the development of knowledge in anatomical science: from the superficial description of outward appearance typical of Old-English writers, to the more scientific approach followed in later centuries and confirmed by the introduction of Latin- and Greek-based words into English lexis.

12. Metaphor in specialized discourse

Another common device used in specialized discourse to create terms drawn from general language is metaphorisation. Metaphor creation is, indeed, a frequent feature not only of everyday language but also of specialist texts, especially for the purpose of catachresis. [6] This process has a number of advantages, all related to the general criteria of specialized lexis mentioned earlier. The first of these is terminological

---

6   For a definition of the concept of catachresis cf. Black 1962:33: "The use of a word in some new sense in order to remedy a gap in the vocabulary; catachresis is the putting of new senses into old words."

transparency, achieved when a metaphor is used instead of a neologism so that its lexeme exploits the semantic association linking a clearly-codified *signatum* to an existing *signans*: transparency is thus produced by referring new concepts to pre-existing items within the interlocutor's semantic repertoire. Another advantage is the conciseness allowed by metaphorisation, whereby the choice of a given lexeme points immediately to a body of existing information known to the interlocutor, thus favouring rapid information transfer without lengthy conceptual explanations or complex terminological definitions.

The third advantage is the tangible quality of images from the physical world used to represent abstract and often complex concepts that would otherwise be difficult to define. As argued by Kuhn (1962), new theoretical frameworks are established through a process of persuasion that runs parallel to conceptual development. The greater the effectiveness of presentation, the greater the degree of persuasiveness of a new theory. An element that may increase effectiveness is the tangible quality of terminology, which metaphor brings to the fore alongside transparency and conciseness. Such advantages are clearly illustrated by phrases occurring in the field of economics: the *elasticity* of demand, a condition of economic *depression*, an *imbalance* in market trends, *competition* among firms, etc. Many of these are so well established in everyday usage (not only among specialists) that their metaphoric value is hardly perceived – qualifying them for the status of 'dead metaphors'. This has meant a progressive weakening of markedness and a gradual transition into everyday lexis.

Research on metaphor has often stressed the substitutive function of this device, which may serve to replace another term. An example cited by Black is "the chairman plowed through the discussion" (1962: 27), where the verb *plow* violates semantic conventions that link it to the class of a farming implement for digging soil. It belongs to the class of indirect speech acts (Searle 1979), where the meaning understood by our interlocutor does not exactly or literally follow the conventional meaning of the terms actually employed. In specialized discourse, however, metaphors are seldom employed as substitutes and their function is chiefly stylistic. The use of words in a metaphoric context is generally made to highlight the

expressive connotations of a concept, thus increasing its aesthetic value.

Linguists have also defined certain metaphors as 'shortened similes'. They date back to Aristotle's *Rhetoric* and occur whenever the two terms of a metaphor have similar semantic values linked by an equivalence. The device is also found in specialized discourse, as illustrated by Schopenhauer's claim that "a geometrical proof is a mousetrap" (cited in Black 1962: 35). Here a resemblance is established between 'geometrical proof' and 'mousetrap', through joint reference to the notions of 'delusive reward', 'disagreeable surprise', etc. There is clearly no catachresis, as the specialized concept of 'geometrical proof' is not asserted through the 'mousetrap' metaphor. The value of this metaphor is purely stylistic, therefore, and only adds connotation to the specialized term.

The use of metaphor not for catachresis but as an elliptic simile occurs in other areas of specialized discourse, especially when the prevalent aim is to popularise knowledge. See, for example, the claim that "an atom is a tiny solar system", where the analogy provides a tangible interpretative key to such a highly abstract idea as 'atom'. Research on metaphor has also emphasised its interactive function (Black 1962), which arises whenever the second term does not merely qualify the semantic features of the first term but also adds new ones. Thus, for example, in Black's metaphor "man is a wolf" the second term (*wolf*) does not merely transfer to the first term (*man*) the negative qualities (fierceness, aggressiveness, cruelty, etc.) attributed to the lexeme *wolf* by cultural stereotypes, but also adds the qualities of the former to the latter. Black argues that:

> If to call a man a wolf is to put him in a special light, we must not forget that the metaphor makes the wolf seem more human than he otherwise would. (Black 1962: 44)

While other types of metaphor are easy to paraphrase because their referent is clearly identifiable – whether in the concept defined by metaphoric catachresis, in the term of comparison (in metaphoric similes) or in the literal meaning (with metaphoric substitution) – interactive metaphors contain no explicit reference and have to be inferred by the interlocutor. Moreover, paraphrasing interactive

metaphors is a more complex task, as it involves the simultaneous translation of semantic traits shared by both terms. The same types of metaphor are found in specialized discourse, as confirmed by two examples from Boyd (1979): "the brain is a computer" and "information is stored in the memory", where direct association is established between computer science and human functions. For Boyd these metaphors are constitutive of the theories they convey, since behavioural similarities between humans and computers have added new interpretations to the phenomena concerned and new theoretical insights to evolutionary psychology. In this light, they are neither marginal nor secondary but play a fundamental part in disciplinary development by promoting the discovery of new features and properties in the metaphorised items.

Since the pairing of two semantic fields is a very unusual option, however, these metaphors require a greater effort on the interlocutor's part for decoding. They are more creative but may also allow more arbitrary interpretations. This feature has attracted the charge of imprecision and vagueness: figurative language was severely stigmatised especially in the hard sciences during the 17th and 18th centuries, as in the following passage by Locke:

> If we would speak of things as they are, we must allow that all the art of rhetoric, besides order and clearness; all the artificial and figurative application of words eloquence hath invented, are for nothing else but to insinuate wrong ideas, move the passions, and thereby mislead the judgment; and so indeed are perfect cheats: and therefore, however laudable or allowable oratory may render them in harangues and popular addresses, they are certainly, in all discourses that pretend to inform or instruct, wholly to be avoided; and where truth and knowledge are concerned, cannot but be thought a great fault, either of the language or person that makes use of them.
> (*Essay Concerning Human Understanding*, Book III, Ch. 10)

Even metaphors that produce catachresis may, out of their original context, lead to instances of ambiguity. Henderson (1982), for example, relates a case of misunderstanding of the metaphor *parent company*, interpreted as meaning 'a firm that has established another firm' rather than 'a firm controlling another firm'. The imprecision of metaphors is therefore inherent in their nature and ambiguous interpretation may occur even when the utmost clarity was intended.

At times, imprecision depends on the immaturity of scholarship in the field, when the semantic content or a new metaphoric term is not yet well established. But this is also the stage when metaphor may contribute significantly (though imprecisely) to the circulation of theoretical innovations that would be impossible to convey through evidence or by more scientific means. As argued by Black:

> We need the metaphors in just the cases when there can be no question as yet of the precision of scientific statement. Metaphoric statement is not a substitute for a formal comparison or any other kind of literal statement, but has its own distinctive capacities and achievements. (Black 1962: 37)

Even the ambiguity of these new metaphors may be beneficial, as it stimulates debate among specialists for improved definition of new theoretical concepts. In this sense, Boyd expresses a favourable view of interactive metaphors also in specialized discourse:

> In particular, their success does not depend on their conveying quite specific respects of similarity or analogy. Indeed, their users are typically unable to precisely specify the relevant respects of similarity or analogy, and the utility of these metaphors in theory change crucially depends upon this open-endedness. (Boyd 1979: 357)

Some specialists widely employ metaphoric processes in theoretical writings, on the assumption that they are specially suited to the textualisation of their argumentative method. By exploiting their evocative power, metaphors allow the establishment of referential links at various levels of language and in different experiential domains.[7] Some scholars even campaign for a greater use of figurative language in specialized discourse. One of these is McCloskey (cf. Chapter 11), who is convinced that the textualisation of certain concepts calls for the use of metaphor rather than other more precise devices, because it conveys concepts more directly and may replicate the author's theoretical reasoning in the reader by association with other concepts from the reader's cultural background. Moreover, the

---

7 This characteristic of metaphors has aptly been pointed out by Mirowski: "The use of metaphor sets up a field of secondary and tertiary resonances, contrasts, and comparisons that do not merely describe, but also reconstruct and transform the original metaphorical material." (Mirowski 1988:136)

interpretation of textual metaphors may help decode the conceptual system that underlies the author's theoretical stance. As Lakoff and Johnson have clearly emphasised:

> Metaphor is not just a matter of language, that is, of mere words. [...] On the contrary, human thought processes are largely metaphorical. [...] Metaphors as linguistic expressions are possible precisely because there are metaphors in a person's conceptual system. (Lakoff / Johnson 1980: 6)

Lakoff and Johnson's analysis of English shows that the systematic arrangement of different metaphors in specific semantic fields is a consequence of conceptual patterning within the language community. An example of this is their list of metaphors demonstrating how the notion of 'argument' is normally interpreted as 'war':

(10) Your claims are *indefensible*.
He *attacked every weak point* in my argument.
His criticisms were *right on target*.
I *demolished* his argument.
I've never *won* an argument with him.
You disagree? Okay, *shoot!*
If you use that *strategy*, he'll *wipe you out*.
He *shot down* all my arguments. (Lakoff / Johnson 1980: 4)

Many other examples are supplied to prove the common conceptual origin of metaphor groupings, e.g. 'time is money', 'language communication is a channel', 'good is up', 'bad is down', etc. A similar interpretation is given by Kornai (1983), who highlights the close conceptual link between economic metaphors and medical terms: in specialized literature, the separate parts of the economy are often compared to parts of the human body, while the system's failures are often seen as ailments and redressive action as a form of therapy.

As a confirmation of the method proposed by Lakoff and Johnson a few metaphors drawn from a text on economics will be examined so as to interpret the conceptional framework underlying the author's approach. The text taken into consideration is Chapter 12 of *The General Theory*, in which Keynes analyses long-term investments. His thesis is based on the assumption that investment decisions do not rely merely on objective factors, but are conditioned

by subjective elements which cannot always be predicted with absolute certainty and which therefore make the whole investment system very unreliable. Indeed, investors' choices are determined by their expectations of possible future earnings, which generally do not depend on objective evaluations but on optimistic or pessimistic views of the future trends on the stock markets. This irrational feature does not characterise only common people, but also professional agents, whose general practice is to to buy those stocks and shares whose quotations are expected to rise and sell those whose value is expected to fall. This sort of behaviour is likened to a sort of game by Keynes:

(11)   It is, so to speak, a game of Snap, of Old Maid, of Musical Chairs – a pastime in which he is victor who says Snap neither too soon nor too late, who passed the Old Maid to his neighbour before the game is over, who secures a chair for himself when the music stops. These games can be played with zest and enjoyment, though all the players know that it is the Old Maid which is circulating, or that when the music stops some of the players will find themselves unseated. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 155-156)

This interpretation is strengthened by the many metaphors belonging to the semantic field of gambling which appear in the text:

(12)   the affair was partly a *lottery* (p. 150)
a mixed *game of skill and chance* (p. 150)
a *game* of Snap (p. 155)
a *pastime* (p. 156)
these *games* can be played with zest and enjoyment (p. 156)
professional investment may be likened to those newspaper *competitions* (p. 156)
large profits to be gained from the other *players* (p. 156)
unperturbed by the prevailing *pastime* (p. 156)
predominate in their influence over the *game-players* (p. 156)
the *game* of professional investment (p. 157)
the *gambling* instinct (p. 157)
the higher return from the *pastime* (p. 157)
a by-product of the activities of a *casino*. (p. 159)

The number of metaphors drawn from the semantic field of gambling is so high that their choice cannot be deemed at all as casual, but is clearly the result of the author's choice to evoke in the reader's mind an immediate association between the concept of investment and the typical aspects connected with the field of gambling: unpredictability,

risk, etc. The long series of references to this semantic area culminates in the indication of 'animal spirits' as the source of inspiration for future investment:

(13)   Most, probably, of our decisions to do something positive, the full consequences of which will be drawn out over many days to come, can only be taken as a result of animal spirits. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 161)

A confirmation of the usefulness of the analysis of the metaphorical aspects of a text to deduce the author's conceptual system can be found in Hübler's study of articles in economic papers dealing with a crash on the stock market. Hübler identifies three main "metaphoric paradigms". The first corresponds to that of a natural catastrophe:

(14)   like survivors of a natural disaster
business in the City of London was almost shut down after overnight storms
to weather the turbulence of the last week
the deluge of orders
last week's explosion did not lack for triggers. (Hübler 1990: 384)

Many of these metaphors collocate with elements signifying details related to weather phenomena, often subjected to anthropomorphic metaphorising. Thus unfavourable weather conditions are seen as a dangerous result of aggressive moves. This is confirmed by the many metaphors related to the semantic field of aggression and physical violence present in the articles examined:

(15)   aggressive selling sent share prices broadly lower
the onslaught of orders
it was the overseas market which clobbered us this morning
the crash has dealt a mighty blow to jobbing firms. (Hübler 1990: 385)

It is the nature of aggression to victimise whoever is the target of the attack. This victimisation is reflected by the third metaphoric paradigm, which is expressed in terms of suffering, resisting and escaping:

(16)   insurance shares were battered
equities in Europe and the US were whiplashed
high-tech issues were hurt
bourses took a severe bruising
computer hardware stocks were savaged

other financials showed some resistance
only Madrid bucked the trend
European bourses struggled to hold on to their ground
the market should find a floor in the current zone
selected second liners regained their poise
Sri Lanka stocks escape storm (Hübler 1990: 385-386)

Although some of these paradigms may be culture-specific (Hübler 1997), whenever they occur they are strictly connected and placed along a hierarchical scale. As the second paradigm derives from the first, and the third from the second, the leading paradigm is the first one, to which all metaphoric expressions ultimately relate.

13. Lexical productivity

As discussed earlier, specialized discourse employs words drawn from general language, which are incorporated through a process of specialization and metaphorisation.[8] But the opposite has also occurred, especially over the last century: terms coined in a specialized setting are increasingly likely to become part of everyday lexis. A well-known example of this is the word *bank*, often applied to containers for disposal or recycling of human organs, bottles, data: a clear deviation from the original meaning of a place for the storage of money. Several instances of this non-economic use are listed in the *Oxford English Dictionary* and its *Supplement*, the year in brackets being their earliest occurrence: *blood bank* (1938), *nerve bank* (1945), *bone bank* (1947) and *foetal tissue bank* (1959).

The high number of specialized terms now present (often metaphorically) in general use has convinced many linguists that the lexical system of specialized discourse is more productive than that of standard language. The frequent appearance of technical neologisms is no proof, however, that specialized languages possess a more powerful system of lexical formation. As shown in this chapter, the

8   For further exemplifications of neologisms in specialized discourse cf. Chapter 12 concerning the lexis of computer science.

process of terminological creation has followed the same rules present in standard language. Specialized discourse does admittedly employ a greater number of morphemes per lexical unit and has a higher lexical concentration, as well as more prefixes and suffixes, borrowings and calques, but all these phenomena are also found in general language. So the constant production of specialized terms is not due to the greater potential inherent in the lexical system of specialized discourse but rather to the rapid evolution of disciplinary fields and the constant redefinition of existing terms and concepts.

III. Syntactic Features of Specialized Discourse

Scholars investigating specialized languages have often argued that these are equipped with unique syntactic patterns which do not occur in general language. Charrow claims that legal discourse follows specific syntactic rules:

> It also differs significantly from normal usage. It is more than a professional jargon, as it contains its own peculiar syntactic constructions. (Charrow 1982: 82)

The syntactic forms mentioned in such studies, however, do not contain any rules not found in general language. This impression is based on the inspection of various studies on the syntactic features of specialized discourse focusing on phenomena that are not unknown also in general language. The most likely conclusion is that the specificity of morphosyntactic phenomena found in specialized languages is not a qualitative but a quantitative one. Certain features may also occur in general language but their higher frequency in specialized discourse makes them typical only of the latter. This chapter targets the main syntactic features displayed by specialized texts. It investigates not only their originality and frequency but also attempts to account for the pragmatic motives that originate them.

1. Omission of phrasal elements

A prominent distinctive feature of specialized discourse is its extremely compact syntactic structure. This is not surprising but indeed confirms the principle of conciseness discussed earlier in relation to the development of specialized lexis (cf. Chapter 2). A very common, straightforward way to make the sentence more

concise is to omit one of its constituents. This does not prevent textual comprehension because the value of any omitted elements may be inferred from the context or reconstructed by reference to knowledge shared by the language community. Omission is especially frequent in specialized texts, although some of the phenomena identified in the literature are related to the channel employed rather than the specificity of a given language. Some authors have mentioned the omission of articles and auxiliaries in faxes and emails for business communication as an example of this aspect of specialized discourse, forgetting that such omissions are not instrumental to the subject matter but rather to the channel of communication, which for external (i.e. financial) reasons requires a reduction to the minimum in the number of words employed.

There are many other cases where omission of phrasal elements in specialized texts is due to the need for conciseness. For example, in the following excerpt from a technical manual, articles are often omitted to make the text more compact (the asterisk shows that an article would normally be present in that position):

(1) *Rubber plug method of tubeless tire repair*

1. Remove * puncturing object if still in *the* tire. (* Tire is not dismounted from *the* rim.)
2. Fill * tire with air to 30 psi. Dip * probe into * cement, insert it into * injury and work up and down to lubricate * injury.
3. Grasp each end of * patch. Stretch and roll * center of * patch into * eye of * needle. Remove * protective covering from both sides of *the* patch, being careful not to touch * raw rubber.
4. Dip * perma strip into * cement, making sure that all surfaces are coated.
5. Insert * patch slowly and steadily into * injury, up to * handle. Then turn * needle ¼ turn and remove.
6. Without stretching *the* patch, cut it 1/8" from *the* tread.
7. Inflate to * proper pressure. * Tire is now ready for service.
(Bricker, *Automobile Guide*: 476; quoted in Trimble 1985: 121)

The omission of articles and prepositions is a standard feature of instructions also in Italian manuals, as illustrated by such expressions as *premere pulsante A*, *accusare ricevuta*, *fornire istruzioni in linguaggio macchina*, etc. The omission of the article can also be

found in legal texts, as in *proporre ricorso, presentare istanza, depositare denuncia* (for more examples cf. Rovere 2002).

2. Expressive conciseness

Apart from the simple omission of phrasal elements, there are other linguistic devices which make the sentence denser. An overview of the different cases found in specialized texts clearly indicates, however, that these do not follow rules restricted to specialized languages but normally implement rules found also in general language. As evidence of this claim, a specific case will be discussed below: the linguistic strategies employed in English specialized texts to avoid relative clauses and make the sentence structure 'lighter'. The rules that allow for such devices are not limited to specialized discourse but are found also in general language. Indeed, a first possibility commonly employed in specialized texts is the substitution of relative clauses with adjectives usually obtained by means of affixation. The prefixes and suffixes generally adopted have precise semantic values, which enable the decoder to interpret their communicative function appropriately. Here are a few examples of this use of affixes:

(2) Workable metal. (= Metal which can be worked.)

(3) Reactive force. (= Force which reacts.)

(4) Absorbent material. (= Material which absorbs.)

Another device commonly adopted to simplify a relative clause containing a passive form consists in omitting its subject and auxiliary, as in the following cases:

(5) Pieces of iron left in the rain become rusty. (= Pieces of iron which are left in the rain become rusty.)

(6) He devised an instrument called a spectroscope. (= He devised an instrument which is called a spectroscope.)

This is particularly frequent when the relative clause refers to a concept explained previously. In this case the verb of the relative clause is turned into its past participle form and placed after the noun it specifies:

(7) A pilot tube was used to measure the flow through the pipe. The instrument used was type 4CA.

The passive construction is also avoided by turning the verb into a past participle and using the latter as a premodifier:

(8) Compressed air can be used for several purposes. (= Air which is compressed can be used for several purposes.)

If the agent is to be stated, it is placed before the past participle; the link between the two elements is made explicit by means of a hyphen:

(9) The car has a water-cooled engine. (= The car has an engine which is cooled by water.)

(10) A computer-calculated result (= A result which has been calculated by a computer.)

These processes obey the criteria of conciseness and transparency. Indeed, the resulting expressions are shorter than the original ones containing relative clauses; moreover, they are clear, as the omitted elements can easily be deduced by the decoder. By exploiting the shared knowledge concerning the negative value of the prefix un-, negative relative clauses are often omitted and this prefix is added to the past participle used as a premodifier:

(11) The unwanted liquid was thrown away. (= The liquid which was not wanted was thrown away.)

When the passive form is modified by an adverb, the latter is joined by means of a hyphen to the past participle of the verb and placed before the noun:

(12) An incorrectly-designed bridge may have a short life. (= A bridge which is designed incorrectly may have a short life.)

When the verb of the relative clause is followed by the adverbial phrase in this way, this expression is substituted by thus or so, which is placed before the past participle of the verb:

(13) The results thus / so obtained were inaccurate. (= The results which were obtained in this way were inaccurate.)

Thus and so are not only used to avoid a relative clause, but also to avoid awkward coordinated clauses joined by the expression and in this way. The use of one of the above-mentioned adverbs followed by a gerund form confers greater conciseness to the sentence, as can be seen in the following example:

(14) When the piston is drawn sharply upwards, the air below the piston rises, thus causing the pressure to fall. (= When the piston is drawn sharply upwards, the air below the piston rises, and in this way it causes the pressure to fall.)

Another adverb commonly used in English to avoid a relative pronoun is whereby. The greater degree of conciseness provided by this adverb compared to the more extended adverbial phrase by means of which can easily be perceived in the following example:

(15) Cracking is the process whereby kerosene is extracted. (= Cracking is the process by means of which kerosene is extracted.)

Another strategy to reduce the complexity of a sentence consists in the transformation of the verb of a relative clause into a present participle. Here is an example:

(16) Tungsten is a metal retaining hardness at red-heat. (= Tungsten is a metal which retains hardness at red-heat.)

This strategy is often adopted also in Italian specialized texts' as the following examples show:

---

1   In Italian the use of the present participle offers great advantages also when coining new terms. Cf., for example, the present participle tangente, initially

(17)   Una traiettoria pendente su un asse perpendicolare. (= una traiettoria che pende su un asse perpendicolare.)

(18)   Un mobile cadente da un piano superiore. (= un mobile che cade da un piano superiore.)

The present participle is often used as an adjective. This construction is also possible in the general language, but is much more frequent in specialized discourse. Here is an example:

(19)   A robot controls the moving line. (= A robot controls the line which is moving.)

If the verb of the relative clause is accompanied by an adverb, the latter is placed before the present participle:

(20)   They have selected a fast-growing plant (= They have selected a plant which grows fast)

This construction is also used when the verb of the relative clause is followed by an object. In the transformation, the latter is placed before the present participle:

(21)   Malaysia is a rubber-producing country. (= Malaysia is a country which produces rubber.)

(22)   A ruler is a length-measuring instrument. (= A ruler is an instrument which measures length.)

In many cases this simplification process proceeds further, with the disappearance not only of the subject of the secondary clause and its auxiliary, but also of the verb itself, whose meaning thus becomes implicit:

(23)   A pentagon is a figure which has five sides. > A pentagon is a figure with five sides. > A pentagon is a five-sided figure.

used with a verbal function (*una retta tangente un arco*); later it was used with an adjectival function (*la retta tangente l'arco*) often employed in an elliptical form (*la tangente l'arco*); in the end the present participle form is used as a noun (*disegnare la tangente di un arco*).

(26)   (((Block fill-in) (data control)) process).

Of course, this kind of division is possible if the addressee draws not only on his awareness of syntactic rules but also on his knowledge of the semantic value of each word within the compound – a knowledge associated with his specialised training. There are indeed various cases in which noun compounds may be interpreted in different ways. To solve ambiguities of this type, linguistic competence alone is not sufficient and has to be integrated by specialist knowledge of the topic and of other factors such as context and co-text. For instance, the noun phrase *a small car factory* allows two interpretations:

(27a)   A small factory for making cars.

(28a)   A factory for making small cars.[2]

The hyphen is employed as a disambiguator to avoid multiple interpretations and it signals semantic links between words. For example:

(27b)   A small car-factory. (= A small factory for making cars.)

(28b)   A small-car factory. (= A factory for making small cars.)

At times ambiguity is caused by a polysemous premodifier. In the compound *silver lead ore*, for instance, the noun *silver* refers to a mineral and the whole phrase denotes a mineral compound of silver and lead; while in *silver copper*, the word *silver* refers to its colour and the whole group denotes not a metal combination of silver and copper but the silvery colour of a special type of copper. Similarly, the compound *building supervisor* is interpretable in two ways because of the dual nature of the term *building*, i.e. a construction but also the action of erecting it.

---

2   Another example of ambiguity can be seen in the following sentence: "Water enters the bottom of the heating flask." As aptly pointed out by Swales (1971: 140), this sentence may suggest two interpretations: "Water enters the bottom of the flask which is getting hotter / Water enters the bottom of the flask which is used for heating."

Adjectivation often takes on complex syntactic values because it originates from the evolution of noun groups but also of phrases containing other items such as adjectives and past participles. In this case, premodification is of a hybrid nature:

(29) An L-shaped computer room. (= A room for computers which has the shape of an L.)

The following noun phrase contains a premodifying present participle, which is premodified by an adverb:

(30) The steadily diminishing transverse velocity component. (= The transverse component of velocity which diminishes steadily.)

Therefore the use of premodification offers advantages in terms of greater textual conciseness, offset, however, by a loss of conceptual clarity. This can be shown by comparing the following sentences: although the former is more compact, the latter is much easier to decode:

(31) A two-pole rotating coil a-c generator. (= A generator of current which alternates, which has two poles and a coil which rotates.)

The previous chapter stressed the importance of precision and interpretative clarity in specialized discourse. Why, then, is premodification so common in such texts, despite its potential for ambiguity? First of all, one must say that ambiguity is often apparent rather than real, because specialist knowledge helps the addressee to rule out inappropriate meanings in the decoding process. What is more, the transition from postmodification (typical of elementary utterances) to premodification allows the construction of more complex sentences. In the following case, for example, the avoidance of the relative clause used in the first sentence allows the final compound to be used as subject, object or indirect object of another sentence:

(32) The rate at which inflation grows.
The rate of inflation growth.
The inflation growth rate.

The new sentence, including this noun compound, becomes conceptually richer and syntactically shorter and more compact. First through the device of relative clause omission (leading to verbal nominalization) and later through nominal adjectivation there is a transition from a subordinate clause (with its impact on logical linearity) to a nominal compound, which functions more easily as subject, object or indirect object in subsequent sentences. Another advantage of premodification is its potential for concept formation. The combination of two or more terms produces not only a mere union of existing concepts but the premodification process often gives rise to a new concept that alters their nature; adding new meaning and uses. In this light, the semantic value attached to each element of the compound loses its identity to produce a new entity, which in turn becomes a conceptual referent and a starting point for the emergence of new compounds.

4. Nominalization

Another very common syntactic phenomenon of specialized discourse (not only in English but also in Italian and other languages) is nominalization. This involves the use of a noun instead of a verb to convey concepts relating to actions or processes, a use commonly referred to with the term 'grammatical metaphor' within Systemic Functional Linguistics (cf. Halliday 1994). Specialized discourse makes frequent use of nominalization because verb-derived nouns seem to reflect the parallel process whereby results are inferred from experiments and objects from their construction process (cf. Halliday/Martin 1993). The preference for nominalized forms leads to higher nominal density in specialized texts – far greater than that found in texts of a general nature. Sager et al. (1980), for example, found that nouns account for 28% of words in general texts and 44% in specialized texts. If the number of adjectives is also considered, the two cover 60% of words.

Naturally nominalization is not unique to specialized discourse, as it also occurs in general language. What makes it distinctive is its frequent use by specialists and the high level of pre/postmodification involved. In the following example, nominalization of the verb *observe* into the noun *observation* allows use of the syntactic compression devices mentioned earlier, namely nominal adjectivation and premodification:

(33) A day and night weather observation station. (= A station in which people observe the weather both by day and by night.)

increasing reliance on nominalization cannot be explained only as a search for greater conciseness, though it is an important reason for transformations of this type. In certain cases there is a clear preference for nominalization even when a verb allows for fewer lexical items. An example of this is the following case cited by Herbert (1965), where the form *by applying* is shorter than its nominalized equivalent *by the application of*:

(34) The filament is heated by the application of a voltage. (= The filament is heated by applying a voltage.)

Several other examples can be quoted from the legal texts included in Appendix 1 to this volume:

(35) the provisions for the recovery of possession (= the provisions for recovering possession) (1: 32-33)

(36) the amount of all charges made for the use of the telephone (= the amount of all charges made for using the telephone) (1: 44-45)

(37) anything which may be or become a nuisance or annoyance to the Landlord or the Tenants (= anything which may annoy the Landlord or the Tenants) (1: 71-72)

(38) except charges for the supply of gas (= except charges for supplying gas) (1: 86-87)

The same consideration may be made with regard to the number of phrasal items resulting from other instances of substitution, with nominalized forms taking the place of verbs. An example of this is the

This inversion of sentential items is extremely useful, especially when the subject is far longer than the complement. By placing the shorter phrase at the beginning of a sentence the decoder's short-term memory is not forced to wait too long for the complement to disambiguate the meaning of the whole sentence. At times the loss of verbal value is so marked that the verb is omitted altogether. An example of this is found in the following dialogue from Altieri Biagi (1974):

(46) DIRETTORE: [...] Mi vuol dire qualcosa anche dell'esame obiettivo?
AUTO: Paziente semiseduto, leggermente cianotico, discretamente dispnoico
[...]
DIRETTORE: La pressione?
AUTO: 150/85, polso ritmico, con extrasistoli sporadiche. Itto non palpabile. Non fremiti.
DIRETTORE: E all'ascoltazione?
AUTO: Il aortico metallico; Il tono polmonare piuttosto forte. Nessun rumore di soffio, ma presenza di IV tono alla punta.
DIRETTORE: E il torace?
AUTO: Nessuna espansione inspiratoria a sinistra: anzi rientranza degli spazi intercostali. Alla percussione, ottusità massiva di tutto l'emitorace sinistro: scomparsa del fremito e silenzio respiratorio. (Altieri Biagi 1974: 75)

In this description of a patient's condition, there is no verb but merely a series of noun groups. The verb may be easily inferred, however, because its function is only copulative. Use of elliptic sentences like this one does not deplete the text's communicative force but makes its content denser and more concise, adding a quality that is highly prized among specialists in the field.

5. Lexical density

In specialized discourse one consequence of frequent nominalization and other premodifying devices is increased lexical density, i.e. a high percentage of content words within a text. Lexical density is especially high in written texts, where – as observed in general language by Chafe (1982) and Chafe / Danielewicz (1987) – discourse

is planned more carefully, without hesitation markers and with less redundancy. A more natural style, closer to spoken language, would make concepts more explicit and require more noun phrases for paraphrase, thus making the text less compact. This is confirmed by the following adaptation (Text B) of an article (Text A) from *Scientific American* suggested by Halliday (1987: 61):

(47) TEXT A

Private civil actions at law have a special significance in that they provide an outlet for efforts by independent citizens. Such actions offer a means whereby initiatives of private citizens, individually or in groups, can be brought to bear on technology assessment, the internalization of costs and environmental protection. They constitute a channel through which the diverse interests, outlooks and moods of the general public can be given expression. The current popular concern over the environment has stimulated private civil actions of two main types.

(48) TEXT B

One thing is especially significant, and that is that people should be able to bring private civil actions at law, because by doing this independent citizens can become involved. By bringing those actions whether they are acting as individuals or in groups, private citizens can keep on taking the initiative; they can help to assess technology, they can help to internalize costs, and they can help to protect the environment. The general public, who want all kinds of different things, and who think and feel in all kinds of different ways, can express all these wants and thoughts and feelings by bringing civil actions at law. At present, people are concerned about the environment, so they have been bringing quite a few private civil actions, which have been mainly of two kinds.

A comparison of the two texts clearly indicates that although textual items have increased by almost 52% (from 87 to 132 words) and the number of sentences has risen from 5 to 17, content words are virtually unchanged, with only three extra items (from 48 to 51). This means considerably less lexical density, down from 1:1.8 (i.e. about one content word every two tokens) in Text A to 1:2.6 (about one content word every three tokens) in Text B. Text A is therefore specialized because it is more concise and lexically denser than Text B, though both convey the same amount of information.

6. Sentence complexity

As mentioned earlier, one effect of nominalization is the simplification of syntactic structures within the sentence. By switching from verbal to nominal forms, specialists tend to simplify the surface structure of sentences, which are minimized into simple patterns of the type NOUN PHRASE + VERB + NOUN PHRASE. Noun phrases are usually very complex, involving lengthy pre- and post-modification, while the verb phrase often consists of a copulative verb like *be, become, form, mean, require, depend, consist of*. An example in this class is the following:

(49) The complete development of the fracture model requires an understanding of the bond-rupture reaction.

Evidence like this suggests that specialized languages are simpler in terms of linearity because conceptual complexity is expressed by syntactic and semantic relations within noun phrases. Textual comprehension is easier, therefore, thanks to simplified surface structure but the lexical density of the sentence and the complex patterning of the noun phrases makes interpretation more demanding. Even if surface structure seems elementary from a syntactic viewpoint, such sentences generally derive from various transformations of more complex syntactic structures. In the following case, for instance, the verbal noun derives from a simplified hypothetical clause.

(50) The testing of machines by this method entails some loss of power. (= If machines are tested by this method, there will be some loss of power.)

This example, like many others offered above as an illustration of relative clause reduction, highlights the tendency of English specialized discourse to avoid subordination. The reliance on coordination is confirmed by different studies. In Butler's (1975) specialized corpus, for example, subordinate clauses account for only 25% of clauses, while all others (three quarters of clauses in his corpus) are main clauses. This confirms Barber's (1985) finding that

main clauses prevail over subordinates; indeed, out of 349 analysed sentences, 250 (71%) consisted only of a main clause. Moreover, 190 (54%) sentences had no explicit subordinate clauses, while 136 others contained one or two explicit subordinates. Only 23 (6.9%) corpus sentences contained more than two explicit subordinate clauses. The low proportion of explicit subordinates does not indicate, however, that specialized texts are simple. Instead, their sentences usually exhibit a high number of non-finite forms, as in the following:

(51) To explain this remarkable behaviour, each electron is considered to possess an electric charge, the charge being a numerical measure of the force of repulsion experienced between two electrons (= To explain this remarkable behaviour, each electron is considered to possess an electric charge, which is a numerical measure of the force of repulsion that is experienced between two electrons.)

One may speculate that although the first clause has a more linear structure, its greater implicitness complicates comprehension as it forces the receiver to understand the deep structure underlying each implicit subordinate clause. Yet the use of these non-finite verb forms does not generally involve distinctive syntactic rules but only those applicable to general language. Some of the examples below may help to illustrate this claim. For instance, the following non-finite subordinate is employed to avoid coordination and another main clause:

(52) The starter motor is switched off, the engine accelerating under its own power. (= The starter motor is switched off, and the engine accelerates under its own power.)

Also in the following example we have the elimination of subordination: to introduce the result or consequence of the action mentioned in the main clause, the secondary clause containing the non-finite verbal form is preceded by the adverb *thereby*:

(53) The rivet contracts as it cools, thereby drawing the plates together. (= The rivet contracts as it cools, and draws the plates together.)

Instead, in the following case the non-finite form is used to avoid a secondary clause beginning with *since* or *as*:

time phrases normally followed in English. At times, deviations in word order even effect the verb phrase; in the following example the modal auxiliary and its verb are separated by a group of phrasal items:[4]

(62) This Agreement and all rights and duties hereunder are personal to the Member Firm and shall not, without the written consent of Grantor, be assigned, mortgaged or otherwise encumbered by the Member Firm or by operation of law. (2: 229-233)

Such deviations from the standard pattern may be accounted for by the pervasive need for precision in legal language. Indeed, any mention of people, place or time occurring earlier in the sentence than normally expected is justified by the need to identify the referent beyond any reasonable doubt or ambiguity. On the other hand, when specification occurs immediately after a verb, the prepositional phrase is anticipated to prevent attributing time or place to the direct object. For this reason, the indirect object is placed before the direct object:

(63) The Member Firm has paid to Grantor the sum of S.fr. 1 (2: 80)

Stylistic considerations may also account for the switch between direct and indirect object, because the direct object is at times long and complex while the indirect object is very short and linear, so that expression and comprehension are improved by inversion. The same reason may be invoked to account for the following cases:

(64) To return to the Tenant any rent payable for any period while the Property is rendered uninhabitable by fire (1: 93-94)

(65) Upon the terms and conditions hereinafter set forth, Grantor hereby grants to the Member Firm, and such Member Firm hereby accepts, the exclusive right, license and privilege to use the Service Marks in connection with its providing and advertising of services in the field of management consulting and other related areas and on products related to such services. (2: 62-68)

4   A confirmation of our data can be found in Gustafsson (1975), who has found 40 examples of phrases placed between the auxiliary and the verb in contexts not commonly allowed by the syntactic rules of standard English.

(66)   the Member Firm shall assign to any successor firm chosen by Grantor ('Successor Firm') all common law rights in and all registrations for the Service Marks or any names or marks likely to cause confusion therewith, and all goodwill associated therewith. (2: 160-165)

The puzzling point in these samples is not that the indirect object precedes the direct object – an acceptable option in English – but rather that the preposition *to* has not been omitted. Even this violation of syntactic rules, however, may be accounted for by the need for clarity mentioned above. Omission of the preposition may in fact undermine clear reference to the action's recipient conveyed by the preposition, thus allowing potential confusion between this item (which, without the preposition, resembles on the surface a direct object) and the existing direct object of the clause. The cases discussed here reveal a further feature of specialized discourse, namely that wherever special needs due to the specificity of the subject matter produce inconsistencies or conflict with the general rules of language, the specialist prefers to alter such linguistic rules for pragmatic purposes. In the case of legal language, the specialist's need for clarity prevails over the syntactic conventions of general language.

A comparison of the two texts in the Appendix highlights another feature of specialized discourse, i.e. the prevalence of pragmatic considerations in a given specialized field over the conventions of general language and other specialized languages. The first part of this chapter stressed how often authors employ syntactic devices that limit the complexity of sentences, particularly through premodification and omission of relative clauses using present participles, past participles and other options. The two texts in the Appendix, on the other hand, exhibit a high number of postmodifiers and relative clauses. This phenomenon may be explained by the same reason given earlier, i.e. the need for maximum clarity typical of legal language – a need which contrasts with the high potential for ambiguity found in nominal attributes and other premodifiers seen at the beginning of this chapter. An example of this is the expression *Every person disposing of*, which allows two interpretations: *Every person who disposes of* and *Every person who has disposed of*. The widespread use of postmodifiers results in longer noun phrases, exemplified by the following expressions from the Appendix:

4. Present Perfect Passive (1.7%)
5. Present Perfect Active (1.4%)
6. Past Simple Active (1.2%)
7. Past Simple Passive (1.2%)
8. Future Simple Passive (0.7%)
9. Present Progressive Active (0.6%)
10. Imperative (0.3%)

In the great majority of cases (89%) the present indicative tense is considered a feature of specialized languages, since the percentage of its occurrences is far higher than that found in common texts. At the same time, as Barber himself admits, there is a strong correlation between these results and the type of text considered. Barber's corpus only contains expository scientific texts, whose prevalent pragmatic functions are definition, description, observation, illustrating qualities and features, stating general truths, postulating scientific laws, explaining standard procedures, etc. All these functions require the present indicative tense, as observed in the following:

(71)   A lathe is a machine which turns a piece of wood or metal round and round against a tool that gives it shape.

    Technology deals with scientific and industrial methods and their practical use in industry.

    Searching consists in finding an item in a table.

    Objects do not float unless their density is smaller than that of water.

    If iron is left in the rain, it becomes rusty.

    A beaker of water is taken and heated over a burner.

    When the search key is found, it delivers the value with which it is associated.

    Systems analysts act as a link between the computer department and the other departments of the company.

The present indicative is not associated to the specificity of the topic but rather to the text's special communicative purpose, which requires a given tense even with non-specialist subject matter. If the texts considered were taken from English technical handbooks – where the main function is to provide instructions for the use of a tool or procedure – there would certainly be a prevalence of the imperative form. Accordingly, analysis of a laboratory report would reveal a

prevalence of the past indicative tense.[5] Indeed, a similar analysis carried out by Dressen and Swales (2000) on a corpus of geological articles, has shown frequent usage of past tenses in texts dealing with rock and formation emplacement and with previous studies on the subject (cf. Table 2).

Rhetorical categories	Description	Emplacement	Commentary	Previous studies	Present work	Metadiscourse
347 verbs	252 (73%)	30 (9%)	26 (7%)	26 (7%)	7 (2%)	6 (2%)
Present	97%	-	81%	12%	42%	83%
Past	1%	93%	4%	42%	29%	-
Perfect	2%	7%	5%	46%	29%	-
Future	-	-	-	-	-	17%

Table 2. Tense choice correspondences with rhetorical category in the English texts of the corpus analysed. (From Dressen / Swales 2000: 64)

Generally speaking, the present indicative may be said to prevail in specialized texts (although less often than found by Barber). This, however, is not a result of a deliberate choice on the specialist's part but depends on the fact that most of the common communicative functions found in specialized discourse usually call for the use of this tense. When the text is very complex and involves several communicative functions – e.g. argumentative texts on a specialized topic – verb tenses and auxiliaries are found more widely and approximate their use in general language. Because of the limited significance of quantitative analysis, various scholars have taken a different approach to verb tense, turning from statistical data on verb frequency to an in-depth analysis of specific uses. For example, Lackstorm, Selinker and Trimble (1970, 1973) tried to account for the special use of past tense, present perfect and simple present forms in specialized texts. They found that the use of these verb tenses varies according to the degree of generality attributed by authors to the phenomena considered. Their analysis concludes that when generality is high, the choice falls on the simple present, while it falls on the present perfect when generality is low; if an event only occurred once,

5   This consideration leads to the conclusion that, in order to be reliable, corpora should take into consideration a high number of different types of texts.

the simple past is preferred. These findings are certainly interesting, also because they go beyond a merely quantitative description. Their main shortcoming, however, is the lack of a close link to specialized discourse, since the same tenses may also occur in general texts. Results on the use of past rather than present tense in laboratory equipment descriptions may also be applied to general texts, whenever a single operation in the past is set against a state of permanent use. The three authors reach a remarkable conclusion, applicable to any type of text and not only to specialist settings:

This example illustrates how a rhetorical consideration determines a semantic choice, which in turn governs a grammatical choice. (Lackstrom et al. 1970)

Lackstrom, Selinker and Trimble's research deserves a further comment. One of its main assumptions is that verb forms are chosen not according to the time axis of the events concerned but according to rhetorical factors linked to the type of text and topic. As evidence of this hypothesis, they examine such 'non temporal' texts as equipment description, video captions and a report on published research. However, as Comrie (1985) aptly observes, time is a key element underlying any choice of verb tense, irrespective of the context involved. It may also be added that the notion of generality associated by the three researchers to the choice of tense in the equipment description is itself time-dependent upon events that occurred once or more in the past or else occur regularly in the present.

An interesting point identified by these studies on verb tense in specialized discourse is the higher number of non-finite forms encountered than in general language: Rumszewics (cited in Barber 1985) found that these account for 35% of all verb forms in specialized texts, while they are only 17% in general texts. This finding is in line with Barber's (1985) figure of 39%, which, however, is less reliable because it counts all -ing forms, including those with a nominal or adjectival function, among non-finite verbs.[6] This wide use

6   Indeed, here are some of the examples quoted by Barber (1985: 11, my italics): "Resistance welding is performed by passing a very heavy current through the pieces of metal to be joined", "In this way, exposures extending even over several successive clear nights can be made, the plate-holder being

of non-finite verbs is not surprising, since these help to compact the text's expressive form. Thus, for example, the present participle is often employed to avoid relative clauses, as in the following case:

(72) More and more research laboratories have installed computing services operating in conversational mode. (= More and more research laboratories have installed computing services which operate in conversational mode.)

The *-ing* form also simplifies secondary concessive clauses, as it does not require the explicit mention of the subject when the latter is the same as that of the main clause:

(73) Although sometimes causing a slowdown in work, buses are commonly used in transmitting impulses to their various addresses. (= Although they sometimes cause a slowdown in work, buses are commonly used in transmitting impulses to their various addresses.)

The conciseness of this verbal form is so highly appreciated that it is frequently used also when the subject of the secondary clause is different from that of the main clause. In the following sentence, for example, the author uses the *-ing* form so as to avoid the coordinated clause *and the charge is* or the subordinated clause *as the charge is:*

(74) To explain this remarkable behaviour each electron is considered to possess an electric charge, the charge being a numerical measure of the force of repulsion experienced between two electrons.

In the previous quotation another non-finite form may be observed, i.e. the infinitive. The use of this verbal form is not rare; on the contrary, it occurs more frequently than in general language as it shortens the wording of the text. For instance, in the following sentence, the infinitive is the result of the elimination of a relative clause:

(75) The record to be located is searched in the file. (= The record which is to be located is searched in the file.)

---

shielded from the daylight and the instrument *set* again, with the aid of the *guiding* star, upon exactly the same point of the heavens as before."

Another non-finite form very frequently used in specialized discourse is the past participle, as it may perform several functions. In the following sentences, for example, it is the result of the simplification of passive forms:

(76) If allocated consecutively, data can be read one after another. (= If they are allocated consecutively, data can be read one after another.)

(77) When inserted, the data will appear on the screen. (= When they are inserted, the data will appear on the screen.)

Suppression of subject and auxiliary is also possible with progressive forms. In this case the resulting verb is a present participle:

(78) When typing a text in at the keyboard, the operator does not have to worry about getting to the end of a line. (= When he is typing a text in at the keyboard, the operator does not have to worry about getting to the end of a line.)

The *-ing* form is often used in specialized discourse as it allows great simplifications of the sentence, as the following examples (from Bartolic 1988: 51) show:

(79) This results in the current being lower than if inductance were not present. (= The result of this is that the current is lower than if inductance were not present.)

(80) Because this resistance is very small, it is sometimes ignored, and the capacitor is then considered as having reactance only. (= Because this resistance is very small, it is sometimes ignored, and the capacitor is then considered as if it had reactance only.)

Clearly, all verb forms in this section are also acceptable in general language (like any transformation leading to simplified sentence structure). But while finite verb forms reach frequencies comparable with those of general texts, non-finite verb forms occur twice as often in specialized texts because of their greater potential for streamlined, more concise sentences.

9. Use of the passive

Another widely-investigated feature of specialized discourse is its considerable use of passive verbs. Data from different statistical-quantitative studies are quoted as evidence of this observation. Barber's (1985) analysis gives a figure of 28% for passive forms as a proportion of all verb forms in the scientific texts forming his corpus. The result is confirmed in Rumszewicz (cited by Barber 1985), which found 26% of passive forms in specialized texts, compared to only 3% in general texts. This finding is confirmed by Huddleston (1971), who found 26.3% of passive forms in specialized texts. The percentage is especially high in English, where the passive is the main device used to depersonalise discourse (whereas Italian has the impersonal operator *si*, French has *on*, German *man*, etc.). The pervasiveness of the passive may be accounted for by its usefulness as a depersonalising device in specialized discourse, which generally emphasises the effect or outcome of an action rather than its cause or originator. Significantly, the agent is normally omitted in passive clauses, also because it is often the same for all the operations described. For example, texts reporting the different stages in an experiment have the same researcher or team of researchers performing all the procedures. In such cases specification of the agent becomes a redundant feature. Sometimes the agent is omitted because there is no specific actor behind a given action: this accounts for stative verb forms expressing a condition rather than an event. Their surface form is similar to the passive but with the past participle used adjectively. Here are a few examples in English:

(81)   The system is composed of .....
      The plate was located at ......
      The sensor is housed in .....

The passive is also important in textual terms, as it is normally employed to thematize the process, fact or action mentioned in a previous sentence, which makes the flow of information more effective and natural. The passive allows the thematic element to identify given information, while new information is normally

presented rhematically. This sequence appears perfectly natural and the two elements are inverted only if the agent needs to be emphasised as the focus of an utterance.

No purely syntactic explanation can account for the switch between active and passive voice, which also reflects complex pragmatic and textual functions. Both forms may be used within the same text for different communicative purposes. For example, in research articles the Methods section contains a high number of passive forms, while the Literature Review has a prevalence of active verbs. This choice can be explained by the different thematic function played by agentive noun phrases in each section. In Methods, noun phrases referring to the research itself (e.g. *the researcher, the experimenter, the present author*, etc.) cannot be emphasised because the focus is on the process concerned, which is thematized by the passive forms. But when the research is compared to earlier studies, its authors are emphasised and placed in focal position by active forms. Tarone *et al.* (1981) investigated passive vs. active verbs as employed in English astrophysics journals. Their analysis indicates that both forms are common, albeit with different functions. The active voice identifies a procedural option developed by the author(s), while the passive suggests a standardized common procedure. When the subject is expressed by personal pronoun *we*, authors emphasise the originality of their contribution or approach. For example:

(82)   In this paper we develop the theory of time-dependent disks. The underlying physics is essentially the same as that of the stationary models above, except that we allow variables to evolve in time on the 'drift' (radial flow) time scale.
      (Tarone *et al.* 1981: 129)

As mentioned above, the active voice is used to describe the author's actions, while the passive refers to the actions of others; when the two are in conflict, however, the active form is used also for results obtained by other researchers. In the following texts, the data of other researchers are rejected by the author and will be disproved by new research. The author prefers to place the emphasis on the object of criticism, putting his peers in subject position:

(83) In fact, Pringle (1974) and Cunningham (1973) have developed models of vertical structure which suggest that the inner region of the disk is convectively unstable. (Tarone et al. 1981: 132)

(84) Rees has pointed out (see Pringle et al. 1973) that failure of the above requirement leads to a thermal instability. (Tarone et al. 1981: 132)

Tarone *et al.* (1981) have drawn attention to the principles that determine the choice between active and passive forms when referring to previous research positively (passive voice), negatively (active) or in contrast to the author's results (active). On the other hand, when an author mentions his future work, he generally opts for the passive. This emphasizes the need for further research efforts to fill gaps or overcome unsolved difficulties in existing knowledge; here a more objective form avoids thematic reference to the writer. See, for example, the following cases:

(85) This will be dealt with in a succeeding paper. (Tarone et al. 1981: 133)

(86) Whether such a situation is stable under perturbations will be investigated in Paper II. (Tarone et al. 1981: 133)

Tarone *et al.* (1981) also observe that the choice between active and passive forms may be influenced by sentence length or by the need for special prominence. Indeed, the syntactic rules of the English language allow for different textualisations of the same concept, whether through active/passive forms, adjectivation, nominalization or other linguistic devices as in the example below:

(87) We can divide 9 by 3 without a remainder.
9 can be divided by 3 without a remainder.
9 is divisible by 3 without a remainder.
The division of 9 by 3 leaves no remainder.

The choice is determined by pragmatic-textual factors rather than syntactic considerations. Their importance in the textualisation process varies according to the type of text or specialized field and cannot be generalised. As remarked earlier, the widespread use of the passive in specialized discourse described by linguists is not common to all text types. The legal writings examined here (cf. appendices to

this volume) also have a lower proportion of passive forms than claimed by Barber, Huddleston and others. In legal contracts, for example, what matters most is not the set of rights and duties established between the parties but rather the specific people bound to such rights and duties. When stressing the personal nature of legal obligations, the best option is the active voice, which places the actor in thematic position. Here are a few of the many instances found in the two texts considered:

(88) The Landlord lets and the Tenant takes the Property for the Term at the Rent payable as above (1: 29-30)

(89) The Tenant will [...] Pay the Rent at the times and in the manner specified (1: 40-41)

(90) The Tenant will [...] Not manage or injure the Property or make any alteration in or addition to it (1: 40-49)

(91) The Tenant will [...] Preserve the Fixtures Furniture and Effects from being destroyed or damaged and not remove any of them from the Property (1: 40-51)

(92) The Member Firm agrees, both during and after the term of this Agreement, to cooperate fully and in good faith with Grantor (2: 106-108)

(93) The Member Firm shall notify Grantor in writing, of any infringement, imitation, passing off or use of the Service Marks or any confusingly similar marks by any third party which comes to its attention. (2: 113-116)

(94) The Member Firm shall conduct its affairs in a manner consistent with the professional standards set forth in the DJRW Statutes and any regulations thereto to the end of maintaining the prestige and high professional standards associated with the Service Marks (2: 133-137)

10. Depersonalisation

In these examples, the pervasiveness of passivization coupled with the absence of an explicit agent suggests the presence in specialized texts of a tendency to depersonalise discourse. The phenomenon is

confirmed by inspection of various specialized texts based on a positivist empirical approach. Their objectivity rests on the assumption that principles and properties are suggested to the scientist by direct observation of phenomena. This inductive process is realised linguistically by reduction of the human element and personalisation of the experiment's physical aspects. In expressive terms, the phenomenon is signalled by such typical research-process verbs as *demonstrate, suggest, highlight, indicate, confirm*, etc. with inanimate subjects consisting of facts, events and elements.

In a study on this subject, Halliday (1988) points to the constant depersonalisation of English scientific language, a trend which has produced over the centuries a whole range of variously personalised different forms. Thus, for instance, the prevalence of such personalised forms as *Smith suggested that* has given way to an increasingly marked use of nominalization, with the main clause and its infinitive compressed into a complex noun phrase which can serve as subject of another clause. This development has gone through an intermediate stage with copula (*Smith's suggestion was that*), followed by its omission (*Smith's suggestion that*). This marks the apex of depersonalisation, as verb phrases like *is confirmed by* or *conflicts with* acquire a non-personal subject as *suggestion*.

Increased use of depersonalisation is also confirmed by a very common feature of specialized texts: the author referring to himself indirectly through third-person pronouns and such noun phrases as *the author, the research team* and others, or conveying his personal views to personalised forms of the type *the book investigates, this article demonstrates*, etc. A trend to depersonalisation is observed not only in omission of the subject-speaker, but also in the reduction of any direct reference to the interlocutor. As shown by Todd Trimble and Trimble (1978) for English instruction manuals, the addressee is avoided through indirect forms and the use of passive modals. In the following example, for instance, the interlocutor is not mentioned, while the focus of the message is placed on the action's consequences:

(95a) Steel weld backing should be sufficiently thick so that the molten metal will not burn through the backing.

Although it does not refer to the consequences of the action in an explicit way, this sentence implies a precise instruction as to how that action should be performed. The following sentence shows how this pragmatic function could be expressed:

(95b) If steel weld backing is not sufficiently thick, the molten metal will burn through the backing.

This sentence presupposes the following, in which the deontic aspect is much more evident:

(95c) The steel weld backing must be sufficiently thick to avoid burning through the backing.

The instruction underlying the sentence drawn from the instruction manual is therefore the following:

(95d) You must make the steel weld backing sufficiently thick or the molten metal will burn through the backing.

Clearly, any direct reference to the interlocutor has been reduced by a depersonalisation process involving various stages. As observed with other phenomena, depersonalisation cannot be considered a general feature of all specialized discourse. In argumentative texts, for example, first-person pronouns (whether singular or plural) are used more often when referring to the locutor, because the emphasis is often on authorial autonomy within the discipline.[7] The use of first-person pronouns is indicative of the effort to convince the reader by emphasising the argumentative structure of discourse, as in the following passage:

(96) I have called [...]. I mean by this [...]. And I argue that [...]. Let me give an example of what I mean. My contention [...] is [...]. But this, I have to point out, [...]. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: xxxii)

7   As Hyland (1999) has shown, academic writers employ first person markers for three main purposes: i) to organise arguments and structure their texts; ii) to introduce or discuss research activities; or iii) to explicitly indicate their attitudes to findings or align themselves with theoretical positions.

In argumentative specialized texts the author sometimes emphasises his presence in the text so strongly that it becomes fragmented, interrupted by repeated digressions and parenthetical clauses:

(97) The classical theory of employment — supposedly simple and obvious — has been based, I think, on two fundamental postulates, namely: [...] (Keynes 1936/1973: 5)

Even in argumentative specialized monographs, especially in the hard sciences, there is, however, a general trend to make the language more indirect and less personal. This behaviour of specialists is confirmed more or less explicitly by their own statements. The Nobel laureate P.W. Bridgman, for example, devotes two entire pages of his book *The Way Things Are* to justifying his choice to express personal opinion using first-person pronouns. In particular, it is noticeable that an author's notoriety increases self-confidence and the use of a more personal style. Very often behind these depersonalised forms lurks the author's fear of accountability. An example of this attitude is found in a statement cited by Gilbert and Mulkay (1984):

Everybody wants to put things in the third person. So they just say, 'it was found that'. If it's later shown that it was wrong, they don't accept any responsibility. '*It* was found. I didn't say I *believed* it. *It* was found.' So you sort of get away from yourself that way and make it sound like these things just fall down into your lab notebook and you report them like a historian. (Gilbert/Mulkay 1984: 58)

Once again we are confronted with different types of behaviour among authors, each leading to special syntactic options which in turn reflect a given pragmatic orientation. As in the previous chapter, our analysis of the main features of specialised discourse helps interpret in depth the linguistic options chosen — sometimes subconsciously — by specialists when drafting a text. In particular, the investigation of syntax is extremely useful for understanding specialists' behaviour because the syntactic construction of a language provides key evidence of its organisation of logical thought.

IV. Textual Features

There are a number of features that distinguish specialized texts also from the textual standpoint. Many of these are peculiarities shared by all types of text — not only in specialized fields — and do not constitute a typological exception but rather a distinction in quantitative terms. In some cases, however, specialized texts seem to avoid the use of standard textual norms in favour of 'deviant' options whose motives this chapter seeks to address. It also reviews other peculiarities attributed to specialized discourse by previous studies, with an assessment of their accuracy. These similarly include exceptions that signal an analogy between certain specialized genres and other more general text types.

1. Anaphoric reference

Various studies have shown that anaphoric reference is one of the most common devices deployed to increase textual cohesion (cf. Halliday/Hasan 1976, ch. 2). In conjunction with other referential phenomena, alongside ellipsis, substitution and lexical cohesion, it forms the textual framework which — combined with suitable cohesive devices — accounts for a text's constituent features. This phenomenon is familiar in common language but far less so in specialized texts: in legal writing, for example, it is normally avoided in favour of lexical repetition. An illustration of this is the following paragraph taken from the Appendix to this volume:

(1) The Member Firm shall notify Grantor in writing, of any infringement, imitation, passing off or use of the Service Marks or any confusingly similar marks by any third party which comes to its attention. The Member Firm, as licensee, shall have the right to decide whether or not proceedings shall be brought by the Member Firm against any such third parties. In the event that it

is decided that action should be taken against any such third party, the Member Firm may take such action in its own name. If the Member Firm chooses not to bring proceedings against any such third party, Grantor shall be entitled to bring proceedings in the name of the Member Firm and, in such event, the Member Firm agrees to cooperate fully with Grantor to whatever extent it is necessary or appropriate to prosecute such action. All legal costs shall be borne by the Member Firm and any damages awarded shall be equitably apportioned on the basis of damages suffered and costs incurred. (2: 113-131)

Here the repetition of such lexical items as *Member Firm*, *Grantor* and *any (such)* *third party / parties* is far more acceptable than anaphoric reference through personal pronouns. This preference — observed already in Crystal / Davy (1969) — stems from the need for maximum clarity and avoidance of ambiguity, a typical trait of legal discourse mentioned earlier and confirmed by the texts in the Appendix. In the following, for example, the repetition of *Landlord* in the possessive form, instead of the possessive pronoun *his / her*, seeks to avoid the anaphorical reference of *agents* to the word *Tenant* in subject position:

(2) [The Tenant will] Permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at reasonable hours in the daytime to enter the Property to view the state and condition thereof (1: 63-64)

(3) [The Tenant will] Permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at reasonable hours in the daytime within the last twenty-eight days of the tenancy to enter and view the Property with prospective tenants (1: 75-77)

In the following quotation, the repetition of the lexeme *Property* instead of its referent *it* helps to avoid the possibility that this pronoun might erroneously be made to refer to *notice board* or *notice*:

(4) [The Tenant will not] place or exhibit any notice board or notice on the Property or use the Property for any other purpose than that of a strictly private residence (1: 68-70)

At times, however, there is excessive recourse to lexical repetition even in cases where the risk of ambiguity is very slight or inexistent, as in the following example, where the use of the postmodifier *of the Landlord* instead of the possessive adjective *his / her* is hardly

justifiable, as it is obvious that the *other rights and remedies* mentioned cannot be attributed to a defaulting tenant:

(5) Provided that if the Rent or any instalment or part thereof shall be in arrear for at least fourteen days after the same shall have become due (whether legally demanded or not) or if there shall be a breach of any of the agreements by the Tenant the Landlord may re-enter on the Property and immediately thereupon the tenancy shall absolutely determine without prejudice to the other rights and remedies of the Landlord (1: 78-83)

The same remark can be made about the following quotation, in which the expression *on the part of the Tenant* could be rewritten *on his / her part* without giving rise to any ambiguity, as the word *agreements* is the object of the present participle *performing*, which in turn is syntactically coordinated with *paying the Rent*; indeed, since the party paying the rent is the tenant, there is no risk of misinterpreting the referent of the word *agreements*:

(6) [The Landlord agrees with the Tenant as follows –] That the Tenant paying the Rent and performing the agreements on the part of the Tenant may quietly possess and enjoy the Property during the tenancy without any lawful interruption from the Landlord or any person claiming under or in trust for the Landlord (1: 89-92)

This frequent — and at times unjustified — recourse to lexical repetition also takes place in those rare cases in which the text employs anaphorical referential elements. For example, in the following quotations — along with the relative pronoun *which* — the lexical element being referred to is also mentioned:

(7) Whereas, Grantor is the owner of the name "Dale Johnson Ryder Warren" and certain service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A, and has been granted the right to sublicense derivatives thereof, that is, marks and names which use any one or more of the component names "DALE", "JOHNSON", "RYDER" or "WARREN" alone or in combination with other names or marks (which names and marks are referred to collectively as, "Service Marks"); (2: 8-15)

(8) Whereas, the Service Marks are used by the Member Firm in connection with the providing and advertising of services in the fields of auditing and accounting, taxation, management consulting and other related areas and are sometimes used on products related to such services (which trademark uses are

intended to be included within the definition of Service Marks as used herein); (2: 16-22)

This need for precision lies at the base of another relevant characteristic of legal texts, that is, the frequent recourse to the reference to the parts of the text itself, specifying in the clearest way the textual element being referred to. Notice, for example, the frequent use of the 'textual-mapping' (Bhatia 1987) adverbials *hereto, herein, hereof* and *thereto* in the following sentence:

(9) Whereas, Johnson Ryder Archer & C., Johnson Ryder Chester & C., Dale Johnson Nelson & C., Dale Johnson Stokes & C., Grantor, Johnson Ryder International a partnership, and Dale Ryder Warren an association, have entered into the Component License Agreement, effective as of April 1, 2002 ("Component License Agreement"), a copy of which is attached hereto as Appendix A (without Appendices A and B attached thereto which are fully recited herein and to which the Member Firm agrees to be fully bound as if originally a party thereto; (2: 47-57)

These adverbials generally refer to a document or a part of it and specify its exact location or identification, in other cases they accompany past participles which otherwise might be interpreted erroneously. Here are some examples:

(10) In section 21 thereof (1: 33)
The hands of the parties hereto (1: 101)
The day and year first above written (1: 101-102)
By the license granted hereby (2: 34)
Any regulations thereto (2: 40)
Agreed by the parties hereto (2: 42-43)
Fully recited herein (2: 55)

The need for maximum precision in legal language is confirmed by exophoric reference, with detailed specification of any contextual item mentioned in the sentence. An example of this is the unnatural effect, in everyday sentences containing vocative forms, of the interlocutor's surname when enquiring about his identity. Philips' (1987) corpus provides interesting instances of this use:

---

(11) JUDGE: Uh, Richard Reichenstein, (4 sec.pause) Is Richard Reichenstein your true name, sir?
DEFENDANT: Yes, sir. (2 sec. pause)
JUDGE: Ms. Miller, is your true name Elizabeth Miller?
DEFENDANT: Yes, it is, your Honor. (2 sec. pause) (Philips 1987: 88-89)

Quite often specialized discourse not only deploys textual items to clarify or specify the relationship between different parts of a sentence but also uses cohesive devices to illustrate textual organisation or authorial intention more clearly. In this case lexical anaphora has a pragmatic function, insofar as it does not replicate the semantic side of the repeated concept but clarifies its illocutionary value. For example, in the following paragraph the first sentence is not necessarily understood as a proposal. Its intended meaning is conveyed by the anaphoric expression *this proposal*, which occurs in the second sentence:

(12) The way to solve some problems connected with congestion in air traffic is to raise prices at peak times and lower them at others. This proposal is based on nothing more than the principles of demand and supply. (Merlini 1982: 192)

As Merlini keenly observes, anaphora does not simply refer back to the semantic value of the previous sentence but also to its performative value and specifies its illocutionary orientation. The fact that an author prefers to suggest pragmatic value indirectly through a noun phrase *(this proposal)* rather than a verb phrase *(I propose)* confirms the familiar tendency to nominalization and no explicit authorial presence in the text.

2. Use of conjunctions

The same point may be made about the use of conjunctions. These items not only add cohesion to texts but also have a pragmatic function, which clarifies the purpose of the sentence that follows. For instance, after such expressions as *but, however, on the other hand* and so forth, one expects a sentence semantically opposed to the

previous one, with conjunctions like *as, since, for, because* and others generally introducing a reason or explanation. It is notable again that legal language strongly emphasises the pragmatic function of connectives by making meaning more transparent through inclusion in the surface form of a lexeme denoting their illocutionary value. An instance of this may be seen in the following sentences from the Appendix, where the part in italics is often a more transparent paraphrase of common connectives:

(13)   NOW, THEREFORE, *in consideration of* the premises and of the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth the parties agree as follows: (2: 58-60)

(14)   The Member Firm agrees, both during and after the term of this Agreement, to cooperate fully and in good faith with Grantor and to execute such documents as Grantor reasonably requests *for the purpose of* securing and preserving Grantor's rights in and to the name "Dale Johnson Ryder Warren" and to the service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A. (2: 106-112)

(15)   *In the event that* it is decided that action should be taken against any such third party, the Member Firm may take such action in its own name. (2: 119-122)

As the most common connectives may have several uses (and pragmatic values) despite their expressive conciseness, their place is often taken in legal texts by a longer but more pragmatically transparent paraphrase. Textualization is subservient again to pragmatic requirements, as the need to ensure a single clear-cut interpretation prevails over text length.

3. Thematic sequence

Some studies of specialized discourse focus on the thematic structure, i.e. the sequence of thematic items (introducing topic or theme) and rhematic items (containing what is said about the theme) (cf. Halliday 1973). This division overlaps with the distinction between 'given' (an item of information known to the addressee) and 'new' (information that is not found in the preceding text or context). The 'given' item is often, but not always, the same as the theme. In English the theme of

unmarked sentences is generally their subject and occurs initially. A standard paragraph sequence has each new theme referring back to the rheme of the previous sentence, according to the following pattern (Figure 1):
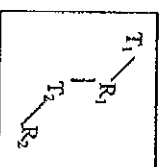
Figure 1. Standard thematic sequence.

The sequence of thematic and rhematic items in the text makes discourse both cohesive and coherent. This is not the only pattern found in English: it has several variants. The thematic structure is parallel, for example, when its different themes refer to the same opening theme. The diagram is then of the following type (Figure 2):
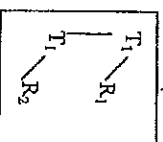
Figure 2. Parallel thematic sequence.

A clear example of this model is the text below (an abridged version of Keynes 1936/1973: 3), with the thematic position of the subject *I* stressing the author's critical stance towards the existing theory and his effort to prove the innovative nature of his work:

(16)   I have called this book the *General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money*. I have placed the emphasis on the prefix *general* to contrast the character of my arguments and conclusions with those of the *classical* theory. I have become accustomed, perhaps perpetrating a solecism, to include in 'the classical school' the followers of Ricardo, including (for example) J.S. Mill, Marshall, Edgeworth and Prof. Pigou. I shall argue that the postulates of the classical theory are applicable to a special case only and not to the general

case, the situation which it assumes being a limiting point of the possible positions of equilibrium.

Besides these regular structures there are others based on their variations and combinations. Figure 3 is a model taken from Hutchins (1977), in which the theme of the first sentence originates two different themes:
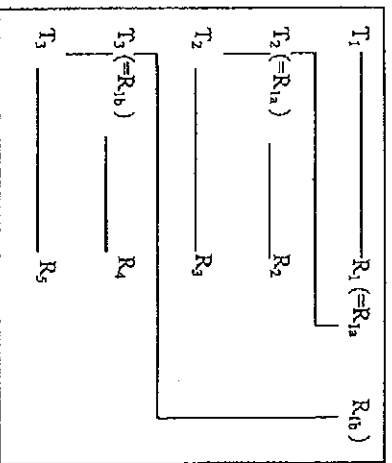
Figure 3. Hutchins' (1977) thematic sequence.

A text based on this sequence is the following:

(17)   All substances (T1) are divided into two classes: elementary substances and compounds (R1= R1a + R1b). An elementary substance (R2) which (T2) consists of atoms of only one kind (R3). [...] A compound (T3 = R1b) is a substance (R4) which (T3) consists of atoms of two or more different kinds (R5). (Hutchins 1977: 21)

Generally speaking, one can observe that in his thematic structure the specialist adopts the same conventions commonly employed in general language. This is the the conclusion Kurzon (1984) comes to at the end of his analysis of the thematic structure of five types of legal texts:

What this seems to suggest is that legal texts do not present an exceptional case as far as the organization of elements within the sentence is concerned,

since theme and rheme correspond to given and new information, respectively, unless there is a good reason otherwise. (Kurzon 1984: 49-50)

There are cases, however, when the specialist appears highly aware of the advantages of placing certain information items in thematic rather than rhematic position or vice versa, and through skilful use of such devices he is able to enhance the text's pragmatic values. Pettinari (1983), for instance, has shown that in surgery reports the subject switches from thematic to rhematic position according to mainly pragmatic principles. It is thematic every time the surgeon considers an item referred to by the subject of importance to the surgical operation performed. Any information considered of secondary importance, however, is given rhematically. In his analysis of the last two sections of Darwin's *Origin of Species*, Halliday (1990) points out that the text's thematic pattern allows the author to appear as an authority on the subject. The passage quoted is the following (thematic part in italics):

(18)   *Authors of the highest eminence* seem to be fully satisfied with the view that each species has been independently created. *To my mind it accords better with what we know of the laws impressed on matter by the Creator, that the production and extinction of the past and present inhabitants of the world* should have been due to secondary causes, like those determining the birth and death of the individual. *When I view all beings not as special creations, but as the lineal descendants of some few beings which lived long before the first bed of the Silurian system was deposited, they* seem to me to become ennobled. *Juging from the past, we may safely infer that not one living species will* transmit its unaltered likeness to a distant futurity. [...] *We can so far take a* prophetic glance into futurity as to foretell that it will be *the common and widely-spread species, belonging to the larger and dominant groups, which will* ultimately prevail and procreate new and dominant species. (Halliday 1990: 71-72)

There is clearly a thematic progression that gradually shifts the weight of authority from early scientists who rejected evolutionism to Darwin himself and his proposals, through the sequence: *authors of the highest eminence – the Creator (to my mind) – I – we.*

4. Text genres

One of the phenomena that most distinguishes specialized discourse is compliance with the norms governing the construction of its different text genres.[1] There is usually a close link between the type of specialized text and its structure, which in turn implies a number of correlations between the conceptual, rhetorical and linguistic features that characterize the text itself. Genre not only provides a conventional framework but also affects all other textual features (with an overall pragmatic function, e.g. report, information, discussion, etc.) and constrains their conceptual and rhetorical development, which in turn determines the linguistic choices made as the text unfolds. With time, several text types have arisen – some derived from genres common in general language, others crafted specifically to meet the needs of specialists. In the 1600s and 1700s, for instance, there was a considerable growth in scientific newspapers and academic proceedings, which explains the success of shorter, more publishable genres such as the experimental essay (cf. Chapter 9), memorandum or letter, which coexisted with earlier, less manageable genres (not suitable for newspapers, journals or collective volumes) like the treatise, dissertation, textbook, dialogue, diary, etc. Despite the rather high number of text genres in use, new text types are added every year to the list. One of the latest additions is the *executive summary* written for top managers. In the business world, the need to economize on time means that executives generally avoid reading long papers or reports; instead they ask a subordinate to inspect the document and draw up a summary of the main points required for decision-making.

Another text form widely adopted in recent years is the *abstract* – the summary of an article published in a scholarly journal or of a

1 The several studies on specialized genres include the following: Bargiela-Chiappini (1999), Berkenkotter / Huckin (1995), Bhatia (1993, 1998, 2002b), Bhatia / Candlin / Gotti (2003), Bondi (1999), Christie / Martin (1997), Gläser (1995), Gunnarsson (1998), Hyland (2000), Johns (1997), Kurzon (1997), Myers (1998), Sarangi / Coulthard (2000), Swales (1990, 1998), Trosborg (2000).

paper presented at a conference.[2] Its appearance and success is due once again to the huge number of publications available (some 50,000 scholarly journals published every year, for a total of 5 million articles), which place a limit on the number of texts that a single reader can inspect. The abstract provides readers with a short summary that shows whether a topic is relevant and worth the time required to read the whole article. The success of this genre in conference programmes is due, on the other hand, to the high number of papers presented – often in parallel sessions – at such events, which forces participants to choose which presentation to attend. Through training and professional engagements, specialists learn to follow given norms and patterns in each type of text; the conventional use of genres also produces certain expectations among their audience, and whenever the rules are broken a text is misunderstood or rejected.

Such conditions are followed very closely in specialized texts, even when the reasons underpinning certain features no longer exist. An example of this phenomenon is the textual construction of English legal documents. In recent contracts it is increasingly common to divide a text into numbered sections, but in many instances (as demonstrated by the two texts in the Appendix) the same devices are either omitted or occur only occasionally. This is due to a custom established before the invention of printing: writing across each line from margin to margin, without any punctuation, to avoid additions or alterations of the original meaning. (on the use of punctuation in legal documents cf. Mellinkoff 1963: 152 ff.; on the division of the text into blocks of print cf. Crystal / Davy 1969). Such conventions have in part survived to this day, although printing makes text alteration far more difficult. Thus the first text in the Appendix to this volume, for example, closely follows the legal tradition of avoiding most punctuation marks: it has no full stops at the end of paragraphs and no commas or other marks in between, apart from a few brackets, inverted commas and dashes. The second text in the Appendix follows instead the standard layout of English legal documents – with the different

2 The abstract has been studied by several scholars; to name just a few: Andersson / Gunnarsson (1995), Busch-Lauer (1995), Cortese (2002), Gläser (1991), Melander et al. (1997), Salager-Meyer (1990, 1992), Swales (1990).

sections in separate blocks (preconditions, introduced by *WHEREAS*, are placed between a verb, in the archaic form *witnesseth*, and *that*-clauses specifying contractual provisions). This layout does not always follow the textual rules of standard language (cf. for example the conjunction *and* introducing a new paragraph which is in fact a continuation of the previous one in parts 2: 40-41 e 2: 46-47). This arrangement in blocks is typical of English legal documents and diverges from the standard division applied to general discourse and other specialized texts, which are normally divided into paragraphs. The paragraph does not only reflect a conceptual unit within the text but also performs a special pragmatic function. The physical layout itself on the page replicates the conceptual-pragmatic dimension, favouring the identification of separate text parts and highlighting their functions and interactions: this improves comprehension of textual organisation and makes the meaning easier to decode.

As shown by Trimble (1985), however, in specialized discourse there is not always a perfect match between the conceptual and physical dimension of paragraphs; indeed, the 'conceptual paragraph' (built on a unitary concept) may be inconsistent with the 'physical paragraph' (notable for its typographical layout). Sometimes the main point is expressed in one paragraph and investigated in the following one; some-times it is not expressed explicitly but has to be inferred from the details provided (an 'implicit paragraph'). Trimble's claims have been confirmed by Baumann's (1990) analysis of specialized discourse, which clearly shows that the ratio between physical and conceptual paragraphs seldom exceeds 1:1. His data are given below (cf. Table 1):

LSP text form	Historiography	Linguistics	Psychology	average
Monograph	23.07	81.80	47.27	50.71
Scientific article	46.80	16.00	25.25	29.35
Textbook	0	15.38	25.92	13.76
Essay	9.52	26.76	3.57	13.28
Average	*19.84*	*34.98*	*25.50*	

Table 1. Baumann's (1990: 25) ratios between conceptual and physical paragraphs; data obtained by multiplying the number of conceptual paragraphs by 100 and dividing the result by the number of physical paragraphs of the proper text.

As for the structure of different textual genres, Van Dijk (1977) showed that they normally follow a clearly codified, widely accepted pattern. For instance, the research article usually consists of INTRODUCTION – PROBLEM – SOLUTION – CONCLUSIONS. In the social sciences, e.g. psychology, the standard sequence is INTRODUCTION – THEORY – PROBLEM – EXPERIMENT – COMMENT – CONCLUSIONS. Further divisions occur within each part: e.g. the EXPERIMENT section may be subdivided into PROJECT – METHODS – MATERIALS – RESULTS. As Van Dijk aptly remarks, the role of each subsection is pragmatic as well as semantic:

> Thus the PREMISE – CONCLUSION structure not only has semantic properties (e.g. implication of the latter by the former), but also determines the structure of the ACT of arguing: a conclusion is drawn, an inference made. (Van Dijk 1977: 245)

This means that the quality of textual organisation facilitates comprehension of content but also of the pragmatic function of each section: some are informative, others evaluative, or predictive, etc. These tend to form standard sequences that typically reflect the specialist's theoretical or practical activities. One such sequence identified by Merlini Barbaresi (1988) is ANALYSIS – PREDICTION – PROPOSAL, which clearly incorporates the cognitive approach followed by an economist engaged in theoretical work:

> As an expert, he sees a problem (analysis component), foresees its consequences (prediction component), and, out of his social function, proposes a solution (proposal component). (Merlini Barbaresi 1988: 144-145)

The close interrelation between epistemological and textual aspects is a common trait of specialized discourse and makes its realisations highly codified – in keeping with a standardised argumentative pattern. As texts unfold, they reflect the specialist's heuristic approach and point to the analytical method employed in the theoretical investigation of a given issue or for the implementation of a new type of empirical test. Looking at specialised reports of scientific experiments, Hutchins (1977: 31) found the following methodological framework:

1. 'current' hypothesis / paradigm;
2. demonstration of inadequacies;
3. statement of 'problem';
4. statement of 'new' hypothesis or of alternative hypotheses;
5. testing of hypothesis or hypotheses;
6. 'proof' of hypothesis or of one of alternative hypotheses;
7. implications of 'solution'.

The first three parts may be seen as constituents of a common stage identifying the problem, whereas the other four tackle the solution to that problem. Textual standardisation occurs in all disciplinary fields and is strongest when a text is not free-standing but is the redrafting of an earlier text, incorporating all data reflecting the new conditions. This is the method followed for drafting legal contracts which, as they serve a range of recurring codified situations governed by specific norms, are often based on pre-printed forms with spaces for the parties' names and special clauses to meet individual requirements. Even when printed forms are avoided, the alternative is a checklist of textual provisions, from which the user can draw those required in a given situation. This custom is confirmed by Kurzon's following statement:

> The texts of contracts, wills and deeds are never written afresh every time a lawyer has to draw one up. The lawyer uses what are called in the profession 'formbooks', in which documents or paragraphs of documents are set out, and it is up to the lawyer to choose the appropriate paragraph or paragraphs for the particular document s/he is drawing up. All the lawyer has to add to these documents are the personal particulars of the person or persons. (Kurzon 1989: 284-285)

A similar case is found in business correspondence, with the main types of letter generally grouped into categories according to their pragmatic function: enquiries, offers, orders, complaints, reminders, etc. Each category follows a standard pattern, with certain sections arranged in a set sequence. Besides the structure shared by all business letters – with an opening (sender and receiver's address, date, reference numbers, salutation), a body (containing the letter's main content) and a closing section (greetings, signature and reference to

attachments) – there is a conventional pattern for each type of letter. For example, an order for goods is generally organised as follows:

1. reference to a previous offer;
2. order for the goods required;
3. instructions concerning packing, delivery, insurance, etc;
4. specification of the method of payment preferred.

Business letters do not normally require much creative effort on the writer's part, because the sender tends to use standardised letter formulae stored in his computer files; these are customized by adding details about the transaction concerned. The standardisation of business communication also makes texts shorter, more concise and comprehensible to the reader – a key factor in specialised transactions and global communication. Commenting on this important link between pragmatic transparency and textualization in business correspondence, Ghadessy and Webster make the following remark:

> The purpose of almost every business letter is to evoke some material and immediate response or action. A letter of enquiry or adjustment, an application for a position, a collection letter, a sales letter – all are designed to get something done. For this reason business writing is often spoken of as PERSUASIVE WRITING. In business writing the use of language must be governed by the results aimed at; it must be designed to create the proper impression upon the recipient, and thus to evoke the proper action, response and result. Another important point is that business letters are likely to get a more rapid reading than the works of literature. Consequently the business writer tries to compress his message so that it will be immediately and unmistakably clear. There must be no chance of its being misunderstood. He must prepare his letter for the eye as well as the brain. (Ghadessy / Webster 1988: 112)

5. Textual organisation

The considerable codification of specialized genres increases semantic-conceptual coherence and transparency, as signalled by textual organisation. Studies on this aspect of text have not only

118

highlighted its different parts but also the contribution of each part to the overall pattern. Swales (1990), for example, has analysed several genres of academic writings; a chapter of his book is devoted to research articles in English and a detailed analysis of its various parts is provided.[3] As regards introductory sections of scientific articles, he has identified a general structure, called *CARS (Create a Research Space) Model* (cf. Figure 4).

MOVE 1 – ESTABLISHING A TERRITORY
Step 1 – Claiming centrality
  and / or
Step 2 – Making topic generalization(s)
  and / or
Step 3 – Reviewing items of previous research

Declining rhetorical effort ←

MOVE 2 – ESTABLISHING A NICHE
Step 1A – Counter-claiming
  or
Step 1B – Indicating a gap
  or
Step 1C – Question-raising
  or
Step 1D – Continuing a tradition

Weakening knowledge claims ←

MOVE 3 – OCCUPYING THE NICHE
Step 1A – Outlining purposes
  or
Step 1B – Announcing present research
Step 2 – Announcing principal findings
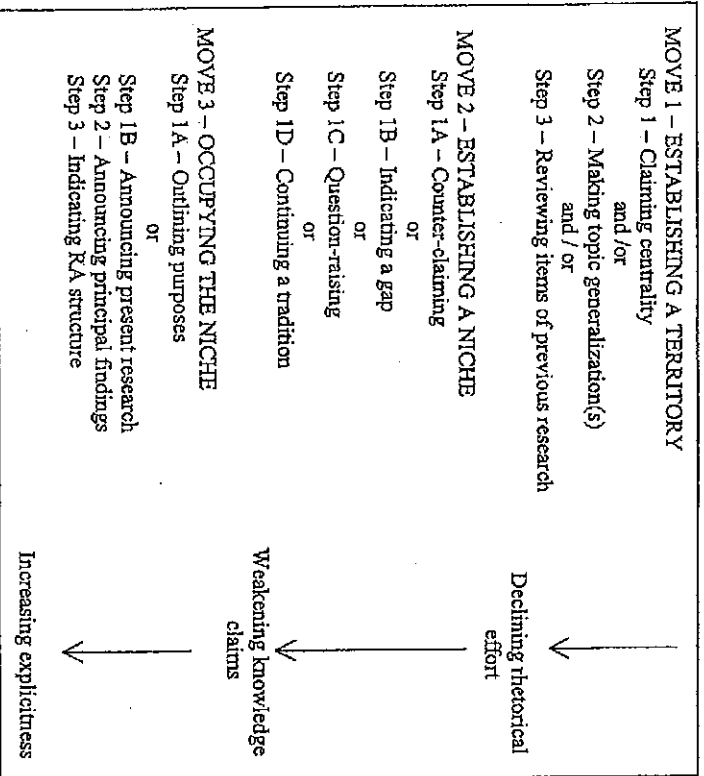Step 3 – Indicating RA structure

Increasing explicitness ←

Figure 4. Swales' (1990: 141) CARS Model for article introductions.

3   Many studies have been devoted to the analysis of research articles, among which: Bazerman (1988), Giannoni (2002), Hyland (1998, 2001), Mauranen (1993), Myers (1989).

The Introduction section of research articles has attracted in-depth analysis by other analysts, who have identified the structure of this microact and the functions of its constituents. Hepworth (1978), for example, investigated the following introduction to assess its analytical structure:

(19)   (1a1) There is now much evidence to support the hypothesis of Rich (1964) that ozone injures plants by destroying the semipermeability of cell membranes (Ting, Perchorowicz and Evans, 1974). (1a2a1) The transport of several metabolites and inorganic ions across cell membranes is altered (Ting and Heath, 1975). (1a2a2) Consequently, leakage of water and additional metabolite leads to cellular death and necrosis of tissue. [...] (1a2b1) Generally, conditions which promote good transport rates and stomatal opening predispose the plant to greater injury. (1a2b2) Various chemicals such as accidents, fungicides and growth regulators can offer protection if applied before ozone exposure (Ormond and Adepipe, 1974). (1b1a) However, very few investigators have considered the effects of postfumigation condition treatments (1b1b) because these have not been considered of much value (Heck, 1968). (2a1) In practical terms, however, it would be more feasible to apply treatment after exposure (2a2) than to predict an air pollution episode. (2b) In this paper we will argue that successful treatment of plant after ozone exposure may be feasible (Sutton and Ting, 1977).

The analytical structure that Hepworth (1978) draws from this introduction is the following (Figure 5), and highlights the binary pattern on which the text is mainly based:

	1a1	1a2a1	1a2a2	1a2b1	1a2b2	1b1a	1b1b	2a1	2a2	2b
PROBLEM	X					*however*				
PREVIOUS RESEARCH	X	Y				SOLUTION	DATA LACKING	HYPOTHE-SIS		PUR-POSE
		Specifically			*and Y*	X	X	X	Y	Y
			therefore	*true*	*yet*	Y	*Because*	Y	*rather than*	

Figure 5. Hepworth's (1978, quoted in Swales 1981: 82) analysis of an introduction.

Adopting Hoey's (1979) model – structuring a specialized text according to a sequence of three main macroacts: SITUATION-

PROBLEM-SOLUTION – Hepworth's introduction could be summed up in the following sequence:

- SITUATION: 1a1 - 1a2b2.
- PROBLEM: 1b1a - 1b1b.
- SOLUTION: 2a1 - 2b.

As pointed out by Swales (1981), however, Hepworth's pattern – and its revision according to Hoey's model – may be misleading because the theoretical issue stressed in the Introduction is only mentioned at the beginning of the article (and not always explicitly). The solution is given in detail only within the body of the article, often towards its end. Another study of macroact structure is Candlin et al. (1976), which highlights the different stages normally found in oral texts of doctor-patient interactions during surgery visits. The basic pattern found by the authors consists of four main stages, preceded and followed by two routine opening and closing stages typical of oral interaction, i.e. initial greetings and leave-taking. The first stage is the doctor's request for information on the complaint and the patient's conveyance of such information; the second is the visit itself, the third is the doctor's diagnosis; and the fourth is advice for treatment and follow-up. These four stages have also been investigated by researchers looking at single exchanges within the corpus considered. They have identified not only sentences realising the four aforesaid macrofunctions but also a number of metacommunicative functions linked to the speaker's (generally the doctor's) need to make his communicative intention clear and transparent. Despite the difficulty of assigning a single pragmatic purpose to each interactant (a problem encountered not only in this study but in most attempts to identify textual microacts), the authors have found the following highly-recurring functions in doctor talk to patients during surgery visits:

a. GREET ('Good morning.')
b. ELICIT ('Can you tell me what happened?')
c. INTERROGATE ('Did you bend right back when you fell?')
d. QUESTION ('Does this hurt?')
e. MAKESURE ('It doesn't hurt?')
f. EXTEND ('So it doesn't hurt to put your weight on it?')

g. ACTION-INFORM ('I'm going to put in a couple of stitches.')
h. DIAG-INFORM ('You haven't broken anything.')
i. PROG-INFORM ('It should heal up quite quickly.')
j. TREAT-DIRECT ('Take plenty of rest.')
k. DIRECT ('Can you just lie down a moment.')
l. APOLOGY ('Sorry.')
m. TALK ('Little girls tend to do that sort of thing.')
n. MED-ASK ('Are you allergic to penicillin?')
o. ADMIN-ASK ('Do you use this hand in your work?')
p. REASSURE ('Nothing serious here')
q. ACCEPT ('I see')
r. LEAVETAKE ('See you after the x-ray then.')
s. GO-ON ('Mmm...' To encourage patient to continue the story)
t. ANSWER ('Yes, I'm afraid it's broken just here.')
u. REPEAT ('What?')
v. RESTATE ('...Swallow all right' Repeating what was said because the patient did not catch it)
w. FEED-ME-BACK ('Do you follow me?')

The combination of various sequences within the corpus is fairly regular: 95% of interactions open with the microact GREET followed in 60% of cases by the microact ELICIT and in 50% of cases by INTERROGATE. The sequence GREET – ELICIT – INTERROGATE (with its associated replies) is therefore considered distinctive of the first stage. A comprehensive investigation of microacts in doctor-patient interaction was carried out by Coulthard and Ashby (1976), who analysed 24 recordings of talk in English surgeries. Their study is part of a wider research project that sought to develop a new linguistic model for the structure of oral discourse in verbal interactions across different social and vocational settings. The theoretical model derived from this project is given in Sinclair and Coulthard (1975), which offers a hierarchical framework for oral interaction based on four levels: TRANSACTION, which in turn comprises several EXCHANGES, divided into MOVES made up of ACTS. Although the hierarchical structure of doctor-patient interactions found by Coulthard and Ashby closely reflects that of oral communication in general, their study highlights a feature that makes it more marked than others: the fact that all interactive moves are driven by the same interactant, i.e. the

doctor. In doctor-patient communication, the doctor is the one who starts every exchange while the patient behaves as a respondent. The value of this study lies in its use of linguistic analysis for evidence of the doctor's dominant role in his relationship with patients – a point made also by psychological and sociological investigations of participants' behaviour in this kind of conversation.

Similar results have been found in analyses of courtroom interactions during legal proceedings. Various studies (among others, Charrow / Charrow 1979; Walker 1982; Philips 1987; Atkinson / Drew 1990) have shed light on the considerable divergences between the standard norms of verbal interaction and its construction in a specialized setting where cross-examination of suspects and witnesses is crucial to the outcome of the trial. The defending lawyer exploits all his linguistic skills to obtain admissions, substantiation, contradictions and other evidence to underpin his reasoning. A crucial factor is the way each question is put, how answers are exploited to support a line of defence (or accusation), how hesitations or flaws are emphasised, witnesses interrupted, topics introduced, main points listed, etc. The great difference between standard interaction vs. legal proceedings and the lawyer's role vs. that of the witness are clearly described in the following quote from Charrow (1982), underlining the inadequacy of common interaction norms in this kind of specialized context:

> Rules for turn-taking are different in courtroom 'conversation' than in ordinary conversation. And even if witnesses are aware of the existence of different rules, they do not usually know what those rules are, and are either penalized or left at a disadvantage. Linguistic theory as it currently stands cannot account for these rules. Nor can it explain the conversational structure when two different sets of rules meet and conflict – as they do when a lawyer and a non-lawyer converse. (Charrow 1982:99)

Trimble (1985) has developed an analytical model for specialized texts based on four levels. The first of these identifies the main objectives of discourse, equivalent to the text's main pragmatic functions – e.g. reporting an experiment, making suggestions, illustrating a new theory, postulating a new hypothesis and so forth. The second level tends to focus on what Trimble calls "the general rhetorical functions that develop the objectives of [the first level of rhetorical analysis]". These draw attention to the text's macrofunctions and

inform, its rhetorical-conceptual framework. Thus an experimental report is likely to include the following macroacts:

1. Stating purpose;
2. Reporting past reasearch;
3. Stating the problem;
4. Presenting information on apparatus used in an experiment:
    a) Description;
    b) Operation;
5. Presenting information on experimental procedures.

The third analytical level sheds light on the specific rhetorical functions that develop the general rhetorical functions found at the second level. These are the microacts needed to realise each macroact: e.g. the description stage is divided into sub-stages for physical and / or functional and / or procedural description. Finally, this model accounts for the rhetorical devices that enable the development of semantic / pragmatic links within and among the microacts assigned to the third level. Physical description, for instance, relies mainly on spatial rhetorical resources, while functional description relies on causal resources, and procedural description relies chiefly on a time-oriented structure. Various aspects of Trimble's model have been criticised, especially as regards the inaccurate linguistic terminology and merging of terms from different linguistic fields (semantics, pragmatics, morphosyntax, textual analysis and rhetoric) without sufficient consistency. However, this model has helped to identify the different structural levels of specialized discourse and its simplicity has permitted several applications also for pedagogic purposes. Sinclair and Coulthard's (1975) framework is of course far more detailed and sophisticated, but is also harder to apply for practical purposes. Trimble's model, on the other hand, is more user-friendly, if not equally thorough and comprehensive. What is quite difficult to analyse is the link between macroacts and microacts, also because different rhetorical functions (to quote Trimble's term) may be applied at both macro and micro levels. It is not surprising, therefore, that a considerable number of studies on the organisation of specialized texts concentrate on the relationship among microacts and their dependence on certain macroacts, as visualised in various effective diagrams. An

example in this class is Rossini Favretti and Bondi Paganelli's illustration (cf. Figure 6) of the links found in the following passage from a psychology monograph:

(20) (1) Since the very earliest studies of adolescence, stress has been placed upon the characteristic intellectual development of the period. (2) There is such an increase of mental power that subject matter too difficult for freshmen in high school or in college is easily learned by the same pupils when they become seniors. (3) A high school teacher notes also marked increases in judgement, reasoning, comprehension, and memory. (4) Some of the observed development in mental power comes from neural growth, but part of it is doubtless due to the piling up of experience and knowledge. (5) By the end of the eighth grade a child has accumulated a considerable store of basic information and has reduced many simple skills to such an automatic level that he can use them in his thinking. (6) He has, for instance, acquired meanings for about ten thousand words, and therefore has a vocabulary with which to think. (7) Several mathematical skills are now habitual, many elementary scientific facts have been thoroughly absorbed, and there has been considerable experience with cause and effect relationships. (8) The childhood years may thus represent a gradual development of sufficient experience to serve as a basis for more complicated thinking. (9) In many curves of learning one finds long plateaus covering the periods during which basic skills are being acquired. (10) At the end of such plateaus there is usually a sudden and marked rise in learning rate.

The sequence of macro- and micro-acts generally follows clearly-codified norms which are widely accepted within the discipline, but it may also be governed by inherent semantic-pragmatic requirements leading to natural sequences of the type: cause-effect, condition-consequence, problem-solution, hypothesis-evaluation, experiment-results, etc. The link among speech acts is such that the first item immediately suggests the second. Such semantic-pragmatic structures are not a feature of specialized discourse alone (or of a specific language) but occur universally. However, as seen earlier in this volume, the need for clarity forces specialists to adopt a more 'transparent' type of writing, where linguistic forms are an accurate expression of the text's semantic content but also a clear, unambiguous reflection of its pragmatic values. For this purpose, the writer employs not only the conjunctions and prepositions of standard discourse but also verbs and nouns that replicate the illocutionary dimension on the sentence surface.

OBSERVATION

GENERALIZATION (1) → AMPLIFICATION (2) → ADDITION (3)

ANALYSIS

REASON (4) → AMPLIFICATION (5) → EXEMPLIFICATION (7)

EXEMPLIFICATION (6)

PROBLEM DEDUCTION

INFERENCE (8) → EVIDENCE (9 + 10)
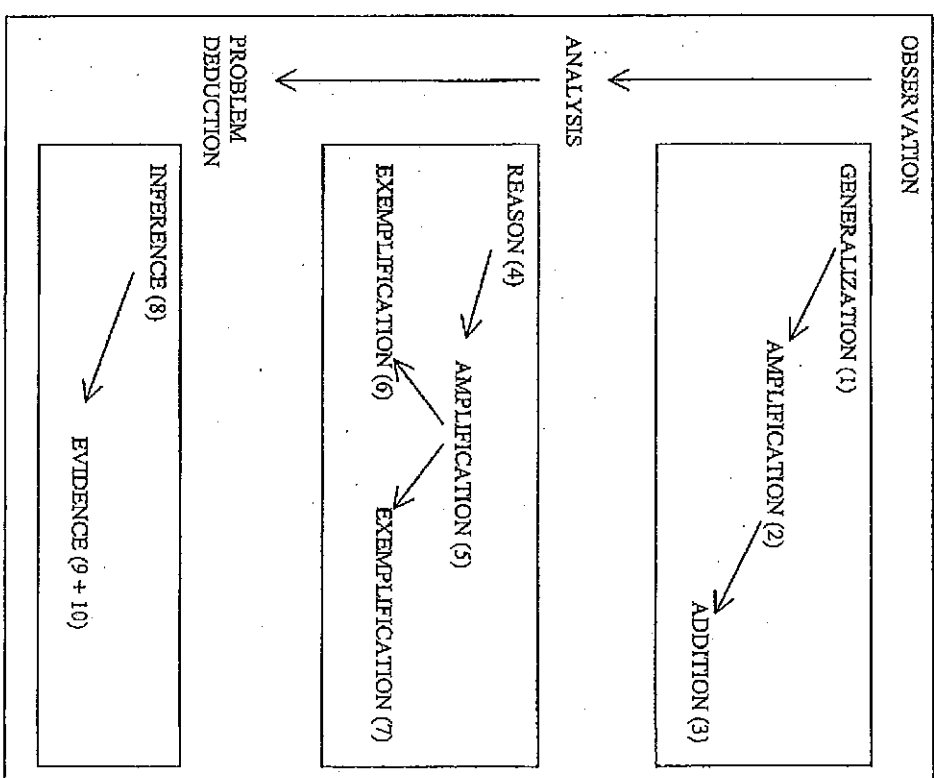
Figure 6. Rossini Favretti and Bondi Paganelli's (1988: 17-18) illustration of the structure of a passage from a psychology monograph.

The different microacts and macroacts in specialized texts – e.g. exemplification, temporal specification, causal links, concession, hypothesis, description, suggestion, conclusion, comparison (analogy / contrast), prediction, analysis, etc. – generally coincide with the pragmatic dimension of general language. In some cases, however, a

given semantic-pragmatic realisation may identify a certain text type. This happens in insurance contracts, where the hypothetical-predictive principle prevails over the macrostructure as a superordinate (van Dijk 1980) of the whole text. The macroact governing an insurance contract may indeed be summarised in a prediction of the type: 'If certain conditions are complied with (if the insured party pays the agreed premium at the right time) and if certain events take place (if the insured property is damaged or stolen, or if the insured person dies), a certain event will occur (the insured party will be compensated or his heirs will receive a given sum)'. This logical-semantic pattern means that English legal texts express ideational content through a surface structure of the following kind (examples from Crystal / Davy 1969):

(21) If the Life Insured shall pay or cause to be paid to the Society or to the duly authorised Agent or Collector thereof every subsequent premium at the due date thereof the funds of the Society shall on the expiration of the term of years specified in the Schedule hereto or on the previous death of the Life Insured become and be liable to pay to him / her or to his / her personal representative or next-of-kin or assigns as the case may be the sum due and payable hereunder in accordance with the Table of Insurance printed hereon and the terms and conditions of the said Table (including any sum which may have accrued by way of reversionary bonus) subject to any authorised endorsement appearing hereon and to the production of this policy premium receipts and such other evidence of title as may be required

(22) If upon the death of the life insured there shall be no duly constituted personal representative or nominee or assignee of the Life Insured able and willing to give a valid receipt for the sum payable such sum may in the discretion of the Committee of Management be paid to one or more of the next-of-kin of the Life Insured whose receipt shall effectually discharge the Society from all liability under this policy

Logical-semantic links of the hypothetical type are equally crucial in wills. Here the signatory's decisions are made dependent upon the occurrence of certain events: not only the testator's death but also other occurrences involving the life and death of heirs mentioned in the will, of the type: should X die before Y, if any of my children die before me, if X has no children, etc. In terms of linguistic realisation, the prevalence of this logical-semantic function implies frequent recourse to hypothetical clauses. In his study of the language of wills,

Finegan (1982) observed a far higher frequency of *if*-clauses compared to general texts: for instance, *if* occurs 25.71 times in every 100 sentences in wills, while it occurs only 4.20 times in standard American English (cf. Kucera / Francis 1967). Elsewhere microacts have no dominant role in the macrostructure but take on greater pragmatic importance in certain genres. This is the case, for example, of the defining aspect in legal documents. Here it is customary to mark the first occurrence of a noun or phrase that recurs in the text with a conventional term that can be used later on. The new term – generally introduced parenthetically or by expressions of the type *hereinafter called* or *in this agreement called* or simply *called* – is placed immediately after the first occurrence of the noun or its description. Often the conventional term for a given concept is capitalised, to show that it refers to a specific entity in a conventional manner. Evidence of this is found in the following passages, all taken from the second text in the Appendix:

(23) This Agreement, effective as of the first of April, 2003 between DALE JOHNSON RYDER WARREN, an Association organized and existing under the laws of Switzerland ("Grantor"), its successors and assigns, and DJRW Johnson Ryder Simpson & C., its successors and assigns ("Member Firm") (2: 2-6)

(24) WHEREAS, Grantor is the owner of the name "Dale Johnson Ryder Warren" and certain service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A, and has been granted the right to sublicense derivatives thereof, that is, marks and names which use any one or more of the component names "DALE", "JOHNSON", "RYDER" or "WARREN" alone or in combination with other names or marks (which names and marks are referred to collectively as, "Service Marks"), (2: 8-15)

Having introduced the contracting parties and the object of the agreement by a suitable nomenclatory procedure, the rest of the document mentions the *Grantor* / *Member Firm* / *Service Marks* whenever it refers to the firm Dale Johnson Ryder Warren or to the firm DJRW Johnson Ryder Simpson & C. or to the names Dale, Johnson, Ryder, and Warren. Similarly, some common terms are capitalised in legal texts to mark a special meaning, while in lower case they denote a general referent. In the aforesaid text for example, the term *Member Firm* is not usually capitalised whenever it does not

refer to the firm mentioned at the beginning of the contract but to another firm whose name is not given in the contract. Once again, accurate use of terminology and capitalisation stems from the great need for clarity in legal writing, though its widespread use may suggest more practical considerations. This remark stems from the analysis of clauses in documents of the following kind (example taken from Piesse 1987):

(25) The Conveyance is made the ...... between ...... of ..... (in this conveyance called 'the Vendor') of the one part and........ of ...... (in this conveyance called 'the Purchaser') of the other part.

Here the capitalised use of *Vendor* and *Purchaser* (as of *Landlord* and *Tenant* in the first document in the Appendix to this volume) does not single out a specific vendor or purchaser – as the contract mentions no other firms in this class – but it simply allows the drafter to write the names of the contracting parties only once in a pre-printed contract, without having to add their whole name every time.

6. Speech acts

One of the problems confronted by the analyst is how to profile certain speech acts within each part of a text, whether specialized or not.[4] Language often serves different purposes, as the author employs the text to achieve various results simultaneously. Any attempt to assign a single illocutionary meaning to a text (or its separate parts) is therefore an unacceptable simplification. The range of speech acts based on Austin's (1962) and Searle's (1969) taxonomies is similar in specialized and non-specialized texts. However, there is one class (performatives) that occurs far more frequently in legal texts. Here the wording of text is crucial, as the use or insertion of a given expression

---

4   On the analysis of speech acts in specialized texts cf., among others, Bowers (1989), Danet / Hoffman / Kermish (1980), Garzone (1996, 2001), Kurzon (1986), Stotesbury (2002), Tiersma (1986, 1999).

may alter the act's value. Accordingly, the value of a legal act often hinges on the use of a specific formula. A will, for example, is valid only if it contains the phrase *I bequeath*, while a wedding's validity requires the formula *I pronounce you husband and wife*. The observation that performatives are closely associated with legal discourse is also confirmed by Austin's choice of the adjective *operative* (typical of lawyers' jargon) as the best synonym for his own term *performative*:

Lawyers when talking about legal instruments will distinguish between the preamble, which recites the circumstances in which a transaction is effected, and on the other hand the operative part – the part of it which actually performs the legal act which it is the purpose of the instrument to perform. (Austin 1962: 236)

Language in the law is probably more performative than in any other field (cf. Kurzon 1986). Indeed, the mere statement of guilt or innocence pronounced by a judge makes the culprit guilty (or not guilty) of a crime, whether or not he actually committed it. Similarly, a court can declare legally 'deceased' a person who has been missing for a long time, even if that person may have moved to another country or changed his identity and therefore is not, physically speaking, dead. Charrow explains the value of performatives in legal language in these terms:

Many legal pronouncements are *performatives*: [...] written or spoken words within the correct context are used to create contracts – performance obligations – between people. A marriage license – a written legal formula – and certain oral pronouncements made with the proper legal authority join two people in marriage. If a legal notice is published where a fairly large number of people can be assumed to see it, there is, in certain circumstances, a presumption under the law that all people have been notified. This is despite the fact that most people do not read legal notices, and probably would not understand them if they did read them. (Charrow 1982: 97-98)

The importance of speech acts with a performative orientation – with a first-person singular pronoun and a conventional formula making the act legally valid – is confirmed by the following transcription of questioning in the courtroom, where the accused admits guilt (*I did it*)

but only pleads guilty from a legal point of view at a later stage (*Guilty*):

(26)
CLERK: Do you plead guilty or not guilty?
DEFENDANT: Yes, I did it. I said I did it.
CLERK: No. Do you plead guilty or not guilty?
DEFENDANT: Yes, I did it. I just want to get it over.
MAGISTRATE (to probation officer): Can you be of help here?
The probation officer goes over to the defendant and eventually goes out of court with her. Later in the morning the case is 'called on' again.
MAGISTRATE: Do you plead guilty or not guilty?
DEFENDANT: Yes, I did it.
MAGISTRATE: No, I'm asking you whether you plead guilty or not guilty. You must use either the words 'not guilty' or 'guilty'.
DEFENDANT: (Looking toward probation officer) She said, "Say guilty."
MAGISTRATE: No. You must say what you *want* to say.
DEFENDANT: Yes, I'll say what you like. I did it.
MAGISTRATE: No, you must use the language of the court. (To probation officer) Did she understand?
PROBATION OFFICER: Yes, she understood.
The probation officer once more approaches the dock, whispers to the woman and the word 'guilty' emerges. (Carlen 1976: 110-111, quoted in Danet 1980: 460-461)

7. Argumentative pattern

The highly-structured construction of specialized discourse is reflected also in its argumentative pattern. As the main purpose is to convince readers that the author's perspective is the right one, argumentation (but also clarity and logical coherence in the presentation of evidence) proceeds in a straight line to achieve the perlocutionary effect inherent in this type of text. For this reason, text is organised according to a 'compositional plan' (Werlich 1976) carefully designed to serve a given thesis. Though this plan is not identical in all argumentative specialized texts — because it depends on the thesis considered, on the specialist's heuristic method, his epistemological principles and personal style — there is an overall pattern underlying most texts (cf. Toulmin 1958). In this sense, a

claim (C) is normally based on data (D) and supported by a warrant (W). If there is a rebuttal (R), the claim may be undermined by a qualifier (Q). That requires a backing item (B) to strengthen the claim. Figure 7 is Toulmin's example of his model.

Harry was born in Bermuda (D) ——→ so: presumably (Q) Harry is a British subject (C)

since a man born in Bermuda will generally be a British subject (W)

unless his parents are foreigners, or he is a natural-ized American (R)

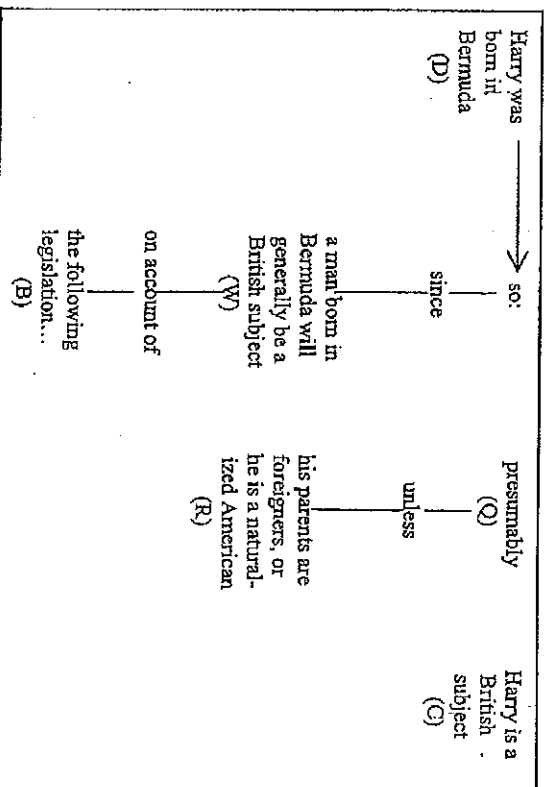on account of the following legislation... (B)

Figure 7. Toulmin's (1958: 99) argumentative model.

If applied to specialized texts, this general argumentative model reveals several variants and adaptations. However, the prevalent pattern usually follows the same structure (cf. Figure 8):
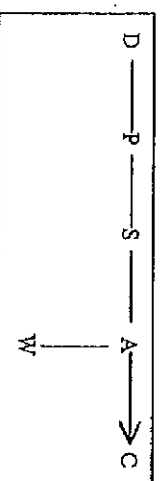
D ——— P ——— S ——— A ———→ C
W

Figure 8. Prevalent argumentative pattern in specialized texts.

This structure comprises various stages: after analysing previous literature and / or observing data (D), the author identifies the problem (P) and suggests a viable solution (S). Through logical argumentation (A) supported by adequate proof (W), he reaches a conclusion (C) and affirms it with a certain degree of certainty. Although common to many types of specialized and non-specialized texts, this model allows for a degree of subjectivity when the author attributes certainty to his conclusions. Even in the hard sciences and in objective demonstrations, the role of evidence brought in favour of a given claim depends largely on the use of language. As Swales (1986) aptly observes:

> It is sometimes thought that the facts 'speak for themselves' – that a scientist's description of natural reality, if it is carefully and completely done, is simply a reflection of that reality. If this were to be the case, then Boyle's complex strategy would not have been necessary. Facts are constructed. Phenomena only acquire fact-like status by consensus and that consensus is only achieved by rhetorical persuasion. The art of the matter, as far as the creation of facts is concerned, lies in deceiving the reader into thinking that there is no rhetoric, that research reporting is indeed 'writing degree zero' and that the facts are indeed speaking for themselves. (Swales 1986: 17)

Given the highly persuasive value of language, authors use their linguistic skills with great care and strategic competence to create consensus around their claims, taking up positions and expressing judgements through a range of rhetorical and linguistic resources, variously called 'appraisal' (Martin 1997), 'evaluation' (Hunston / Thompson 2000) or 'stance' (Hyland 1999). One way to add value to a thesis is to weaken alternative options: that is why authors often refer critically to previous studies. The very notion of argumentation means that an author should offer new insights that contradict earlier opinions. These are generally presented in a *pro-and-contra* (Naess 1966) rather than *pro-et-contra* progression, as the author does not merely list diverging viewpoints but steers the reader towards his own conclusions. Alternative claims are therefore presented in such a way that their logical inconsistency, inaccuracy or incompleteness are

highlighted. In doing so, the author adopts a highly explicit tone and conveys personal criticism, as in the following passage:[5]

(27) I shall argue that the postulates of the classical theory are applicable to a special case only and not to the general case, the situation which it assumes being a limiting point of the possible positions of equilibrium. Moreover, the characteristics of the special case assumed by the classical theory happen not to be those of the economic society in which we actually live, with the result that its teaching is misleading and disastrous if we attempt to apply it to the facts of experience.

In this way the writer projects his 'authorial self' (Ivanic 1998) in the text. Sometimes criticism is not expressed directly but in a tactful way, as the author prefers to use an indefinite form such as *one*, *someone* or general nouns such as *people*, *the majority* rather than a personal pronoun (*I, we*):

(28) In the case of a change peculiar to a particular industry one would expect the change in real wages to be in the same direction as the change in money-wages.

(29) Some people still seem to accept that war is a risk of power politics. But the majority would probably hold that war is a completely inappropriate means of politics.

This indirect way of expressing criticism occurs whenever the author's opinion is presented as an obvious conclusion to be drawn from his analysis. In the following quotation, for example, the analysis of previous research ends with a demonstration of inconsistency, marked by the use of the adverbial *hence* and the epistemic modal form *cannot*:

(30) Hence, if there is no change in the propensity to consume, employment cannot increase.

In this case the author adopts the following argumentative process: A maintains T. But from T follows U, and U is untenable. Therefore T is untenable. Once the author has demonstrated that previous approaches

---

5 The examples in this section are taken from Keynes (1936 / 1973), Merlini (1983) and Werlich (1982).

to the subject have been unsatisfactory, he usually points out where the problem lies, and then puts forward his claim. In order to emphasize his commitment to the search for a suitable solution to the problem, the author often makes use of deontic modal verbs such as *shall, will* or *would*:

(31) I would like here to raise the question of whether there might not be biological endowments in man that make the human form of communication uniquely possible for our species.

(32) We will maintain that there has been a fundamental misunderstanding of how in this respect the economy in which we live actually works.

If personal or passive forms rather than active ones are used, the style is kept personal by the use of the possessive adjectives *my* and *our*:

(33) This will be our contention: ...

(34) Our theory can be summed up in the following propositions.

(35) The outline of our theory can be expressed as follows: ...

In dealing with a topic in a new and original way, the author often needs to invent new terms or redefine existing ones. As seen above, operations that imply a creative role on the part of the author are usually denoted by the use of deontic modality.[6] The modals commonly employed to carry out this metalinguistic function are *must, should, ought, shall* and *will*:

(36) We must now define the third category of unemployment.

(37) Disutility must be here understood to cover every kind of reason which ...

(38) Nor should we regard as 'involuntary' unemployment the withdrawal of labour ...

(39) Such unemployment ought to be included under the above category of 'voluntary unemployment'.

---

6 On the use of modality in specialized argumentation cf., among others, Gotti / Dossena (2001), Hunston (1994b), Hyland (1998, 2002), Vartala (2002), Vihla (1999).

(40) This state of affairs we shall describe as 'full' employment.

(41) The value of D at the point of the aggregate demand function will be called the effective demand.

Modality is also adopted in those metatextual statements in which the author wants to make his discourse structure explicit:

(42) It can be demonstrated that ...

(43) And we must pause for a moment to consider what this involves.

(44) This formulation poses three [...] problems which I shall now attempt to deal with.

In order to make his persuasive function more effective, the author sometimes appeals directly to his reader, although he usually employs a third person rather than a second person pronoun:

(45) A brief summary of the theory of employment to be worked out in the course of the following chapters may, perhaps, help the reader at this stage, ...

(46) The reader will notice that I am quoting from the earlier...

Very often, however, the writer chooses not to mention the reader explicitly for fear that he might regard this as a threat to face (Brown / Levinson 1987) and therefore be unwilling to cooperate. He prefers instead to use more impersonal sentences, made more persuasive by means of deontic modals such as *must* or *should*:

(47) The classical conclusions are intended, it must be remembered, to apply to the whole body of labour.

(48) These conclusions should be applied to the kind of economy in which we [...] live.

However, the subtlest and most effective strategy generally adopted by skilful writers is that which gives the reader the impression of not being conditioned by the author, while he is actually being led along the argumentative path which corresponds to the original composi-tional plan. In order to compel the reader to obey his argumentative

instructions and reach the same conclusions that he has come to, the skilful writer does not use the type of modality commonly employed to place somebody under an obligation, that is, deontic modality, as this would produce the opposite effect. The mastery of the writer, on the contrary, is shown by his adoption of a more neutral tone and the use of less subject-oriented modality such as dynamic (Palmer 1979 / 1990) or epistemic. In this way he gives the impression that his conclusions are not imposed on the reader, but rather that they are logically drawn from the evidence produced or the argumentative strands presented. The two modals principally used to persuade the reader to take this 'mental leap' (Brockriede 1975) from facts to conclusion are *can* and *must*:

(49) Only at this point can there be stable equilibrium.

(50) This level cannot be greater than full employment.

(51) If employment increases, then, in the short period, the reward per unit in terms of wage-goods must, in general, decline and profits increase.

In this way, the author is not stating conclusions which might be perceived as presumable or probable, but as inferential statements adequately warranted by evidence. The argumentative process consists therefore of a process of reduction of uncertainty which can be summed up in the following two continua of modality:

PROBABILITY – POSSIBILITY – POSITIVE CERTAINTY

IMPROBABILITY – IMPOSSIBILITY – NEGATIVE CERTAINTY

The author's main aim is thus to demonstrate that by means of his argumentation, POSSIBLE (P) becomes NECESSARY (P) or – to use Leech and Coates's formula for the law of inverseness of possibility and necessity (1979: 80) – NOT (POSSIBLE P) becomes NECESSARY (NOT P). The choice of *must* and *can't* to reproduce the persuasive effect involved in the argumentative function is not casual; as their strong epistemic value is only a gradient on their meaning continuum which also includes strong deontic modality. The gradience of the modals selected enables the writer to charge the original semantic

value of his statement 'It is necessarily the case that P / not P' with the illocutionary value 'It is necessary for you to accept P / not P'.

8. Linear structure and heuristic methods

The analysis of specialized texts points to the presence of a close link between the author's language and his heuristic method. This relationship surfaces especially in the text's drafting plan, which is organised according to the discipline's theoretical foundations. Thus different methodological orientations (e.g. inductive rather than deductive reasoning) are necessarily reflected in considerably different text forms. At times the close link between method and composition creates major difficulties for authors, especially when the drafting pattern clashes with the non-sequential nature of theoretical argumentation. An example of this conflictual situation can be found in *The General Theory*, whose method is very different from the one prevalent at the time when it was written and considered inadequate by Keynes. His analytic model, instead, is based on the notion that there is an organic interdependence among economic variables, and in this way it aims to overcome the limits of the atomistic approach which had been characteristic of the classical theory. Keynes himself explains the systematic nature of the new analytic method at the point in *The General Theory* at which he clarifies what the new methodology amounts to:

(52) The object of our analysis is, not to provide a machine, or method of blind manipulation, which will furnish an infallible answer, but to provide ourselves with an organised and orderly method of thinking out particular problems; and, after we have reached a provisional conclusion, by isolating the complicating factors one by one, we then have to go back on ourselves and allow, as well as we can, for the probable interactions of the factors amongst themselves. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 297)

Keynes' heuristic method thus sets itself to overcome the restricted nature of the classical approach by dealing with two opposing needs. On the one hand, there is the need to examine the various economic

variables as isolated elements. On the other, there is the need to bring these independent studies together and to show the close interrelations among the various variables examined. This alternation between linear atomistic analyses and complex systemic integration is reflected at the level of the expository form of the book. At that level, we find recurrent references back and forth to other parts of the book. Chick's simile compares this technique to the expository language of cinema:

> Keynes's method is more like a film, a moving picture, made from snapshots (as films are), each snapshot systematically related to what has gone before. It is a story full of flashbacks – and flashes forward. (Chick 1983: 14)

Keynes uses this continual referring of the reader to other parts of the book as a compromise between, on the one hand, the complexity and systemic interdependence of the parts of his analysis and, on the other, the linearity of the lay-out of the book as written. We can see how this compromise operates in *The General Theory* with a few quotations in which Keynes moves away from the text in order to help the reader to grasp the overall scheme of the book. What he provides are indications that different aspects of a given economic problem have to be discussed in different chapters:

(53) The theory of wages in relation to employment, to which we are here leading up, cannot be fully elucidated, however, until chapter 19 and its Appendix have been reached. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 18)

(54) We shall return to the aggregate supply function in chapter 20, where we discuss its inverse under the name of the *employment function*. But in the main, it is the part played by the aggregate demand function which has been overlooked; and it is to the aggregate demand function that we shall devote Books III and IV. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 89)

(55) It may be mentioned, in passing, that the effect of fiscal policy on the growth of wealth has been the subject of an important misunderstanding which, however, we cannot discuss adequately without the assistance of the theory of the rate of interest to be given in Book IV. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 95)

(56) Only at the conclusion of Book IV will it be possible to take a comprehensive view of the factors determining the rate of investment in their actual complexity. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 137)

In other parts of the book, before launching into the analysis of the elements of a given theory, Keynes gives a summary sketch of it, even though he is aware that the reader will have some difficulty in understanding the novel theory before it has been presented in full and its terminology explained:

(57) A brief summary of the theory of employment to be worked out in the course of the following chapters may, perhaps, help the reader at this stage, even though it may not be fully intelligible. The terms involved will be more carefully defined in due course. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 27)

On occasion he has to break up the discussion of some economic variables, leaving the exposition suspended, in order to introduce further explanations which the reader might consider as mere digressions:

(58) In this and the next three chapters we shall be occupied with an attempt to clear up certain perplexities which have no peculiar or exclusive relevance to the problems which it is our special purpose to examine. Thus these chapters are in the nature of a digression, which will prevent us for a time from pursuing our main theme. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 37)

Sometimes the clarifications appear one after the other and produce the appearance of digressions on digressions. For instance, as we have seen in the previous quoted passage, Chapters 4-6 are counted as a digressions to which is added an appendix which itself serves as a digression:

(59) User cost has, I think, an importance for the classical theory of value which has been overlooked. There is more to be said about it than would be relevant or appropriate in this place. But, as a digression, we will examine it somewhat further in this appendix. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 66)

Occasionally Keynes finds himself unable to sustain the discussion of some issues and has to introduce some aspects or terminology without being able to clarify them adequately:

(60) In some passages of this section we have tacitly anticipated ideas which will be introduced in Book IV. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 12)

(61)   It would seem (following Mr Kahn) that the following are likely in a modern community to be the factors which it is most important not to overlook (though the first two will not be fully intelligible until after Book IV has been reached. (Keynes 1936 / 1973:119)

The recurrent alternation between the presentation of new material and recourse to matters already discussed gives Keynes' work its particular character, which is very different from that of the traditional polemical essay. Victoria Chick finds that the expository manner used in *The General Theory* is in many ways like the typical structure of a theatre play:

> To make clear the structure of the *General Theory*, it might be helpful to compare the book to a play. When characters go off-stage in the theatre, you do not presume them to be dead – they are likely to pop back at any time. The *General Theory* is rather like that. Early on (G.T. Chapter 3) you are given a sketch of the plot, but it is only much later (G.T. Chapters 19-21) that the full story is revealed. (Chick 1983:28)

Another feature on which Keynes depends is the heuristic value of insights. These allow both reader and writer to see matters which might escape notice by the application of deductive and observational methods. These intuitive capacities are important not only in the understanding of the text, but also in the process of its composition, for they suggest the development of the thought being set out and also clarify its details and applications. The act of writing itself is part of Keynes' heuristic activity which allows him to keep moving ahead, by means of chains of intuitions and deductions, in the uncovering and understanding of the facts of economic life. This explains Keynes' frequent recourse in his argumentation to hypothetical clauses preceded by a premise and followed by a conclusion, with an argumentative pattern of the following kind: 'Let (Z) be ... Now if ..., thus ... '. A variant structure starts with the observation of some 'facts of experience' or other features of 'human nature', from which the author draws his conclusions with expressions such as: 'If this is true, it follows that ... '.

9. The emotive force of specialized texts

As seen above, one remarkable feature of specialized discourse is the great referential value of texts and the limited emotional involvement of their receivers (cf. Chapter 2). The following citation from Barrass (1978), for example, clearly emphasises the objectivity of specialized discourse:

> The novelist, journalist or advertizer, to drive home a point, may repeat, exaggerate or understate his case. None of these techniques is available to the scientist who must tread a more difficult road and convince readers by evidence, relying on the truth clearly stated and on the logic of the argument. (Barrass 1978:31)

Theoretical validity and the evidential weight of observations are considered sufficient to confirm the value of an author's claims, whereas any emotive content is carefully removed. As Walton explains:

> Traditionally, appeals to emotion in argument have been distrusted and even labeled categorically as logical fallacies. There is a common tendency to contrast 'impartial reason' with 'the passions' and to distrust the latter in reasoned argument. And this tendency is often affirmed in logic texts where appeals to emotion have been treated as inherently illogical and subject to strong censure. (Walton 1989:82-83)

This assumption has been normally complied with for over four centuries — that is, since modern science pitted itself against Aristotelian rhetoric, making a clear distinction between 'conceptual rhetoric' and 'persuasive rhetoric' (Frye 1957), in line with the division between intellect and emotion. In recent years, however, especially in the wake of Perelman and Olbrechts-Tyteca's (1958) research, the persuasive element of argumentation, also in specialized discourse, has been reconsidered. Its aim therefore is to convince the audience not only through sound demonstration and experimental evidence but also through plausible, persuasive argumentation that is not necessarily irrefutable. For this purpose, authors deploy every device available in specialized discourse, including figurative and

emotive language which is normally considered alien to the epistemology of specialized texts. To exemplify the use of emotional elements in specialized argumentation we shall refer once again to Kenyes' text. Indeed, when reading *The General Theory* one immediately perceives that the conflictual element implicit in all argumentative texts is here taken to extremes.[7] This impression is confirmed by the reading of Keynes' correspondence with colleagues and friends, which is a useful insight on his determined intention to highlight the conflictual aspects of this book. In fact, in replying to Ralph F. Harrod, he writes:

> I want, so to speak, to raise a dust, because it is only out of the controversy that will arise that what I am saying will get understood. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: XIII, 548)

Keynes' decision to adopt this very conflictual standpoint is coherently maintained in the style he chooses for his writing, and is reflected in the very harsh and polemic tone which characterizes his use of words and figures of speech, especially in the preface to the work and in Chapter 12. The extremely emotive language employed has an immediate impact on the reader, who would expect to find the usual referential tone typical of specialized discourse rather than an emotional tone which, according to Jakobson (1960), is more pertinent to literary works. The choice of lexis in Keynes' text, in fact, demonstrates the author's ability in using the linguistic code to criticize the existing economic theory and present his new ideas in an extremely figurative and connotative language. From Keynes' use of words, the reader realizes that the author conceives his work as a reaction against the current theory, as "a long struggle of escape from habitual modes of thought and expression." (Keynes 1936 / 1973: xxiii). He has reached a state of freedom from the preconceived doctrines of the past, and is now feeling himself "to be breaking away from this orthodoxy, to be in strong reaction against it, to be escaping from something, to be gaining emancipation." (Keynes 1936 / 1973: xxiii). He wants to make a clean break with the past, as he considers

---

7   On the analysis of conflictual aspects in argumentative discourse cf., among others, Gotti *et al.* (2002), Hunston (1993b), Salager-Meyer (2000), Salager-Meyer / Zambrano (2001).

the theory prevalent among academics to have proved "misleading and disastrous" (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 3). The language of struggle and conflict is often used by Keynes, not only to express his controversies with fellow economists, but also to describe the divergences of opinion among other economists. Here are, for example, some of the statements used by Keynes to express the difference in viewpoint of Malthus and Ricardo:

(62) Malthus, indeed, had vehemently opposed Ricardo's doctrine [...]; Ricardo conquered England as completely as the Holy Inquisition conquered Spain. [...] The other point of view completely disappeared. [...] The great puzzle of effective demand with which Malthus had wrestled vanished from economic literature. [...] It could only live on furtively, below the surface, in the underworlds of Karl Marx, Silvio Gesell or Major Douglas. The completeness of the Ricardian victory is something of a curiosity and a mistery. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 32)

Keynes' mastery in the use of language is also shown by the ability with which he employs different tones to criticize his opponents. In fact, even though he usually prefers to choose a direct way of attacking them, he sometimes adopts a less straightforward method and recurs to irony as his weapon, as the following example shows:[8]

(63) The classical theorists resemble Euclidean geometers in a non-Euclidean world who, discovering that in experience straight lines apparently often meet, rebuke their lines for not keeping straight as the only remedy for the unfortunate collisions which are occurring. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 16)

Chapter 12 shows particular emphasis on the emotional tone of Keynes' style. The aim of this chapter is to convince its readers of the unreliability of economic decisions concerning investments due to the high level of irrationality in investors' behaviour. To underline this irrational attitude, rather than adopting a logical way of reasoning, Keynes prefers to argue "on a different level of abstraction from most of the book" (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 149). In particular, Keynes decides

---

8   The importance of the use of irony in argumentative discourse has been highlighted by Werlich: "Ironical style is frequent as a concise form of argumentation which attempts quick persuasion by ridicule instead of developed arguments." (Werlich 1982: 273)

to adopt lexical items which have a strong emotional load generally indicating excess in the presence or absence of certain semantic traits. The most frequent semantic fields to which such degree of excess is usually applied are reasonableness (*foolish, unreasoning, vagaries, irrational*), quantity (*disproportionately, outstanding, extreme, negligible, scanty, slight, non-significant*), size (*extensive, enormous, vast*), norm (*abnormal, anti-social*), gravity (*disastrous, collapse, serious*) and force (*violently, prevailing, predominates, predominance*). The markedness of Keynes' text is also denoted by the 'unnatural' semantic fields from which lots of lexical items are taken, which are far removed from the semantic areas commonly associated with the economic discipline and are therefore likely to arouse emotion in the readers. Some of these 'unnatural' semantic fields found in Chapter 12 are religion (*temptation, orthodox, fetish, doctrine, faith, sins*), physical elements (*sanguine, instinct, animal spirits*) and war (*gun, battle, assailed*). Even where lexical items do not denote excess or unnaturalness, they are often made more marked by the use of intensifying and attitudinal premodifiers which emphasize the semantic traits expressed by them or add a comment on them. The commonest of such pre-modifying expressions found in our text are: *decisively, very, highly, most, seriously, much more, intolerably, over-, entirely* and *scarcely*. On other occasions the author emphasizes the degree of validity of his assertions by means of attitudinal adverbials such as *obviously, surely, indeed, of course, frankly* and *in truth*.

Apart from the linguistic items examined above, Keynes makes use of various rhetorical devices to emphasize the emotional tone of his text. One of such means is reinforcement. In several cases, in fact, Keynes chooses to emphasize the semantic load of a lexical item by adding a synonym or a term related to it. Examples include: *vague and scanty, very slight and often negligible, ephemeral and non-significant, intolerably boring and over-exacting, inaccessible and very expensive, permanent and indissoluble, supplemented and supported*. Sometimes the succession of items is lengthened, with the addition of a third element which has the function of increasing the effect of the whole series: *eccentric, unconventional and rash; disastrous, cumulative and far-reaching repercussions*. The succession of elements is often seen not as a mere reception of the concept

expressed by the first element, but as a boosting of its semantic value in a sort of crescendo:

(64) We have to admit that our basis of knowledge for estimating the yield ten years hence of a railway [...] amounts to little and sometimes to nothing (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 149-150)

(65) Day-to-day fluctuations in the profits of existing investments [...] tend to have an altogether, and even an absurd, influence on the market. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 153-154)

(66) Thus if the animal spirits are dimmed and the spontaneous optimism falters [...] enterprise will fade and die. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: 162)

Another rhetorical device often used by Keynes to highlight the emotional tone of his discourse is contrast. The whole chapter, in fact, is built around a series of contrasts which emphasize the great discrepancy between the common view of rational expectations connected to investments and the irrational choices made by investors in reality. By reporting the linguistic items which express the main contrasts pointed out in the chapter, we can show the progress of Keynes' argumentation, and in particular highlight his point of view concerning long-term investments in the second column of the list here below:

(67)

existing facts	future events
reasonable	foolish
cold calculation	take a chance
fixed investments	liquid investments
revival	collapse
strengthening	weakening
enterprise	speculation
mathematical expectation	spontaneous optimism
action	inaction

A further rhetorical device used by Keynes to make the tone of his argumentative text more emotional is metaphor.[9] Indeed, the author

---

9   The strong emotional load favoured by the use of metaphoric language is pointed out by MacCormac: "I argue that metaphor results from a cognitive process that juxtaposes two or more not normally associated referents,

very often prefers to convey a certain concept by means of a figure of speech so as to make the idea he is expressing more striking. What creates the emotional effect is once again the use of items taken from fields not directly connected to the economic discipline; these fields moreover are chosen among the ones which bear strong connotations and are therefore very likely to arouse an emotional response in the reader. The following, are the commonest semantic fields from which Keynes builds his metaphors: religion (*the fetish of liquidity, the sins of the London Stock Exchange*), war (*dark forces of time and ignorance which envelop our future, this battle of wits, to defeat the forces of time*), corporal states (*to feed the maws of the professional, gambling instinct*), natural states (*a steady stream of enterprise, a whirlpool of speculation*) and playing games (*businessmen play a mixed game, the game of professional investment, gambling instinct*). The latter semantic field of playing games is certainly the one most frequently employed by Keynes, as it enables him to convey his argument in the most convincing way. Indeed, on deciding to base his persuasive strategy on an emotional level rather than on a rational one Keynes selects the analogy INVESTMENT = GAME as the best one to represent in the most immediate and striking way the irrationality and unpredictability of long-term investments

10. The literary value of specialized texts

As pointed out earlier in this chapter, most specialists concentrate on subject content rather than linguistic form when they sit down to write a monograph or another text type. Yet many authors are aware of the close relationship between these two dimensions and carefully adjust the form to enhance perlocutionary meaning. They often employ special rhetorical and linguistic devices (such as those illustrated previously), which are deployed for utilitarian reasons in view of the text's persuasive purpose. Aesthetic considerations are not a priority

producing semantic conceptual anomaly, the symptom of which is usually emotional tension" (MacCormac 1985:5).

in specialized discourse as they are in literary texts. Some scholars have indeed looked at the aesthetic value of specialized texts, but the term is used out of context and applied to functional rather than aesthetic features. One example is Weinrich's (1985) inclusion among aesthetic values of such properties as 'clarity', 'lack of contradiction' and 'coherence', which are in fact typical of specialized discourse. Weinrich's stance may not be entirely acceptable but it has raised a debate on an open issue that scholars in different disciplines have not yet properly investigated. The first example offered to support his claim – Watson and Crick's article in *Nature*, announcing their discovery of the structure of DNA – reaffirms Weinrich's highly-subjective application of the term *aesthetic* to functional features which are typical of specialized texts and generally regarded as absent in literary texts. Weinrich argues that the conciseness and richness of this text is conveyed in a linguistic form so 'classic' that it could be included in an aesthetic handbook for science writers, not only because of its revolutionary content but also for its terse presentation. The features identified by Weinrich (a concise text similar to a communiqué with argumentative and mildly critical additions) clearly make this article a model in its class but add no aesthetic value to Watson and Crick's text.

Weinrich's second example in support of his claim that scientific 'style' has an aesthetic dimension, is a volume published a few years after the *Nature* article, in which Watson describes the discovery made with Crick through a narrative interspersed with illustrations and anecdotes. Weinrich extols the interesting literary features of this book, which include the use of a style in keeping with all the rules of narrative art. However, these narrative features make Watson's book closer to a popularisation (which accounts for criticism from peers claiming that the volume is written in an excessively informal tone) or to an autobiographical work (which accounts for the volume's stylistic achievements). It is not appropriate, therefore, to assign aesthetic value to specialized texts because such values are not a priority for authors in the scientific community – which does not mean, of course, that all specialized texts inherently lack literary value, but this is an exception rather than the rule. When it occurs, the author is generally a person of uncommon linguistic sensitivity with

considerable personal knowledge of literary and metatextual discourse.

One of these exceptions is certainly Keynes' *General Theory*, in which the author – also influenced by the particular cultural spirit of the Bloomsbury group to which he belonged, together with leading literary figures such as Leonard and Virginia Woolf, Lytton Strachey, E.M. Forster, Clive and Vanessa Bell – shows his full awareness of the great expressive potentialities offered by the use of language and successfully exploits them in his economic argumentation, choosing, in particular, to stimulate the reader towards a cooperative effort of interpretation of his text. Keynes' own words give support to this hypothesis:

It is, I think, of the essential nature of economic exposition that it gives, not a complete statement, which even if it were possible, would be prolix and complicated to the point of obscurity but a sample statement, so to speak, out of all the things which would be said, intended to suggest to the reader the whole bundle of associated ideas, so that, if he catches the bundle, he will not in the least be confused or impeded by the technical incompleteness of the mere words which the author has written down, taken by themselves. [...] An economic writer requires from his reader much goodwill and intelligence and a large measure of co-operation. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: XIII, 470)

It is interesting to note how, in this passage, Keynes describes economists' mode of arguing as a succession of 'sample statements' which work by suggesting to the reader a 'whole bundle of associated ideas'. In this way, Keynes attributes to argumentative writing properties which are definitely literary: the reader takes cues from the weave of the text for various personal associations, rather than for unambiguous conclusions determined by an orderly and analytic set of premises and reasonings. This impression is confirmed by Keynes' attitude towards the use of definitions in his argumentative text. While recognizing that definition is integral to any sort of specialist communication, he also sees it as a hindrance to the writer's creative expression and a brake on the range of the reader's intuitions. He writes in this vein to R.B. Bryce:

In my book I have deemed it necessary to go into [definitions] at disproportionate length, whilst feeling that this was in a sense a great pity and might divert the readers' minds from the real issues. It is, I think, a further

illustration of the appalling state of scholasticism into which the minds of so many economists have got which allow them to take leave of their intuitions altogether. Yet in writing economics one is not writing either a mathematical proof or a legal document. One is trying to arouse and appeal to the reader's intuitions; and, if he has worked himself into a state when he has none, one is helpless. (Quoted in Patinkin / Leith 1977: 128)

Once more, Keynes stresses the literariness of economic writing and its clear difference from mathematics. Keynes' views on terminology are certainly in line with, and even follow from, the other theoretical and methodological novelties of *The General Theory*, and are themselves in some measure innovative. Also the ambiguity of a few passages of this book is not due to accidental or secondary factors such as haste, insufficient planning or negligent revision, but to a precise choice made by the author himself. Keynes meant his book to be an 'open work' (Eco 1989) as *The General Theory* outlines the main themes of a new theory without preventing the reader from intervening actively in interpreting it and bringing the author's creation to fruition. Its final form was meant to be elastic, capable of being read in a variety of ways, and open to the critical and interpretative agency of the reader. A year after publication, Keynes offered the following comment which supports what we have stated:

I am more attached to the comparatively simple fundamental ideas which underlie my theory than to the particular forms in which I have embodied them, and I have no desire that the latter should be crystallised at the present stage of the debate. If the simple basic ideas can become familiar and acceptable, time and experience and the collaboration of a number of minds will discover the best way of expressing them. (Keynes 1936 / 1973: XIV, 111)

The General Theory thus represents one of the few non-literary texts in which the author, willingly and knowingly, assigns to the reader not merely the role of decoding the text and assenting to the views propounded, but an altogether more demanding and important role as the author's collaborator in the working out of the final form and the exact meaning of the new economic theory.

V. The Development of Specialized Discourse in the 17th Century

The increasing need to use the English language for the expression of specialized texts caused a heated debate in 17th-century England, as the adoption of other languages (Latin, in particular) was felt to be no longer suitable for this purpose. The great epistemological and methodological developments taking place in that period (cf. Taavitsainen 2001) determined the need for corresponding changes both in the ways of communicating the new discoveries attained by means of innovative procedures and apparatus, and in the expressive tool to be used to describe and argue about the new phenomena observed and analysed.

The criticism of the methods traditionally adopted in the study of the sciences and the development of a new scientific system implied a change not only in the approach to the observation and interpretation of the laws of nature, but also in the way in which phenomena ought to be described and opinions expressed. Criticism was made both of how language was employed in the various processes of scientific research and, in particular, of the suitability of the tool itself for an accurate, precise expression of the concepts reported. Some critics maintained that an accurate interpretation and description of the complex phenomena of our universe required the adoption of a new language, based on innovative principles and using tools specifically devised for the purpose. Galileo, for example, pointed out the need for a novel scientific language, quite different from ordinary speech and mainly based on mathematical principles:

> Philosophy is written in this grand book, the universe, which stands continually open to our gaze. But the book cannot be understood unless one first learns to comprehend the language and read the letters in which it is composed. It is written in the language of mathematics and its characters are triangles, circles and other geometric figures without which it is humanly impossible to understand a single word of it. (Galilei 1623 / 1957: 237-8)

Even those scientists who intended to use verbal language in the expression of scientific phenomena often pointed out its deficiencies and inaccuracies. Bacon, for example, criticized the fact that in the scientific tradition based on the Aristotelian method the use of language was usually detached from the physical reality to which it referred. In his opinion the terms used in that tradition were not correct, as they referred to 'divisions of nature' which were not tested by any reference to reality, so that the discussions of the learned often ended up in disputes about words and names (the 'Idols of the Market Place') often referring to fictitious entities such as 'Fortune', 'the Prime Mover', etc. An example provided by Bacon of a confused or ill-defined term is *humid*, which he saw as corresponding to:

> Nothing else than a mark loosely and confusedly applied to denote a variety of actions which will not bear to be reduced to any constant meaning for it both signifies that which easily spreads itself around any other body; and that which in itself is indeterminate and cannot solidise; and that which readily yields in every direction; and that which easily divides and scatters itself, and that which easily unites and collects itself; and that which readily flows and is put in motion; and that which readily clings to another body and wets it; and that which is easily reduced to a liquid, or being solid easily melts. Accordingly, when you come to apply the word, if you take it in one sense, flame is humid; if in another, air is not humid; if in another, fine dust is humid; if another, glass is humid. So that it is easy to see that the notion is taken by abstraction only from water and common and ordinary liquids, without any due verification. (Bacon 1620 / 1968: IV, 61)

Bacon maintained, instead, that terms should correspond to data collected and reality observed, this being the only valid basis for the establishment of the laws of nature. There should be a strict relationship between the observational process and its representation, and a direct link should be established between reality observed and verbal expression. In this relationship, however, priority must be given to reality over language, and not vice versa. Elaborating on this concept, John Webster writes:

> Words are but the making forth of those notions that we have of things, and ought to be subjected to things, and not things to words: if our notions do not agree with the things themselves, then we have received false Idola or images of them. (Webster 1677: 21)

Another criticism often made by scientists was the polysemy characterising most words in any language, which often made texts ambiguous. The new scientists could not tolerate the uncertainty of meaning inherent in existing words and condemned all those who did not use language in an accurate way. Robert Boyle, for example, attacked alchemists for the "intolerable ambiguity" and the "unreasonable liberty" with which they used the same term to refer to different concepts, or for their misleading habit of giving "one thing many names" (Boyle 1661 / 1967: 113). The conclusion he came to was that "this equivocal way of writing was not to be endured" (Boyle 1661 / 1967: 115). The remedy that he suggested consisted in the coining of new terms providing a stricter delimitation of meaning:

> And I confess I could heartily wish, that philosophers, and other learned men (whom the rest in time would follow) would by common (though perhaps tacit) consent, introduce some more significant and less ambiguous terms and expressions in the room of the too licenciously abused word *nature*, and the forms of speech, that depend upon it. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: V, 168)

Apart from these considerations on either the unsuitability of verbal code to express complex scientific phenomena or its inaccuracy and ambiguity — considerations which are valid for all languages — specific accusations were made against the English language, the first being its inadequacy for scientific purposes due to its 'imperfection'. Walter Charleton was one of several who accused the English language of imperfection:

> If my Stile shall sound somewhat harsh and ungrateful many times to Ears unaccustomed to any but their Mother tongue, as coming too near to the Latin; I intreat you to consider, this is either no indecency in this place, or such a one at worst, which I could not otherwise avoid, than by involving my sense in the obscurity of words less proper and significant; the nature and quality of Subjects treated of, being such, as cannot be fully expressed in our yet imperfect Language. (Charleton 1680, Sig. E3v)

Such inadequacy was mainly due to the limited amount of vocabulary present in the language. As Ralph Lever clearly pointed out, there were "moe things, then there [were] words to expresse things by" (*The Arte of Reason* 1573; quoted in Jones 1953: 69). Similarly, in his *Two Treatises* (1644), Sir Kenelm Digby pointed out the limitations of the

English language and the difficulties he had encountered in using it to present scientific discourse. He wrote:

> The scarcity of our language is such, in subjects removed from ordinary Conversation (though in others, I think none is more copious) as affordeth us not apt words of our own to expresse significantly such notions as I must busy myself in this discourse. (Quoted in Vickers 1985: 30).

The field in which the English language proved to be particularly inadequate was that of 'names of art', that is, of the technical terms which made up the basic lexis of a subject. In the preface to John Dolman's translation of Cicero's *Those fyue Questions ... Tusculanum* (1561), for example, we find a complaint about the difficulties experienced in using the native tongue to deal with, "such thinges as the Logicians terme names of arte, for the whych, we haue no proper Englyse words" (quoted in Jones 1953: 71 n.6). This lack of specialized terms often made the translation of works into English an arduous task, or made it difficult for English scientists to write essays in their native tongue. In the following quotation, for example, Robert Recorde points out the difficulties encountered in choosing to write in his native tongue:

> But now as touchyng myne entent in writyng this treatise in the english. Though this cause might seme sufficient to satisfy many men that I am an english man, and therfore may more easely and plainly write in my natyue tonge, rather then in any other: yet vnto them that know the hardness of the mater, this answer should seme vnlykely: considering that it is more harder to translate into such a tonge, wherin the arte hath not ben written before, then to write in those tongues that are accustomed, and (as I might say) acquainted with the termes of the science." (Recorde 1547; quoted in Jones 1953: 73)

1. Developments in the lexis of scientific English

The realisation that the English language was inadequate for the needs of expression of men of science led to its gradual amelioration, both from a quantitative and a qualitative point of view. British scientists made great efforts to increase the number of specialized terms and to

improve the exactness of their meanings. Two main principles were followed in coining new terms: that of using the resources of the native tongue, either to give a specialized meaning to an existing word or to form a new one, or borrowing a similar term from a foreign language. 17th century writers were clearly aware of this choice, as the following quotation from Richard Mulcaster's *The First Part of the Elementarie* shows:

> For when the minde is fraught with matter to deliuer, it is still in pain vntill it haue deliuered, and therefor to haue the deliuerie such, as maie discharge the thing well, and content all parties, both by whom and to whom the matter is deliuered, it seketh both home home helps, where theie be sufficient, and significant, and where the own home yeildeth nothing at all, or not pithie enough, it craueth help of that tung, from whence it received the matter of deliuerie. (Quoted in Jones 1953: 70 n.1)

In defining a new concept, the specialist sometimes employed a word already existing in the language, adding a specialized meaning to its usual one(s). This is the case, for example, of Newton's use of the word *gravity*, which – as a consequence of his important innovations in the field of physics – took on a new meaning; this new use of the word gave rise to the creation of others strictly connected to it such as *gravitate* and *gravitation*. Another example is the word *machine*, which already existed with the meaning of scheme or intrigue, and which began to be used to refer to a mechanical device concerned with changing the magnitude and direction of forces or forms of energy.

However, the most frequently adopted strategy was the borrowing of terms from other languages, particularly from Latin.[1] The choice of a loan, rather than the specialization of an existing word or the coinage of a new term, was often suggested by the fact that the concept to be referred to was already expressed in a foreign language. The availability of a term was particularly evident in the case of translation of texts. In that case, when the translator came across a word with no equivalent in the tongue into which he was translating, he was obliged to use the original word, thus enriching the lexical load

---

1 As Barber's analysis has pointed out (1976: 166-195), a great number of new words that became part of the language in the 17th century was made up of Latin loan-words, with a considerable proportion belonging to specialized fields of discourse. This is confirmed by McDermott (2002: 216-218).

of the receiving language. This practice is confirmed by the following statement expressed in the Preface to the Rheims-Douai Bible (1609):

> For necessitie, English not having a name, or sufficient terme, we either kepe the word, as we find it, or only turne it to our English termination, because it would otherwise require manie wordes in English, to signifie one word of an other tongue. (Quoted in Tucker 1961: 26)

In adopting the loan, the translator usually adapted the word that he was borrowing to the morphological features of the receiving language, following the conventions in use concerning word-formation. Thus, for example, Latin words ending in *-atio* were provided with the suffix *-ation*, and similarly other Latinate terminations commonly in use in the English language (such as *-ence, -ity, -ment, -ate, -ous*) were used as equivalents for the Latin endings. Moreover, once a loan had been introduced, it was frequently used as a root from which further words could be formed by means of affixation.

This process of borrowing did not only involve the adoption of single words, but also of prefixes and suffixes, which were used more and more often to create new terms. For example, if we consider combining forms of classical origin such as *-ology* and *-meter*, we can see many new English words created in the 17th century including these suffixes: *archaeology* (1607),[2] *pathology* (1611), *meteorology* (1620), *ichthyology* (1646), *zoology* (1669), *osteology* (1670), *mineralogy* (1690), *psychology* (1693), *barometer* (1665), *hydrometer* (1675), *hygrometer* (1670), *micrometer* (1670), *thermometer* (1633). Moreover, there was great awareness of the use of the various processes of affixation, as the following criticism by Richard Bentley of Charles Boyle's creation of the word *cotemporary* confirms:

> For the Latins never use *Co* for *Con*, except before a Vowel, as *Coequal, Coeternal*; but before a Consonant they either retain the N, as *Contemporary, Constitution*; or melt it into another Letter, as *Collection, Comprehension*. So that the Examiner's [i.e. Boyle's] *Cotemporary* is a word of his own *Coposition*, for which the Learned World will *cogratulate* him. (Bentley 1699; quoted in Barber 1976: 89)

---

2 The date indicates when the first appearance of the word is recorded in *The Oxford English Dictionary*.

Latin loans were sometimes employed to express a more technical or figurative meaning of a word already in use. This is the reason that stimulated, for example, Thomas Elyot to create the term *mature*, in order to contrast it with the existing word *ripe*, the former to be used when referring to human condition, the latter to fruit. As there was no word in use at the time for the figurative function of the term, to define such a characteristic Elyot was "constrained to vsurpe a latine worde callyng it *Maturitie*: whiche worde [refers to] a meane betwene two extremities / wherin nothing lacketh or excedeth: and is in suche astate / that it may neither encrease nor minisshe without losinge the denomination of Maturitie." (*The Governor*; quoted in Barber 1976: 80)

In some cases both forms (general and technical) were neo-Latin; in these cases the former was already present in the language, having been borrowed during the Middle English period, while the latter appeared in the language in the Early Modern English period; some examples of these doublets are *count / compute, ray / radius, gender / genus, prove / probe, spice / species, palsy / paralysis*. Foreign words were sometimes employed because they were thought to have the power to express a very complex concept in a concise way. This is the case, for example, of Thomas Elyot's coining the term *encyclopedia*, which was adopted for the following reason:

> In an oratour is required to be a heape of all maner of lernyng: whiche of some is called the worlde of science: of other the circle of doctrine / whiche is in one worde of greeke *Encyclopedia*. (*The Governor*; quoted in Barber 1976: 80)

2. The opaqueness of language

Because of these advantages, the borrowing of Latinate forms was massive, although sometimes it was felt to be excessive and unjustified. Specialists were therefore often criticized (particularly by laymen) and became targets for satire. The following, for example, is the satirical description of the process by which a plum turns purple in Shadwell's *The Virtuoso*:

It comes first to fluidity, then to orbiculation, then fixation, so to angulization, then crystallization, from thence to germination or ebullition, then vegetation, then plant-animation, perfect animation, sensation, local motion, and the like. (Shadwell 1676: IV, 3, 224-228)

This appears to be a caricature (and in Shadwell's play is meant to be one), but the quotation is actually taken from a scientific text, that is, Robert Hooke's *Micrographia* (1665: 127). The harsh criticism of too many Latinate expressions (commonly known as 'inkhorn controversy') is mainly triggered by the decoding problems experienced in particular by those who have a limited or non-existent knowledge of Latin. William Fulwood, for example, writes:

Most part of our English termes, are very farre different from our vulgare and materiall speache, in such sort, that who so fully vnderstandeth not the Latin tongue, yea and also the Greek, can scarse vnderstand them. (Fulwood 1568: Sig. K2v)

Robert Recorde also points out how people with a limited cultural background often misquote scientific terms because they find them too difficult to pronounce, understand and remember; the examples he provides are *Arsemetrick* for *Arithmeticke* and *Augrime* for *Algorisme* (*The Declaration of the Profit of Arithmeticke*; reprinted in Newman 1956: 212-7). However, borrowers defend their practice by pointing out that the strangeness of loans only lasts for a short period, after which people become familiar with such terms. Walter Charleton, for example, points out the great advantage offered by foreign loans in filling the gaps in the English language and the familiarity to native speakers that many borrowed words have taken on over the years. He therefore justifies his use of borrowed words with the following rhetorical question:

Whether it be a Crime in me to trace the footsteps of those Worthies, who have infinitely both enriched and ennobled our Language, by admitting and naturalizing thousands of forraigne Words, providently brought home from the Greek, Roman, Italian, and French oratories; which, though in the vnraueld ears of our Fathers they would haue sounded [..] harsh [..] yet haue a few years made so familiar vnto vs, that now even Children speak much of Latine, before they can well read a word of English? (Charleton 1650: Sig. A3r)

Moreover, in this inkhorn controversy many specialists deny the accusation that they are responsible for the spoiling of the English language, and retort that on the contrary they are enobling their native tongue. To justify their policy, they quote the fact that also the Romans took several words from the Greek language. Here, for example, is Thomas Digges' comment:

I haue retained the Latin or Greeke names of sundry lines and figures, as cordes Pentagonall, lines Diagonall, Icoseedron, Dodecaedron or such like, for as the Romans and other Latin writers, notwithstandinge the copiouse and abundant eloquence of their tongue, haue not shamed to borrow of the Grecians these and many other terms of arte: so surely do I thinke it no reproche, either to the English tongue, or any English writer, where fit words faile to borowe of them both. (Digges 1571: 97)

Although he thinks he is right in borrowing terms from other languages, the writer is aware of the difficulties of interpretation that readers might meet when they encounter the new terms. Therefore he often tries to help in the form of a paraphrase or synonym when they first appear in the text. In *The Governor*, for example, Elyot provides these phrases: "animate or gyue courage to others", "the beste fourme of education or bringing vp of noble children", "persist and continue". On other occasions the opaqueness of Latinate forms is reduced by means of a glossary provided by the publisher at the end of the book with an explanation of the new terms. This is, for example, the case of the translation by Richard Tomlinson of Renodaeus' *Dispensatory* (1657) to which the publisher adds "A Physical Dictionary. Or, an interpretation of such crabbed Words and Terms of art, as are derived from the Greek or Latin, in which words such as *abstersive, buccellation, caliginous, cardiogmos, circumdated* and *commaculate* are explained".

3. The transparency of language

Apart from the processes of word-formation seen above, the complex operation of creating new terminology adopted other criteria, mainly

based on the pragmatic principle of maximum transparency, which is extremely important in specialized discourse (cf. Chapter 2). In the application of this principle, the specialist created terms in such a way that their form clearly reflected the concept to which it referred. Some examples can be taken from Ralph Lever's *The Arte of Reason, Rightly Termed, Witcraft*, in which the author, in need of new terms, invented transparent forms such as *witcraft* (= logic), *endsay* (= conclusion), *naysay* (= negation), *saywhat* (= definition), *yeasay* (= affirmation), *forespeache* (= preface). These terms may seem so strange as to suggest a desire for idiosyncrasy on the part of the author. Conformity to the criterion of transparency is instead confirmed by Lever's own words:

Therfore (gentle reader) if thou doubt, what is ment, by any of our strange and new deuised termes, consider their partes, as they are taken by themselues alone: and the consideration of the partes, shall leade thee to the knowledge of the whole. (Quoted in Jones 1953:129)

In the controversy on inkhorn terms, Lever takes the side of those who condemn borrowing, mainly because he considers loans too opaque. In fact, he states:

An arte is to be taughte in that toung, in whiche it was neuer written afore. Nowe the question lyeth, whether it were better to borrowe termes of some other toung, in whiche this sayde Arte hath bene written, and by a litle chaunge of pronouncing, to seeke to make them Englishe wordes, which are none in deede; or else of simple vsual wordes, to make compounded termes, whose seuerall partes considered alone, are familiar and knowne to all english men? For trial hereof, I wish you to aske of an english man, who vnderstandeth neither Greek nor Latin, what he conceiueth in his mind, when he heareth this word a backset, and what he doth conceiue when he heareth this terme a Predicate. And doubtlesse he must confesse, if he consider the matter aright or haue any sharpnesse of wit at al, that by a backset, he conceiueth a thing that muste be set after, and by a predicate, that he doth vnderstande nothing at all. (Quoted in Barber 1976:93)

The same criterion of transparency was followed by several other specialists, such as Robert Recorde and Arthur Golding. In his mathematical treatise (*Castle of Knowledge* 1556), Recorde invented terms such as *likejamme* for parallelogram, *tweylike* and *threlike triangles* for isosceles and equilateral triangles, while in *A Woorke*

Concerning the Trewnesse of the Christian Religion (1587), Golding created words such as *fleshstrings* for muscles and *primetime* to indicate an early period of world history.

As we can see, these transparent terms were usually obtained by means of the juxtaposition of words already existing in the English language. This process of compounding was particularly favoured by the brevity of English words; in fact, most were monosyllables and could therefore be easily linked to form compounds, which in turn were not too long. The facilitating effect that the presence of monosyllables had on the possibilities of forming compounds was perceived as a great advantage offered by the English language. As Lever states,

As for deuising of newe termes, and compounding of wordes, our tongue hath a speciall grace, wherein it excelleth many other, and is comparable with the best. The cause is, for that the moste parte of Englyshe wordes are shorte, and stande on one sillable a peece. So that two or three of them are ofte times fitly ioyned in one. (Lever, *The Arte of Reason*; quoted in Jones 1953:126)

Another advantage was considered to be the fact that monosyllables could best represent the concepts they stood for. One of those sharing this opinion is Camden, who states:

As for the Monosyllables so riche in our tongue which were not so originally, although they are vnfitting for verses and measures, yet are they most fit for expressing briefly the first concepts of the minde, or *Intentionalia* as they call them in schooles: so that we can set downe more matter in fewer lines, than any other language. (Camden 1605:21)

It is interesting to note in the quotation above how one of the advantages that monosyllables were believed to give is conciseness, which is another of the qualities scientists consider most important in the structure of specialized discourse (cf. Chapters 2 and 3).

4. The conciseness of language

The principle of conciseness and economy of discourse was often pointed out by specialists. Sentences should be as concise as possible, with no space given to unnecessary details. Here, for example, is the advice Bacon gives as regards the style of a scientific text:

> Never cite an author except in a matter of doubtful credit: never introduce a controversy unless in a matter of great moment. And for all that concerns ornaments of speech, similitudes, treasury of eloquence, and such like emptinesses, let it be utterly dismissed. Also let all those things which are admitted be themselves set down briefly and concisely, so that they may be nothing less than words. (Bacon 1620 / 1968: IV, 254)

These stylistic indications were accepted by subsequent men of science and codified by the Royal Society. In fact, Article IV of Chapter V of the Statutes of the Royal Society (1728) reads:

> In all Reports of Experiments to be brought into the Society, the Matter of Fact shall be barely stated, without any Prefaces, Apologies, or Rhetorical Flourishes, and entered so into the Register-Book, by order of the Society.

This preference for a clear, simple style was generally accepted by 17th-century scientists. In fact, from the description of the activity of the Royal Society given by Thomas Sprat we can see that the way its members wrote was in keeping with the principles pointed out by Bacon:

> They have therefore been most rigorous in putting in execution, the only Remedy, that can be found for this *extravagance*: and that has been, a constant Resolution, to reject all the amplifications, digressions, and swellings of style: to return back to the primitive purity, and shortness, when men deliver'd so many *things*, almost in an equal number of *words*. They have exacted from all their members, a close, naked, natural way of speaking; positive expressions; clear senses; a native easiness; bringing all things as near the Mathematical plainness, as they can: and preferring the language of Artizans, Countrymen, and Merchants, before that, of Wits, or Scholars. (Sprat 1667 / 1959: 113)

As is evident from this quotation, the criteria of economy and directness of reference stand out conspicuously, with particular

---

language offered for the formation of new words: addition of meanings to terms already in use, derivation from existing lexical items by means of affixation and compounding, as well as borrowing from other languages. Moreover, classical languages provided many affixes and combining forms for the formation of transparent compounds, which enabled scientists to set up useful, clear taxonomies in various fields. From the syntactic point of view, the centuries following the 17th have also developed and consolidated the features identified in Newton's text, with an increase in the processes of nominalization and objectification of specialized discourse.

VI. Specialized Terms in 'Hard Word' Dictionaries

1. The concept of 'hard words'

The 16th and 17th centuries witnessed the rise of a great need for new terms to enable English writers to carry out the translation of foreign texts and cope with the rapid development in the various branches of knowledge. This need caused a dramatic expansion of the English vocabulary and the coining of thousands of new words. These words, however, were not always interpreted correctly by readers and were often re-employed wrongly. A testimony of such misrendering may be traced in the following criticism of the borrowing of foreign terms put forth by John Hart:

> It hindereth the vnlerned from vnderstanding of the matter, and causeth many of the Countrie men to speake chalke for cheese, and so nickname such straunge tearmes as it pleaseth many well to heare them: as to say for temperate, temporall: for surrender, sullender: for stature, stature: for abiect, obiect: for heare, heier: certifyed, for both certifyed, and satisfyed: dispence, for suspence: defende, For offende: surgian, for surgian: which the French term chirurgian, which is flesh clenser. (Hart, A Methode or Comfortable Beginning for all Vnlearned, Whereby they may bee Taught to Read English, in a Very Short Time, with Pleasure 1570, quoted in Jones 1953: 107)

The expressions commonly used at the time to indicate difficult foreign loans and opaque neologisms were 'inkhorn terms' (as mentioned in the previous chapter) and 'hard words'. The latter is considered to have appeared for the first time in the title of John Day's glossary *A Gatheryng of Certayne Harde Wordes in the Newe Testament, with their Exposicion* (1551) – a translation of a work in French, in which the lexemes 'hard words' render the expression *mots difficiles* contained in the title of Jean Girard's original work *Recueil*

d'aucuns mots difficiles du nouveau Testament, Avec leur declaration (1546) explaining some of the terms used in the Geneva Bible.[1]

Many hard words are made to correspond to Latinate expressions, that is, the loans of Latin origin which appear so abundantly in the English texts of those centuries. But this term was not limited to Latinate expressions, as the following quotation from the subtitle to Cawdrey's dictionary confirms: "hard vsuall English wordes, borrowed from the Hebrew, Greeke, Latine, or French" (Cawdrey 1604). However, the term 'hard words' should not be considered merely a synonym for neologisms of foreign origin; besides these 'inkhorn terms', it also included other words used in contemporary texts that were thought to be difficult for common readers to understand.

Other words commonly implied by that expression were the more obscure ones appearing in literary works. Such interpretation is strengthened by Cockeram's declaration that his aim in preparing his dictionary was to enable "Ladies and Gentlewomen, young Schollers, Clarkes, Merchants; as also Strangers of any Nation, to the vnderstanding of the more difficult Authors already printed in our Language" (Cockeram, 1626). Many of these difficult authors were authors of the past, and in particular – as Kerling (1979) has shown – Chaucer. Indeed, many words included in several hard word dictionaries correspond to similar entries listed among Thomas Speght's glosses to his edition of Chaucer's works. A confirmation of the inclusion of these words in the category of hard words can be found in the reference to "some ancient writers" that Bullokar (1616) makes explicitly to justify the old-fashioned nature of those words, "now growne out of vse".

---

1   Although the official adoption of the term 'hard word' is commonly considered to coincide with the title of Day's work, this expression – or similar ones – is traceable to previous texts. Here is one such case: "For as muche as olde auncient, and autentyke auctours or doctours of phisicke in theyr bokes doth wryte many obscure termes, geuinge also to many and diuers infyrmites darke and hard names diffycyl to vnderstand some and most of al beynge greke wordes, some & fewe beynge Araby wordes, some beynge Labyn wordes, and some beyng Barbaruse word[es]." (Andrew Boorde, *Breviary*, 1547: Bi-ii, quoted in McConchie 1988: 61)

Most of the entries appearing in hard word dictionaries, however, were coined in the 15th or 16th centuries. In his analysis of the first hundred words in Cawdrey's (1604) dictionary, Rissanen (1975) has found that only nine words date back to before 1300, 37 appear in the 14th century, while the rest (i.e. 54) are used for the first time at a later date. As a matter of fact, many of the entries refer to difficult words which were not to be encountered only in books for the learned, but also in publications of easy access for non-learned people. In his title-page, for example, Cawdrey confesses his inclusion in his dictionary also of such words as those which "Ladies, Gentlewomen, or any other vnskilful persons [...] shall heare or read in Scriptures, Sermons or elswhere." (Cawdrey 1604)

With the appearance of Cockeram's dictionary, hard words were made to include also those proper nouns which were to be encountered in English texts but whose referents might be interpreted with difficulty by the less-educated. Such words included names of "Gods and Goddesses, Men and Women, Boyes and Maids, Giants and Diuels, Birds and Beasts, Monsters and Serpents, Wells and Rivers, Hearbes, Stones, Trees, Dogges, Fishes, and the like" (Cockeram 1626), thus conferring an encyclopaedic purpose to those kinds of dictionaries.

2. The earliest hard word dictionaries

Robert Cawdrey's *Table Alphabeticall* (1604) is usually considered to be the earliest of all hard word dictionaries, as it is the first to use this term on its title-page: "A Table Alphabeticall, conteyning and teaching the true writing, and vnderstanding of hard vsuall English wordes". In compiling his dictionary, Cawdrey drew to a large extent on previous Latin-English dictionaries such as Thomas Cooper's *Thesaurus Linguae Romanae et Britannicae* (1565) and Thomas' *Dictionarium Linguae Latinae et Anglicanae* (1587).[2] The

---

2   On the influence of these dictionaries on Cawdrey's (as well as other hard word dictionaries) cf. Starnes / Noyes (1946 / 1991). His indebtedness to

aim of the dictionary is well expressed in the subtitle to the work, as it is meant for "the benefit and helpe of Ladies, Gentlewomen, or any other unskilfull persons".[3]

John Bullokar's *English Expositor* (1616) followed suit, thus establishing a tradition of hard word dictionaries. In comparison with Cawdrey, Bullokar included more words and provided more detailed explanations of his entries – some of his glosses were expanded into paragraphs or even short articles taking up at times one of the two columns of the pages of his dictionary. As the son of a physician, Bullokar felt the need to include many more names referring to diseases and medicines, and in his definitions he was able to make use of the knowledge and publications that he had inherited from his father. Another lexical field expanded by Bullokar was the legal one, with many expressions deriving from John Cowell's *The Interpreter* (1607). Another innovation of Bullokar's was his decision to use an asterisk to point out the archaism of certain words, a technique also adopted by several subsequent dictionary compilers.[4]

Henry Cockeram's *English Dictionarie* (1623) was the next step in the tradition of hard word dictionaries. In his search for terms to be included in his work Cockeram relied largely on previous hard word and Latin dictionaries, but also added several entries taken from various texts and not yet reported in those types of publications.[5] Moreover, Cockeram added two sections to his dictionary: one

---

3   earlier Latin-English dictionaries has, however, been reconsidered by Schäfer (1989), who refutes the 'Anglicization thesis' and emphasizes instead the compiler's frequent recourse to contemporary texts or explanatory glossaries in his collection of new entries. For further analyses of the sources of Cawdrey and other hard-work dictionary makers cf. Riddell (1974) and Stein (1985).

4   For an analysis of Cawdrey's hard words cf. McConchie (1992).

5   Other techniques commonly employed by subsequent dictionary compilers to signal the archaism of a lemma were the placing of the expressions *old words*, *old* or simply the letter *o* after it.

     For this inclusion of several terms never reported before, Cockeram has often been accused of coining several of his entries himself. Schäfer (1970) has demonstrated, however, that the new words inserted in his dictionary can be traced to previous texts and sources. On a more general level, McDermott's (2002) analysis of the earliest citations for the hard words recorded in the different editions of the *OED* shows that most of them have sources in earlier texts.

---

provided more refined equivalents for common English words, while the other was meant to be a short encyclopaedia explaining the names of characters mainly appearing in works about classical antiquity. The addition of these parts combines well with the more ambitious goals of Cockeram's publication, which is aimed at a wider reading public ("Ladies and Gentlewomen, young Schollers, Clarkes, Merchants; as also Strangers of any Nation") and a wider range of functions: besides providing the buyers of this book with a tool which facilitates their understanding of texts, the dictionary is also meant to promote "the more speedy attaining of an elegant perfection of the English tongue, both in reading, speaking, and writing" (Cockeram 1626).

Thomas Blount's *Glossographia* (1656) represents a further development in the evolutionary process of hard word dictionaries, not so much because there is a further increase in the number of entries – a great number of which derive from a larger range of foreign languages, usually specified in parenthesis –, but also because he is the first hard word dictionary compiler who attempts to point out the etymology of his entries by means of some "Historical observations" about them. Elisha Coles' *An English Dictionary* (1676) introduces a further innovation, as it includes for the first time canting terms and dialect words, the former derived from Richard Head's *The Canting Academy* (1673).[6]

As we have seen, the tradition of hard word dictionaries is generally considered to start at the beginning of the 17th century. However, even before then several other publications devoted important parts to the explanation of hard words. For example, Edmund Coote's *The English Schoole-Maister* (1596) (an early grammar of the English language) contains a list of hard words, which seems to have inspired Cawdrey in the preparation of his dictionary. Another way in which hard words were dealt with was their grouping in specific glossaries which were added to certain works to explain or translate the most difficult terms inserted in those texts. For example, at the end of his edition of Du Bartas' *Devine Weekes and Workes* (1605) Joshua Sylvester added "A briefe explanation of most of the most-difficulties through the whole worke, for the ease of such as are

---

6   Gotti (1999: Ch. 4) provides an analysis of Richard Head's canting terms reported in Coles' dictionary.

"least exercised in these kinde of readings" (sig. XX2). These glossaries were very common in the period between 1590 and 1610 (for a survey of a range of these glossaries cf. Schäfer 1989, vol. 1). It is not at all strange, therefore, that Cawdrey's volume, which is often quoted as the first monolingual dictionary, should be published in that period, as his list of hard words could be considered an expansion of those glossaries.

3. John Bullokar's hard words

As a paradigmatic case in the field of hard word dictionaries, John Bullokar's work will be examined here. In particular, the various types of Bullokar's 'termes of art' will be taken into consideration, as well as their origin and field of specialization. A further element of investigation will be the way the author deals with the various entries and the techniques employed in the explanation of their meanings. Another element taken into consideration here is the degree of representativeness of Bullokar's entries of the specialized English lexis of his time, in particular when compared with the contents of other contemporary dictionaries of hard words; for this purpose a list of specialized terms belonging to the medical field will be made use of. An examination of how Bullokar deals with the explanation of the semantic value of the main affixes of foreign origin will conclude our analysis.

The contents of John Bullokar's *An English Expositor* (1616) are clearly identified in the second part of the title of his work, where he specifies that the dictionary aims to teach "the interpretation of the hardest words vsed in our Language".[7] In the introductory part of his dictionary, Bullokar distinguishes the hard words that he has listed into three categories. The first includes "the great store of strange words, our speech doth borrow, not only from the Latine, and Greeke,

---

7   All quotations in this chapter are taken from the facsimile copy of the British Museum original text, published by Georg Olms Verlag.

(and some from the ancient Hebrew) but also from forraine vulgar Languages round about vs", this category therefore refers to the many foreign loans that had become so common in the English language in Bullokar's times and that had caused the outburst of the 'Inkhorn Controversy'. The second category of hard words listed in *An English Expositor* consists of "sundry olde words now growne out of vse", i.e. words mainly appearing in literary works written in previous centuries and included in the dictionary so as to help its users to interpret these archaic terms correctly.

The third category of hard words listed in *An English Expositor* contains "diuers termes of art, proper to the learned in Logicke, Philosophy, Law, Physicke, Astronomie, etc. yea, and Diuinitie itselfe, best knowen to the seuerall professors thereof." The author's aim in his adoption of these terms is to "open the signification of such words, to the capacitie of the ignorant, whereby they may conceiue and vse them as well as those which haue bestowed long study in the languages". Bullokar, indeed, is convinced that as more and more specialists have turned to the English language for the writing of their books, the meaning of the latter should be made accessible to the readers for whom such works are intended; in his opinion, a dictionary of hard words should fulfil such a function.[8] In favouring a more general acceptance of such new terms – mainly of foreign origin – Bullokar is directly involved in the 'Inkhorn Controversy' in support of the borrowers of words taken from other languages, as he considers their behaviour "sometime necessary by reason our speech is not sufficiently furnished with apt termes to expresse all meanings".

The three categories of hard words identified in the introductory part do not have identical coverage in Bullokar's dictionary. Indeed, the first category – that is, the one including many of the foreign loans adopted by the English language – is the most widely represented (and is approximately two thirds of all the entries); this is due to the fact that this category does not only include the many 'strange words' commonly used in the general language, but also several terms of a

---

8   A confirmation of the fact that Bullokar has mainly conceived his dictionary as an aid for the decoding of difficult words can be found in the title of the work: *An English Expositor*; indeed, in his dictionary Bullokar defines the term *expositour* as "an expounder or interpreter".

semi-technical nature which are common to various specialized branches. On the contrary, the second category of hard words – that is, the one referring to archaic words – is the smallest of the three, only including 140 words out of a total of over 4,000. The third group – that is, that of 'termes of art' – contains about one third of the entries of the dictionary.[9] It is this third category of hard words that will constitute the object of our analysis.

3.1. *The specialized branches covered by Bullokar's dictionary*

As a first step in our analysis we shall take into consideration the specialized fields from which Bullokar's 'termes of art' are drawn. The range of subjects covered by this dictionary is very wide. In his definitions of the single entries, however, Bullokar does not usually specify the branch to which they belong; only in a very limited number of cases does he make such a specification; this is the reason why fewer categories than are actually dealt with are mentioned in his work. Moreover, the terms used in the dictionary to identify the specialized fields of some of the words may sometimes be misleading for the modern reader, as in referring to such branches Bullokar employs the terminology in use in his time, which does not always correspond to what is used nowadays.

The main disciplines mentioned in Bullokar's definitions are: Lawe, Physicke (term referring to what we nowadays call 'Medicine'), Hunting, Philosophie (which then also included the area of Natural Philosophy, that is, of the physical sciences), Astronomy, Heraldry, Logicke, Cosmographie. Our analysis has shown that many more branches are actually covered by Bullokar's terms, which would correspond to the following modern disciplines: Religion, Rhetoric,

Linguistics, Botany, Zoology, Geography, Mineralogy, Physics, Politics, Military Tactics and Geometry. Although terms specific to these fields of knowledge were starting to appear in English books, such sectors had not yet become completely independent from the traditional and officially recognized specialized disciplines, whose names were therefore retained in Bullokar's definitions.

It is interesting to note, however, that the great progress made in such fields during the 16th and early 17th centuries is not only well attested by the many recently coined words included in Bullokar's dictionary, but also by the appearance in that work of several terms referring to the new fields of knowledge which were growing so rapidly in those years and becoming independent disciplines. A confirmation of the great expansion of new specialized branches typical of that period can also be found in Bullokar's dictionary; a perusal of the entries beginning with the letter A shows several terms denoting new specialized sectors, not belonging to the range of disciplines used by the author in his definitions: Alchymie, Anatomie, Architecture, Arithmetike, Astrologie, and Astronomie. Some of these terms might not sound very innovative for Bullokar's times,[10] but the fact that they are included in his text means that – although some had been coined even a few centuries before – they had not become very popular among English speakers.

As regards the space given to each discipline in the dictionary, greater coverage was still offered to the traditional fields (such as Law, Religion, Rhetoric and Medicine); however, a wide coverage was also provided for subjects such as Botany, Zoology, Geography and Mineralogy, due to the great number of new words referring to plants, animals, minerals and geographic terms concerning far-off places, particularly located in the New Worlds being discovered and colonized in those years.[11] Here are a few examples of such words:

---

9   This different volume of the three categories is based on a statistical analysis of the words listed under the letter A of the dictionary: out of 408 words, 261 (that is, 63.97%) are general words (or semi-technical terms) of foreign origin, 4 (0.98%) are archaic words, while 143 (35.05%) are specialized terms. The extension of these percentages to the whole dictionary is of course risky, as the contents given under the various letters of the alphabet might vary; our estimate is therefore only indicative of a general attitude and does not aim to provide exact statistical figures for the whole book.

10   These are the dates of first appearance of these words in English texts according to Schäfer (1989): Alchymie (1362), Anatomie (1503), Architecture (1563), Arithmetike (1250), Astrologie (1375), Astronomie (1205).

11   Most of the terms referring to the new plants recently found in exotic places were derived by Bullokar from John Frampton's *Ioyfull Newes out of the Newe Founde Worlde* (1577), a translation from Spanish of Nicolas Monardes' *Dos Libros [...] de Nuestras Indias Occidentales* (1569).

(1) *Armadilio.* A beast in India of the bignesse of a young pigge, couered ouer with small shels like vnto armour [...].

(2) *China.* A hard knotty roote brought out of the East Indies, of a reddish colour [...].

(3) *Coca.* An hearbe in India [...].

Besides terms referring to new discoveries, the dictionary also contains several geographic proper names (such as *Africa, Alps, Asia, Europe*) denoting places which were undoubtedly well-known in early 17th century England, but which were probably included by Bullokar so as to give a more encyclopedic character to his dictionary. In order to make an approximate assessment of the different coverage assigned to the various branches in *An English Expositor*, a statistical analysis of the 'termes of art' listed under the letter A of the dictionary has been carried out (cf. Table 1); the results are the following: Law (52 terms), Religion (27), Rhetoric and Linguistics (10), Botany (9), Medicine (8), Zoology (7), Geography (6), Mineralogy (6), Astronomy (3), Heraldry (3), Physics (3), Politics (3), Hunting (2), Military Tactics (2), Geometry (1) and Logic (1). These numbers, however, should only be considered as indicative of the areas covered rather than as precise estimates of the importance acquired by the various specialized branches in Bullokar's times or as an index of productivity of each discipline in that period. Indeed it should be remembered that the words included in *An English Expositor* were not collected meticulously after a thorough examination of all the specialized texts available; instead, in the selection of his entries, the author mainly borrowed the terms which he thought suitable from the dictionaries and specialized glossaries he had come across in his unsystematic search for appropriate sources for his dictionary.[12]

12   The main sources of Bullokar's text were Thomas Cooper's *Thesaurus Linguae Romanae et Britannicae* (1565), John Frampton's *Joyfull Newes out of the Newe Founde Worlde* (1577), Thomas Thomas's *Dictionarium Linguae Latinae et Anglicanae* (1587), Robert Cawdrey's *A Table Alphabeticall* (1604) and John Cowell's *The Interpreter* (1607). For a more detailed analysis of the origin of Bullokar's entries cf. Starnes / Noyes (1946 / 1991), Schäfer (1970), Riddell (1974), Hayashi (1978), Kerling (1979), Riddell (1983), Landau (1984) and Schäfer (1989).

Law	Abate, Abatement, Abbett, Abbettour, Abiure, Abiuration, Abrogate, Accessory, Acquitall, Action, Addition, Adiournement, Adiure, Aduration, Administer, Administration, Administrator, Adopt, Adoption, Aduscate, Aduouson, Amerce, Amercement, Annuitie, Annull, Appariter, Appeale, Appellant, Appelation, Appropriate, Appropriation, Arbiter, Arbitrement, Arbitrary, Arbitrate, Arbitratour, Arrerages, Articulate, Assets, Assumpsit, Astipulation, Attainder, Attaynt, Attestation, Atturnie, Atturnment, Auditor, Auerre, Auerment, Auowable, Auow, Auowrie
Religion	Abba, Abbot, Ablution, Absolute, Absolution, Adore, Adoration, Aduent, Anathema, Anathematize, Anchoresse, Anchorite, Antheme, Antiphone, Antichrist, Apocalypse, Apocrypha, Apostasie, Apostata, Apostaticall, Apostle, Apostolicall, Arrian, Assoile, Atheisme, Atheist, Azymes
Rhetoric / Linguistics	Allegorie, Allegoricall, Amphibolie, Amphibologie, Anagramme, Aphorisme, Apologie, Apologicall, Apophthegme, Aspiration
Botany	Abrahams Baume, Acatian, Aconitum, Agarick, Alkagengi, Aloes, Ambrosie, Aurine, Asa foetida
Medicine	Aloesuccotrina, Ambix, Anatomie, Anatomize, Antidote, Apoplexie, Apozeme, Arterie
Zoology	Aerie, Alcion, Ambergrise, Anchouie, Apocynon, Armadillo, Aspe
Geography	Africa, Alps, Antartike Pole, Antipodes, Articke Pole, Asia
Mineralogy	Abeston, Adamant, Alabaster, Amber, Amethist, Antimonie
Astronomy	Apogeon, Aspect, Astrolabe
Heraldry	Aduenaile, Atcheuement, Attired
Physics	Ammoniacke, Antiperistasis, Auripigmentum
Politics	Anarchie, Aristocratie, Aristocraticall
Hunting	Allay, Antler
Military	Ambuscado, Artillerie
Geometry	Angle
Logic	Axiome

Table 1. The 'termes of art' listed under the letter A of Bullokar's dictionary, grouped according to their different disciplines.

3.2. Bullokar's definitions

As we have seen, John Bullokar's aim in writing his dictionary was to provide a tool for the correct interpretation of several new terms, foreign loans and archaic words. It was therefore justified on his part that he should be so careful in the preparation of his definitions of the lexemes he had chosen and that he should provide them with "syndry

Explications, Descriptions, and Discourses". In the wording of his definitions Bullokar adopted several techniques. The simplest definitory procedure corresponds to the provision of a mere synonym in English. This method, however, was particularly suitable for the hard words belonging to the first two categories mentioned above – that is, those including foreign loans or archaic words –, but was not very common for the explanation of the meaning of specialized terms, as most of them had been borrowed from other languages since no correspondent equivalents existed in English. There were, however, a few cases in which it was possible to provide an English synonym for a 'terme of art'; in such cases the foreign term usually provided a specialized connotation, while the native equivalent was to be commonly employed for general reference. Here is an example:

(4) *Angle*. A corner.

However, the most frequent technique employed in the explanation of Bullokar's 'termes of art' was usually the recourse to a definition, as can be seen in the following example:

(5) *Abbett*. To helpe or assist one in euill.

In contrast with the procedure adopted by Cawdrey in his dictionary of hard words, Bullokar usually provided very lengthy definitions for his entries, so as to strengthen the decoding function of his work. The following quotation, for example, provides a very accurate explanation of the meaning of the entry:

(6) *Balme*. A precious iuice or liquor, otherwise called *Balsamum*, or *Opobalsamum*. It droppeth by cutting out of a little lowe plant (about a yard high) hauing leaues like Rue, but whiter, which plant groweth in Egypt, and some places of the holy Land. This iuice is somewhat like to oyle, but more clammie, and inclining to a certaine rednesse. It hath a strong smell, and is not pleasant in taste: Being put into a vessell of water, it will sinke downe to the bottome like a round pearle, without breaking, and may bee taken vp againe with the point of a knife. It is an excellent medicine to take any scar out of the body, and for diuers other purposes, but very costly and rarely gotten, *Saladinus* writes that there was but one vineyard of these in the whole world, and that belonged to the great Turke.

To make his explanation of the entry more clearly understandable, Bullokar often added exemplifications, as the following case shows:

(7) *Allegorie*. A sentence consisting of diuers tropes which must be vnderstood otherwise then the litterall interpretation sheweth; as when Saint *John Baptist* speaking of our Sauiour, *Matth.* 3 said: *Whose fanne is in his hand, and he shall make cleane his floore, and gather the wheat into his barne but the chaffe he shall burne with vnquenchable fire:* The meaning whereof is, that Christ being supreme Iudge of all, shall separate the good from the euill, rewarding the one in heauen, and punishing the other in hell fire.

If the entry had more than one meaning (e.g., a general meaning and a specialized meaning), Bullokar was careful to point out the two semantic values of the entry:

(8) *Abate*. To make lesse: In our common Law it signifieth, to enter into any inheritance, before the right heire take possession, with intent to keepe the said heire out of it.

This procedure seems to constitute a contradiction to one of the principles specified by Bullokar in his 'Introduction to the Reader', which states that "if a word bee of different significations, the one easie, the other more difficult, I onely speake of interpretation of the hardest". There is, indeed, no contradiction on the author's part, as his statement mainly concerns polysemic words of Anglo-Saxon origin, as the examples he provides of his principle (i.e. *Tenne*, *Girle* and *Garter*) seem to suggest. In some cases Bullokar was not certain of the true meaning of a term; it is interesting to note that on such occasions the author honestly admitted his incapacity to provide a definite explanation of the entry and therefore expressed any possible interpretation with great caution. His definition of the lexeme *beauer* provides an excellent instance of the author's behaviour:

(9) *Beauer*. In armour it signifieth that part of the helmet which may bee lifted vp, to take breth the more freely: It is also a beast of very hotte nature, liuing much in the water. His two forefeet are like the feete of the beast called *Gattus*, (as *Ioannes de Sancto Amando* writeth:) but what this *Gattus* is, I doe not well vnderstand, only I suppose it to be an *Otter* [...].

However, before providing his own interpretation, it was customary for Bullokar to report the meanings commonly given to that term – even when he did not find them very convincing –, as can be seen in the following case:

(10)   *Boras.* A white substance like vnto salpeter, wherewith goldsmiths vse to solder gold and siluer; some write it is the gumme of a tree, which is very vnlikely; others affirme it to bee made of old lees of oyle, by art and drying in the same brought to be white; notwithstanding I suppose it rather to be a minerall.

In his desire to strengthen the didactic function of his dictionary, Bullokar sometimes also added the mention of the origin of the concept or procedure to which the term he was explaining referred:

(11)   *Abiure.* To sweare or forsweare: a terme sometime vsed in Lawe, when one hauing committed a capitall offence flyeth to a Church, or Churchyard, and chooseth rather perpetuall banishment: viz. to abiure the Realme, then stand to tryall of Lawe. This Law was instituted by S. *Edward* the Confessour in fauour of life, but now is not in vse.

At times, besides providing the correct specialized value of the term he was defining, Bullokar also added the metaphorical connotation that such a term had acquired. Here is an example:

(12)   *Chameleon.* A little beast like a Lizard, hauing a rough scaly skin, straight legs, sharpe clawes, a slow pace like a Torteyes, and a long wreathed taile: Hee changeth himselfe quickly into any colour that he fitteth vpon, except white & red: wherefore men that are inconstant and fickle, are sometime called Chameleons [...].

On other occasions Bullokar explained the origin of the term; an example of such comments can be found in the following definition of the word *canker*:

(13)   *Canker.* A hard swelling in the veines, being ouercharged with hot melancholy humors. It is called a Canker, because the veines so swollen are like vnto the clawes of a Crab [...].

Bullokar often made comments also on the linguistic form of the term he presented, and at times he provided an English 'translation' of it:

(14)   *Apocalypse.* A diuine book written by Saint *Iohn Euangelist*, while he was banished in the Ile Pathmos: so called because it conteineth many profound mysteries there reuealed vunto him. In English it signifieth a Reuelation.

Only in very few cases did Bullokar specify the language from which the term had been taken; this occurs, however, for almost all the terms deriving from Hebrew and Greek and belonging to the religious semantic field. Example:

(15)   *Chrisme.* A Greeke word, signifying an Oyntment. Sometime it is taken for a white linnen cloth, wrapped about an infant after it is newlie christened.

Apart from these two languages, the words included in Bullokar's dictionary had been drawn from various others, as the author himself confirms in his 'Introduction'; the sources of his terms were Latin and French, as well as other modern languages such as Spanish and Arabic.

3.3. The representativeness of Bullokar's entries

The criteria of selection adopted in the choice of terms and the contents of their definitions may offer us a good chance to interpret the degree of evolution of the world of knowledge as expressed in Bullokar's dictionary. As a matter of fact, the picture that can be drawn from a reading of this work is that the terminology of many of the branches dealt with in it was involved in a process of rapid growth yet still needed some form of systematization. This impression is backed up by the existence of doublets within the dictionary to express identical concepts. The following examples – drawn from the medical field – confirm the existence of two different words in the English language to refer to the same human organ:

(16)   *Beades of Saint Elline.* [...] They are of great vertue against griefs of the stomack, as also of the kidnies or reines.

(17)   *Capers.* [...] The roote hereof is much vsed in Phisicke, against obstructions of the spleen or milte [...].

The impression that specialized disciplines in this period were still in need of a process of systematization and should retain only scientifically-based terms and eliminate unsound traditional explanations is confirmed by the presence in the definition of some entries of a reference to mythological or legendary interpretations of their meanings and origins. Here is an example:

(18)   *Aconitum.* A venemous herbe, having a root much like to a Scorpion, and thining within like alabaster. Poets faine that *Cerberus* the three headed dogge of hell, being dragged vp in a chaine of Adamant by *Hercules,* did cast some of his fome vpon this herbe, whereby it became so venemous.

Even when legends and myths were not used in the explanation of certain concepts, the inadequacy of the adoption of old-fashioned definitions is confirmed by the quotation of classical or medieval naturalists, physicians or philosophers (such as Galen, Pliny and Avicenna) as sources. Here is an example of one such case:

(19)   *Camphire.* A kinde of Gumme, as *Avicen* writeth. But *Platearius* affirmeth it to be the iuice of an herbe. It is white of colour, and cold and dry in operation.

Moreover, the impression of the scientific world that emerges from the reading of this dictionary is still one that devotes most of its efforts to the processes of observation and description rather than that of experimentation. Indeed, in this dictionary there are very few terms referring to instruments, and those that are recorded are still linked to traditional activities, such as building and military campaigns. Here are a couple of examples:

(20)   *Calthrope.* An instrument vsed sometime in Warre [...].

(21)   *Capstand.* An instrument to wind vp things of great weight; some call it a Crane.

Also the terms expressing properties reported in *An English Expositor* usually concern general concepts, and are therefore not very highly specialized, but rather common to several disciplines, as the following examples show:

(22)   *Capacitie.* Aptnesse to receiue and hold.

(23)   *Carnalitie.* Fleshlinesse.

(24)   *Cauitie.* Hollownesse.

(25)   *Celeritie.* Swiftness, speed.

Similarly, the entries referring to processes consist mainly of semi-technical terms, and are suitable to be employed by specialists belonging to various disciplines, as the following examples confirm:

(26)   *Calcination.* A burning, a turning into ashes.

(27)   *Calculation.* An account, a reckoning.

(28)   *Calefaction.* A making warme.

It must be pointed out, however, that the picture offered by *An English Expositor* is more dated than the actual state of specialized research of that time, as the author often made use of glossaries and dictionaries published a few decades before. Indeed, if we look at several terms belonging to the specialized disciplines dealt with by Bullokar and coined in the decades preceding the publication of his dictionary, we can see that many of them are not included in that work. Table 2 lists a few terms belonging to the branch of medicine, with the date of their first publication as derived from the OED and the OEDS;[13] each word is followed either by a + or a − sign: the + sign indicates the presence of that entry in the dictionary mentioned at the top of each column, while the − sign indicates its absence. This list shows the unsystematic approach of Bullokar's selection of items; we can rightly suppose that the author neglected all the words marked with a minus sign not because he did not know of their existence − as in the title-page of his

---

13   The dates of first appearance reported in the OED and OEDS have been corrected according to the indications of Schäfer (1989). It is well known that the OED is unreliable as a source of the dates of first occurrence, as very frequently previous appearances in other texts have been pointed out for the various entries. However, the dates suggested here are not meant to provide with any certainty the date of the first occurrence of these words in the English language, but rather indicate that such words already existed in the English language at the date shown.

However, before providing his own interpretation, it was customary for Bullokar to report the meanings commonly given to that term – even when he did not find them very convincing –, as can be seen in the following case:

(10) *Boras.* A white substance like vnto salpeter, wherewith goldsmiths vse to solder gold and siluer: some write it is the gumme of a tree, which is very vnlikely; others affirme it to bee made of old lees of oyle, by art and drying in the sunne brought to be white; notwithstanding I suppose it rather to be a minerall.

In his desire to strengthen the didactic function of his dictionary, Bullokar sometimes also added the mention of the origin of the concept or procedure to which the term he was explaining referred:

(11) *Abiure.* To sweare or forsweare: a terme sometime vsed in Lawe, when one hauing committed a capitall offence flyeth to a Church, or Churchyard, and chooseth rather perpetuall banishment *viz.* to abiure the Realme, then stand to tryall of Lawe. This Law was instituted by *S. Edward* the Confessour in fauour of life, but now is not in vse.

At times, besides providing the correct specialized value of the term he was defining, Bullokar also added the metaphorical connotation that such a term had acquired. Here is an example:

(12) *Chameleon.* A little beast like a Lizard, hauing a rough scaly skin, straight legs, sharpe clawes, a slow pace like a Torteyes, and a long wreathed taile: Hee changeth himselfe quickly into any colour that he fitteth vpon, except white & red: wherefore men that are inconstant and fickle, are sometime called Chameleons [...].

On other occasions Bullokar explained the origin of the term; an example of such comments can be found in the following definition of the word *canker:*

(13) *Canker.* A hard swelling in the veines, being ouercharged with hot melancholy humors. It is called a Canker, because the veines so swollen are like vnto the clawes of a Crab [...].

Bullokar often made comments also on the linguistic form of the term he presented, and at times he provided an English 'translation' of it:

(14) *Apocalypse.* A diuine book written by Saint *Iohn Euangelist*, while he was banished in the Ile Pathmos: so called because it conteineth many profound mysteries there reueled vunto him. In English it signifieth a Reuelation.

Only in very few cases did Bullokar specify the language from which the term had been taken; this occurs, however, for almost all the terms deriving from Hebrew and Greek and belonging to the religious semantic field. Example:

(15) *Chrisme.* A Greeke word, signifying an Oyntment: Sometime it is taken for a white linnen cloth, wrapped about an infant after it is newlie christened.

Apart from these two languages, the words included in Bullokar's dictionary had been drawn from various others, as the author himself confirms in his 'Introduction'; the sources of his terms were Latin and French, as well as other modern languages such as Spanish and Arabic.

3.3. The representativeness of Bullokar's entries

The criteria of selection adopted in the choice of terms and the contents of their definitions may offer us a good chance to interpret the degree of evolution of the world of knowledge as expressed in Bullokar's dictionary. As a matter of fact, the picture that can be drawn from a reading of this work is that the terminology of many of the branches dealt with in it was involved in a process of rapid growth yet still needed some form of systematization. This impression is backed up by the existence of doublets within the dictionary to express identical concepts. The following examples – drawn from the medical field – confirm the existence of two different words in the English language to refer to the same human organ:

(16) *Beades of Saint Elline.* [...] They are of great vertue against griefs of the stomack, as also of the kidnies or reines.

(17) *Capers.* [...] The roote hereof is much vsed in Phisicke, against obstructions of the spleen or milte [...].

The impression that specialized disciplines in this period were still in need of a process of systematization and should retain only scientifically-based terms and eliminate unsound traditional explanations is confirmed by the presence in the definition of some entries of a reference to mythological or legendary interpretations of their meanings and origins. Here is an example:

(18) *Aconitum.* A venemous herbe, having a root much like to a Scorpion, and thining within like alabaster. Poets faine that *Cerberus* the three headed dogge of hell, being dregged vp in a chaine of Adamant by *Hercules*, did cast some of his fome vpon this herbe, whereby it became so venemous.

Even when legends and myths were not used in the explanation of certain concepts, the inadequacy of the adoption of old-fashioned definitions is confirmed by the quotation of classical or medieval naturalists, physicians or philosophers (such as Galen, Pliny and Avicenna) as sources. Here is an example of one such case:

(19) *Camphire.* A kinde of Gumme, as *Avicen* writeth. But *Platearius* affirmeth it to be the iuice of an herbe. It is white of colour, and cold and dry in operation.

Moreover, the impression of the scientific world that emerges from the reading of this dictionary is still one that devotes most of its efforts to the processes of observation and description rather than that of experimentation. Indeed, in this dictionary there are very few terms referring to instruments, and those that are recorded are still linked to traditional activities, such as building and military campaigns. Here are a couple of examples:

(20) *Caltrope.* An instrument vsed sometime in Warre [...].

(21) *Capstand.* An instrument to wind vp things of great weight some call it a Crane.

Also the terms expressing properties reported in *An English Expositor* usually concern general concepts, and are therefore not very highly specialized, but rather common to several disciplines, as the following examples show:

(22) *Capacitie.* Aptnesse to receiue and hold.

(23) *Carnalitie.* Fleshlinesse.

(24) *Cauitie.* Hollownesse.

(25) *Celeritie.* Swiftness, speed.

Similarly, the entries referring to processes consist mainly of semi-technical terms, and are suitable to be employed by specialists belonging to various disciplines, as the following examples confirm:

(26) *Calcination.* A burning, a turning into ashes.

(27) *Calculation.* An account, a reckoning.

(28) *Calefaction.* A making warme.

It must be pointed out, however, that the picture offered by *An English Expositor* is more dated than the actual state of specialized research of that time, as the author often made use of glossaries and dictionaries published a few decades before. Indeed, if we look at several terms belonging to the specialized disciplines dealt with by Bullokar and coined in the decades preceding the publication of his dictionary, we can see that many of them are not included in that work. Table 2 lists a few terms belonging to the branch of medicine, with the date of their first publication as derived from the OED and the OEDS;[13] each word is followed either by a + or – sign: the + sign indicates the presence of that entry in the dictionary mentioned at the top of each column, while the – sign indicates its absence. This list shows the unsystematic approach of Bullokar's selection of items; we can rightly suppose that the author neglected all the words marked with a minus sign not because he did not know of their existence – as in the title-page of his

---

13   The dates of first appearance reported in the OED and OEDS have been corrected according to the indications of Schäfer (1989). It is well known that the OED is unreliable as a source of the dates of first occurrence, as very frequently previous appearances in other texts have been pointed out for the various entries. However, the dates suggested here are not meant to provide with any certainty the date of the first occurrence of these words in the English language, but rather indicate that such words already existed in the English language at the date shown.

dictionary he prides himself on being a "Doctor of Physicke" —, but because they were not in the sources he had made use of.

	Bullokar (1616)	Cawdrey (1604)	Cockeram (1626)
Spleen (c1300)	+	+	+
Palate (1382)	+	–	–
Genitals (1382)	–	+	–
Sperm (1386)	–	+	+
Artery (1398)	+	+	+
Colon (1398)	+[14]	–	+[14]
Trachaea (c1400)	–	–	–
Uvula (c1400)	+	–	–
Testicle (c1425)	+	–	–
Embryo (1477)	–	–	+
Fracture (1525)	+	–	+
Nerve (1531)	+	–	+
Muscle (1533)	+	+	+
Abdomen (1541)	+	–	–
Cartilage (1541)	–	–	+
Cavity (1541)	+	–	–
Rectum (1541)	+	–	–
Tendon (1541)	–	–	–
Ulna (1541)	–	–	–
Cranium (1543)	–	–	–
Vulva (1548-77)	–	–	–
Larynx (1578)	–	–	–
Pancreas (1578)	–	–	–
Scapula (1578)	–	–	–
Skeleton (1578)	–	–	–
Intestine (1597)	–[15]	–	–
Scrotum (1597)	–	–	–[15]

Table 2. The (non-)occurrence of a few medical terms in the first three hard word dictionaries.

A comparison of the items in the list above with those included in the first hard word dictionary — that is, Robert Cawdrey's *A Table Alphabeticall* (1604), which was used as one of the sources in the compiling of *An English Expositor* (1604), shows that in the case of medical 'termes of art' Bullokar did not stick to his predecessor's policy;

14 *Colon* is included only as a term of punctuation.
15 Although *Intestine* is not recorded as a noun, it is recorded as an adjective (="Bred in the bowels").

indeed, of the ten medical terms included in *An English Expositor* only three are present in *A Table Alphabeticall*, while only one (*genitalles*) is reported in Cawdrey's text but not in Bullokar's. This quantitative discrepancy might be explained by the different number of entries in the two dictionaries: 2543 in Cawdrey versus 4249 in Bullokar; another reason may be found in a greater interest shown by the author in the inclusion of 'termes of art' in his dictionary. This second explanation finds greater support in the comparison of Bullokar's work with the third hard word English dictionary, that is, Henry Cockeram's (1623); in spite of the fact that in *The English Dictionary* the number of entries is even greater (5836 words), that of the medical terms selected in our list is smaller than in *An English Expositor*: only seven words are reported instead of the ten of Bullokar's dictionary. This means that Bullokar's interest in 'termes of art' was more prominent, as is shown also by the lengthier explanations that accompany the various items. The following comparison between the definitions of the same term in the first three hard word English dictionaries provides a very clear example:

(29)   *Splene*, milt. (Cawdrey 1604)

(30)   *Splene*. The milte of man or beaste: which is like a long narrow tongue, lying vnder the shorte ribbes on the left side, and hath this office of nature, to purge the liuer of superfluous melancholicke blood: sometime it signifieth anger or choler. (Bullokar 1616)

(31)   *Spleene*. The milt of man or beast. (Cockeram 1626)

The quotation above shows the brevity of Cawdrey's definitions, which usually consisted of a single equivalent or very few words of paraphrase; on the contrary, Bullokar's dealing with the entry *splene* did not only provide a native equivalent for the term of foreign origin, but also offered an explanation of its position in the human body and an explanation of its function; moreover it expressed its metaphoric meanings; Cockeram's definition, instead, reflects his usual behaviour, providing shorter explanations than Bullokar's, often consisting in the mere simplification or shortening of those reported in *An English Expositor*.

3.4. Affixation in Bullokar's 'termes of art'

The reading of the definitions of some of the entries in Bullokar's dictionary shows that there was still a gap between the specialized terminology of other languages – particularly Latin – and the English tongue; the latter still lacked some of the 'termes of art' which instead already existed in foreign codes. The following quotation provides a confirmation of this state of inferiority; in dealing with a medical term, Bullokar was not able to make exclusive use of English words to express his definition, and had to borrow two Latin expressions to refer to the two types of meninges he was describing:

(32) *Meninges.* Thinne skins in which the braine is contained. There are two such skinnes: one called by Phisitians, *Dura mater*, which is the stronger of the two, and next vnto the scull. The other named *Pia mater*, is within this first, being more tender and fine, and close wrapping the braine it selfe. If any of these skinnes bee wounded, it causeth speedy death.

This lack of terminology, however, was not generalized; indeed, there were disciplines which were very rich in specialized words: this was particularly true for the oldest branches – such as Law, Religion, Medicine and Rhetoric – which possessed not only the lexemes to refer to specialized concepts, but also all the words relating to a particular semantic area. A couple of examples drawn from the legal field illustrate this point: to express the concept of "the disposing of a dead mans goods, that made no will" Bullokar did not only report the appropriate legal term (*Administration*), but also its related verb (*Administer*) and the name to refer to the person "to whom the Ordinary committeth in charge the goodes of a man dying without will" (*Administrator*). The same lexical completeness can be seen in the semantic area of legal agreements, where five terms were mentioned in *An English Expositor*: the name to refer to the agreement itself (*Arbiterment*), the adjective pertaining to that concept (*Arbitrary*), the verb to indicate the making of the agreement (*Arbitrate*), and two words to designate the judge proposing the agreement (*Arbiter* and *Arbitratour*).

The mention of these groups of words pertaining to the same semantic field highlights several examples of the affixes most commonly used in the classical languages to produce derived forms

and imported into English by means of 'Inkhorn Terms'. The process of adoption of these affixes by the English language usually consisted of two phases: at first the various loans were adopted as single words and commonly employed without any specific awareness of the semantic value of the various parts forming the borrowed terms. Little by little the same affixes appearing in different words were isolated, semantically identified and consciously re-employed by English scientists in the creation of their new terms.

In the formation of this awareness of the semantic value of various affixes of foreign origin, Bullokar's dictionary was to play an important role, as its definitions gave a systematic rendering of the various derived forms. Bullokar's approach to this process of specification of the semantic value of the main affixes of foreign origin was indirect, in the sense that his dictionary did not deal systematically with word-formation rules; only rarely did he specify the meaning of the main affixes of classical origin that appeared in the terms he was explaining, and when he did so he dealt with them in an implicit way. The following example – containing the indication of the semantic value 'contrary or against' for the Greek prefix *anti* – demonstrates Bullokar's method:

(33) *Antichrist.* An adversary to Christ. It is compounded of the Greeke preposition *Anti*, and *Christus*, which signifieth contrary or against Christ.

However, although there were no explicit rules of word-formation, the user of *An English Expositor* was gradually able to become accustomed to the semantic value of the different affixes by reading the explanation of the entries he was analyzing. Indeed, in expressing the definitions of his terms, Bullokar followed a regular pattern of wording, thus building up a series of semantic equivalences. Here are a few examples of the semantic equivalences concerning various affixes of foreign origin found in *An English Expositor*:

• The meaning 'together' attributable to the prefix *con-*:

(34) *Congregate.* To gather together.

(35) *Conjunction.* A ioyning or coupling together.

(36) *Connexion.* A knitting together.

• The meaning 'contrarie, against' attributable to the prefix *counter-*:

(37) *Countermand.* To giue commandement contrarie to that wich was commanded before.

(38) *Countermine.* To mine or dig in the earth against another.

(39) *Counterpoise.* Any thing laid in waight against another thing.

• The equivalence of the prefix *in-* with the English prefix *un-*:

(40) *Inaccessible.* Which cannot bee come vnto, vnapprochable.

(41) *Inauspicious.* Vnluckie, vnfortunate.

• The meaning 'before' attributable to the prefix *pre-*:

(42) *Precede.* To goe before.

(43) *Predestinate.* To appoint before hand, what shal follow after.

(44) *Predecessor.* Hee that was in place or office before another.

• The meaning 'again' attributable to the prefix *re-*:

(45) *Reassume.* To take againe.

(46) *Reedifie.* To build again, to repaire.

(47) *Reenter.* To enter againe.

• The use of the suffix *-ation* to derive a noun from a verb:

(48) *Consummate.* To finish, to make an end.

(49) *Consummation.* An end, a finishing of a matter.

(50) *Cooperate.* To worke together, to helpe.

(51) *Cooperation.* A working with another, a helping.

• The use of the suffix *-ible* to derive an adjective from a verb:

(52) *Corrigible.* That which may be corrected or amended.

(53) *Credible.* That which may be beleeued.

(54) *Edible.* Which may bee eaten.

• The use of the suffix *-or* to derive the noun indicating the agent from a verb:

(55) *Compositor.* He that composeth or setteth a thing in order.

(56) *Mediator.* He that maketh meanes or speaketh for another.

In providing these series of equivalences, Bullokar increased the pedagogic value of his dictionary; not only did it fulfil his desire to provide a tool useful in promoting a correct interpretation of several hard words commonly found in English texts by providing precise and detailed definitions of the various entries; it also formed a basis for a systematic patterning of the explanation of derived words, thus enabling the user of *An English Expositor* to realize the semantic value of many common affixes of foreign origin encountered in the 'termes of art' reported in the dictionary.

VII. Lexical Choices in a Galilean Translation

This chapter takes into consideration Thomas Salusbury's (1661, 1665) rendering of Galileo's main scientific works, focusing in particular on his lexical choices, in order to point out the criteria followed in the selection of appropriate equivalents and – whenever there was a lack of suitable English words – in the creation of the new terminology required. In order to evaluate the translation methodology followed by Salusbury and in particular the criteria adopted in his rendering of Galileo's terms, a few passages of the *Dialogue on the Great World Systems* have been analysed. This work, which can be considered fundamental for the growth of scientific thought in this period and which has greatly influenced the evolution of several disciplines not only in England but all over Europe, introduced many new terms, which were soon included in the specialized terminologies of various European languages.

1. The text and the author

Not much is known about Thomas Salusbury. Indeed, the few fairly reliable details about his life have become available only with the discovery of a series of letters written by him (cf. Zeitlin 1959). The information deduced from them has suggested a date of birth in the decade 1620-30, his belonging to the royalist movement, and a period of several years spent in Italy and France before the return of Charles II to England. His stay in those countries enabled him to perfect his knowledge of the local languages and – particularly in Italy – to cultivate his interest in astronomical and physical matters. On those subjects he translated several works – in particular those written by Galileo – besides writing a treatise of his own on the comparative gravity of bodies in air and water.

Thomas Salusbury's main body of translations is to be found in his *Mathematical Collections and Translations*, which consists of two volumes, the first published in 1661 and the second in 1665. Of the latter, only eight copies exist. These are incomplete as they contain only the first part of the second volume; the second part seems to have been destroyed by the Great Fire of London, just one month after Salusbury's death, which took place in August 1666. Complete copies of the second volume, however, are very likely to have existed, as the presence of one of them in the library of the Earl of Macclesfield housed at Shirburn Castle has been reported by various readers; the latest testimony is dated 1829 – a few passages from Salusbury's second part of the second volume were quoted directly by John Elliot Drinkwater-Bethune – but since that date the book has disappeared.

The importance of these *Mathematical Collections and Translations* must have been great, particularly for Salusbury's contemporaries, as they contained the first English version of several works written by Galileo,[1] and remained the only version translated into that language for almost three centuries.[2] The main reason that prompted Salusbury to provide an English version of some of the most important innovative specialist works written in a foreign language is of a pedagogic nature, as can be deduced from his own testimony:

Mathematical learning (to speak nothing touching the necessity and delight thereof) has been so sparingly imparted to our countrymen in their native English, especially the nobler and sublimer part, that in compliance with the solicitations of several of my noble and learned friends and the inclinations of such as are mathematically disposed, more especially those who either want time or patience to look into the vulgar and unstudied languages, I did adventure upon this work of collecting and translating from among the excellent pieces that are so abounding in the Italian and French tongues some

---

[1] A previous translation into English (attributed to Joseph Webbe) of Galileo's *Dialogue* had been made (a mention of it can be found in a letter written by Thomas Hobbes to William Cavendish, Earl of Newcastle, in January 1634; cf. Drake 1967: 2), but was never published. The manuscript, which can be found in the British Museum, had no influence on Salusbury, as this "English translation is quite different in *style* from Salusbury's and was doubtless unknown to him." (Drake 1967: 3)

[2] As regards Galileo's *Dialogo*, Salusbury's first printed translation into English was not followed until almost three centuries later by that published by Stillman Drake in 1953.

---

of those that from my own observation and from the intimation of friends were most useful and desired and, withal, most wanting in their own.

(Salusbury 1661: foreword)

It is interesting to note that, in providing a translation into the vernacular, Salusbury claims a motivation similar to that which had led Galileo to choose Italian rather than Latin for the composition of many of his books, and made explicit in a letter written to Paolo Gualdo:

> I am induced to do this by seeing how young men are sent through the universities at random to be made physicians, philosophers, and so on; thus many of them are committed to professions for which they are unsuited, while other men who would be fitted for these are taken up by family cares and other occupations remote from literature. [...] Now I want them to see that just as nature has given to them, as well as philosophers, eyes to see her works, so she has also given them brains capable of penetrating and understanding them.

(Translated by Drake 1957: 84)

2. Salusbury's approach to translation

In order to evaluate the translation methodology followed by Salusbury and in particular the criteria adopted in his rendering of Galileo's terms, from the many texts contained in the *Mathematical Collections and Translations*, we have chosen to analyze a few pages of the *Dialogue on the Great World Systems*, a work which presents a well-reasoned defence of the Copernican innovative views opposed to the traditional Ptolemaic system. The corpus analysed consists of two passages – Galilei (1632 / 1982: 393-407 and 460-470)) and Salusbury (1661: 302-308 and 352-361) – taken from the third day, in which Galileo discusses the annual movement of the earth and reports on a series of experiments and observations carried out by means of a telescope. In these passages many specialized terms are made use of, several of which have been coined for the first time by Galileo. The first feature that stands out from this analysis is the faithfulness with which Salusbury translates Galileo's dialogue, not only in rendering

the single lexemes, but in reproducing the whole of the original text. Indeed, the sentences are usually translated in a very similar form, and only minor alterations in word order or syntactic construction are made in order to satisfy specific rules which diverge in the two languages. This is the case, for example, with the nominalization of verbal forms, which is commonly rendered in Italian with the infinitive of the verb preceded by the definite article, a construction which is not typical of the English language. To translate such forms, Salusbury resorts to different means. At times he uses the -*ing* form, which enables him to leave the original construction of the sentence unaltered:

(1) Il non mutar figura in Venere. (p. 399)
The not changing figure in Venus. (p. 302)

(2) Dal non si inclinare o elevar già mai. (p. 467)
From its not inclining or elevating at all. (p. 358)

(3) Circa l'alzarsi e abbassarsi. (p. 468)
About its elevating or declining. (p. 358)

On other occasions he uses a noun, a device which again enables him not to alter the word order of the original sentence:

(4) Lo strumento stesso del vedere. (p. 401)
The very instrument of sight. (p. 303)

In other cases Salusbury manages to make use of an infinitive, although not preceded by the article:

(5) Il far che tutti i pianeti, insieme con la Terra, si muovano intorno al Sole. (p. 399)
To make the Planets, together with the Earth, to move about the Sun. (p. 302)

(6) E qui rimetto al vostro parere il giudicare quello che abbia più del verisimile. (p. 70)
And here I refer it to your judgement to determine which of the two is the most probable. (p. 361)

Salusbury's faithfulness to the form of the original text leads him at times to use constructions which are typical of Italian but rare in

English, such as the placing of an adjective after a noun, as the following example testifies:

(7) Nelle parti inferiori. (p. 406)
In the parts inferiour. (p. 307)

It must be pointed out, however, that on the whole the form of Salusbury's translation follows the standard rules of the language and – although it succeeds in maintaining the characteristics of Galileo's prose – it reads in a very natural English style. There are times, however, when Salusbury has to make slight alterations to the word order of the original sentence, or modifications to the syntactic function of some of its elements, so as to make them sound appropriate in English. Here are a few examples:

(8) Della poco variata grandezza di lei. (p. 400)
Of her small variation of Magnitude. (p. 302)

(9) La fama della sublimità del suo ingegno. (p. 405)
The fame of his sublime wit. (p. 306)

(10) Per esser egli così vicino al Sole. (p. 406)
By reason of its vicinity to the Sun. (p. 307)

2.1. Salusbury's translation of specialized terms

In his choice of terms too, Salusbury generally makes use of common words which are the direct equivalent of Galileo's. This direct transposition is made easier by the fact that a large amount of specialized terminology is very similar in the two languages. Below, for example, is a list of words drawn from the two texts which are clearly very much alike (The dates appearing after the English terms are those of their first quotations reported by the *OED*):

(11)
congiunzione	conjunction (1374)
emisferio	hemisphere (1374)
opposizione	opposition (1386)
risplendente	resplendent (1448)
splendor	splendour (1450)
umidità	humidity (1450)

Lexical Choices in a Galilean Translation

sferico	spherical (1523)
apparizione	apparition (1525-30)
riflettersi	reflect (1530)
superficie	superficies (1530)
conversione	conversion (1540-1)
punti cardinali	cardinal points (1549)
digressione	digression (1552)
illuminazione	illumination (1563)
pupilla	pupil (1567)
cilindro	cylinder (1570)
semidiurno	semidiurnal (1594)
seminotturno	seminocturnal (1594)
telescopio	telescope (1619)
opaco	opacous (1621)
eclissato	eclipsed (1633)
meridiano	meridian (1633).

Similarity of form can be found also in many non-technical words employed by Salusbury in his translation. These, however, have not been invented by him following Galileo's example, but were commonly used – especially in the written language – in English texts, which show a frequent use of Latinate forms. Here is a short sample of such words with the indication of their first quotation in the *OED*:

(12)

terminato	terminate (1432)
vivacità	vivacity (1432)
mattutino	matutine (1445)
avvertimento	advertisement (1475)
ampio	ample (1485)
vesperino	vesperine (1508)
situato	situate (1523)
assurdità	absurdity (1528)
cospicuo	conspicuous (1545)
stupendo	stupendous (1547)
perspicacità	perspicacity (1548)
insensibilmente	insensibly (1584)
eminente	eminent (1588)
avventizio	adventitious (1603)
vivace	vivacious (1645).

In inventing new technical terms, Galileo generally adopts words used in everyday language or present in the basic terminology of the various scientific disciplines and gives them his own specific

meaning. This same process of specialization is also followed by Salusbury, who finds such a process facilitated by the fact that the words to be given a specialized meaning have a form which is similar to the Italian one. A few examples of these terms deriving from a process of specialization are *cono / cone* (in the expression 'cone of shade"), *esatto / exact* (applied to very precise instruments), *irradiazione / irradiation* (with its optical sense), *momento / moment* (with the meaning of 'momentum, force'), *occultato / occulted* (as used in astronomy), *orbo / orb* (with its astronomical meaning), *parallelo / parallel* (in its astronomical sense), *sistema / systeme* (with its astronomical value) and *trasmettere / transmit* (in its physical sense). In order to maintain a form similar to that of the Italian version, Salusbury sometimes adopts an existing term and assigns a new meaning to it. This process of semantic innovation is followed, for instance, in rendering the adjective *gioviale*, used by Galileo to refer to the moons of the planet Jupiter; in this case the English translator uses the existing adjective *jovial*, up to then commonly used with reference to the god Jove.

In Salusbury's use of the term *moons*, one can see a recourse to the process of calquing. Indeed, the term *moon* was commonly used in English to refer to the earth's satellite and was adopted by Salusbury in his translation to refer to the satellites of Jupiter. In doing so, Salusbury imitates the word-formation process followed by Galileo in using the term *lune* for the same purpose. Another instance of imitation of form can be found in Salusbury's rendering of Galileo's *cristalli* referring to the lenses[3] of the telescope (a clear case of metonymy), for which Salusbury makes use of the existing word *chrystals*, a word which was mainly used to indicate ice or minerals as well as glass, of which the telescope lenses are made. On other occasions Salusbury makes use of the process of conversion, by means of which an existing word is inserted in a text with a syntactic function which is different from the usual one. An example of this can be seen in the translation of the Italian adjective *reflesso*, for which Salusbury makes use of the term *reflex* (which had only been used as a noun up to then) to perform the same adjectival function.

---

3 The term *lens* is first reported in the *OED* in a quotation dated 1693.

A form similar to the Italian original is also adopted by Salusbury in the creation of those neologisms needed to render terms which had no equivalent in the English language. At times, the form of these loans remains the same, facilitated by the presence not only of the same root but also of the same suffix in the two languages. This is the case with *terminator*, which, however, appears in Salusbury's text only with a nominal value, while the same word is used by Galileo with the double function of adjective and noun. In other cases the Italian suffixes are rendered with the English ones most similar to them: examples can be seen in the loans *Mediceo / Medicaean* and *capellizio / capellitious* or *capillitious*.[4] As regards the latter, the addition of a suffix commonly used for adjectives causes Salusbury to use this neologism only in an adjectival position, even when Galileo uses it as a noun, as in the case of *capellizio radioso* (p. 401) rendered as *capillitious rayes* (p. 303). In the case of Galileo's term *disco*, Salusbury adopts the form *discus*, a word generally found in works written in Latin and which was starting to be used also in English, although not in its astronomic sense, as can be seen from its earliest quotation in the *OED* taken from Cowley's *Pindarique Odes*:

> The chief Exercises there were Running, Leaping, Wresting, the Discus, which was the casting of a great round Stone, or Ball, made of Iron or Brass. (Cowley 1656, iii: note)

As regards units of measurement, these are not translated literally, but rendered with the nearest equivalent. Thus Galileo's *dito* (literally 'finger', roughly equivalent to one inch) is translated by Salusbury into *inch*, while *braccio* (literally 'arm', corresponding approximately to 21 inches – cf. Drake 1960: xxv) is translated as *yard*.

2.2. *Salusbury's rendering of metaphorical language*

In translating the Italian text, Salusbury takes great care to preserve the figurative language of the original. Galileo uses a colloquial form of Italian, particularly suitable for the expressive genre that he has

---

4   This can be considered a nonce word, as it appears not to have been used by other people. Indeed, it is not even listed in the *OED*.

chosen, that is, the dialogue. Moreover, his style is enriched by the use of metaphors, which make his text admirable also from a literary point of view. Some of the metaphors which Galileo makes use of are 'dead metaphors', that is, figures of speech that have become common in the language and are therefore perceived as unmarked by interlocutors. One of these is *ghirlanda*, used in the figurative connotation of ring or circular band; to render this metaphor, Salusbury uses the word *garland*, which had been in use for at least one century with that semantic value.[5]

It is interesting to observe, however, that in translating Galileo's metaphorical language, Salusbury avoids the inventing of neologisms when figurative terms already exist. This can be seen, for example, in the rendering of *inghirlandato*, for which Salusbury – rather than coining the derived form *garlanded* from the existing verb *to garland* – makes use of the adjective *fringed*, already popular with that figurative value. Another English figure of speech common at that time is *shining locks*, which is adopted by Salusbury to render Galileo's metaphorical expression *crini risplendenti* to refer to the phenomenon of the irradiation of the sun.

In certain cases Salusbury provides two equivalents for the same figurative expression. For example, the Italian adjective *falcata*, used by Galileo to refer to the shape of the moon as similar to that of a sickle (*falce* in Italian) is rendered by Salusbury by means of the two adjectives *forked or horned*, both of which were part of contemporary common language.[6] Another double rendering of a metaphor is used in the case of *crini*, an Italian term denoting 'hair' and employed by Galileo with reference to the sun's rays, for which the English author provides the double translation *hair or fringe*. Sometimes the second equivalent is added as a sort of explanation for the first term, which is

---

5   The *OED* reports the following as the earliest quotation of this metaphorical use of *garland*: "Round about the edge of the urine there appeareth a garland, circle, or ring." (1548, Recorde, *Urin. Physick* x. (1651) 81)

6   The Italianate form *falcated* is first reported in Harris' *Lexicon Technicum* (1704) with the following explanation: "The Astronomers say the Moon, or any Planet appear *falcated*, when the enlighted part appears in the Form of a Sickle, or Reaping-hook; which is while she is moving from the Conjunction to the Opposition, or from New Moon to Full; but from Full to a New again, the enlightened part appears *Gibbous*, and the dark *Falcated*."

of a more technical nature. This can be seen, for instance, in Salusbury's rendering of *irragiarsi* as *irradiate* or *beam forth rayes*, of *apparenze* as *Phænomena* or *appearances* and of *vertice* as *apex* or *top*. Indeed, the three technical terms given, as first equivalents were quite recent borrowings (the first quotation in the *OED* for *irradiate* is dated 1617, for *phænomena* 1605 and for *apex* 1610) and the English translator was thus careful to accompany them with more familiar synonymic expressions.

The explanatory purpose of these binary renderings is indicative of the attention paid to clarity and precision that characterizes also other parts of Salusbury's translation, and which at times leads him to use a paraphrase rather than a direct equivalent. An example of this lexical choice can be seen in Salusbury's use of the paraphrase *the observators standing in Jupiter* (p. 308) instead of the nominalized form of the existing adjective *Jovial* to translate Galileo's innovative use of *Gioviali* (p. 406). In another case, the risk of ambiguity which might derive from using the word *mistress* – endowed with so many meanings, not all of a positive nature – in the translation of Galileo's phrase *la vera maestra ci insegna* (p. 403, literally 'the true mistress teaches us', in which *mistress* has the semantic value of 'female teacher') leads Salusbury to accompany that term with appropriate specifications and to provide the following equivalent text: *the true Mistris of Astronomy, Experience, teacheth us* (p. 305).

A detailed analysis of the Italian and the English versions shows that on the whole there are fewer metaphorical expressions in Salusbury's text than in the original, since some figures of speech are rendered in a more technical way by the English translator. Examples of this kind of lexical choice occur in the rendering of Galileo's *capellatura* (p. 404, literally 'hair') as *irradiation* (p. 305), and of *corna* (p. 405, 'horns [of the moon]') as *crescents* (p. 306). Also in the case of non-figurative language Salusbury often renders Galileo's expressions with more specific terms, as can be seen in the translation of *mezo cerchio* (p. 406, literally 'half circle') as *Semicircle* (p. 307) or of *punto uguaimente lontano* (p. 463, 'equally distant point') as *point equidistant* (p. 354).

3. Salusbury's influence on the English language of science

The influence of Salusbury's Galilean translations on the English lexicon is difficult to assess. Although his works are rarely mentioned as providing the earliest instances of neological formations in the *OED*,[7] the great majority of his lexical innovations are to be found in that dictionary,[8] which means that they were quickly adopted by contemporary English scientists and included in their texts. It is also possible that Salusbury's terms could have been independently coined by other writers at the same time rather than their re-use being an indication of his influence. To assess the validity of these two hypotheses the testimony of the great men of science of the period is unfortunately not of great assistance to us, as Newton is the only leading figure who clearly mentions his reading of Salusbury's translation of Galileo's *Dialogo* (cf. Turnbull 1963: III, 52).

Salusbury's influence on British scientists of his time may have been limited both by the habit of many eminent members of the Royal Society of reading the works of the most important foreign scientific innovators in their original language, or – more frequently – in their Latin versions,[9] and by the too limited number of copies available of his translations, due to the almost complete loss caused by the Great Fire of London of 1666.

---

7   Salusbury's works are quoted only twice in the *OED* as sources of neologisms, namely *equivjacent* and the physical meaning of *force*. It should be remembered, however, that the method by which the *OED* was compiled meant that assistants read texts and noted usages that struck them as novel or unusual, a practice that would certainly favour works by more famous writers. Schäfer (1980) has shown that Shakespeare's usage is much more likely to be recorded than Nashe's, for example.

8   Indeed, of all the neologisms found in our corpus, only the term *capellitious / capillitious* is not reported in the *OED*.

9   A confirmation of this practice can be found in the following words by Hall: "We may be sure that for every Englishman who read Galileo in English there were ten who read the alternative Latin editions" (Hall 1961: 26). Latin versions of Galileo's works were available in most European countries, including England, where some of these versions were published by local printers.

Certainly other figures have been more influential in the development of English scientific language. Robert Boyle, for example, is quoted 632 times in the *OED* for words which either appear for the first time in his works or are employed by him with a meaning different from those previously recorded in that dictionary (for an analysis of the new words in Boyle's texts cf. Chapter 8). This higher degree of influence may be due to the greater number of works written by Robert Boyle, the wider range of disciplines dealt with, and his particular importance in the scientific world of his time, also testified to by his leading role in the early life of the Royal Society.

However, even analyses of minor works of this age, such as that described above, may prove to be very interesting, as they can provide important details to support and integrate the main views commonly held on the formation of modern scientific language. Indeed, in the corpus taken into consideration here we have found a confirmation of the great linguistic creativity characteristic of this period and of the main word-formation processes adopted to facilitate the rapid lexical growth that was so greatly needed by English men of science in the 17th century.

VIII. Specialized Neologisms in Boyle's Texts

This chapter examines some words first recorded in *The Oxford English Dictionary* (henceforth *OED*) in quotations taken from texts by Robert Boyle. Although throughout this chapter the term 'neologism' will be used, this does not mean that all these words were certainly coined by Boyle himself but only that they are first recorded in the OED in the context of quotations taken from this author's texts. The analysis of such quotations has enabled us to form a substantial corpus of words coined in the 17th century, thus allowing us to examine the processes of word-formation most commonly employed and to compare them with those noted in other studies. Our analysis, moreover, has focused on the techniques most frequently used for the presentation of the semantic value of these neologisms or of the new meanings attributed to existing words. This investigation, in particular, will highlight the reasons and criteria that guided this expansion of English with a view to endowing it with the terms and expressions needed for the writing of scientific and non-scientific texts.

The passages taken from Robert Boyle's texts included in the OED amount to 2,717. This relatively large number may reflect the importance that the dictionary's compilers gave to these works as instances of the state of the language in the 17th century. 632 of these quotes contain words that either appear in the dictionary for the first time or that are employed by Boyle with a meaning different from those previously recorded in the OED. This is a confirmation of the great creativity characteristic of the period, when one of the most rapid growths of vocabulary in the history of the language occurred (cf. Finkenstaedt *et al.* 1970 – henceforth *CED*). A confirmation of the novelty in the use of these words comes from the analysis of the Helsinki Corpus (cf. Kytö 1996) – in which these neologisms are recorded either in texts by Boyle or in later ones – and of a few 17th-century dictionaries (e.g. Cockeram 1623, Coles 1676, Phillips 1658), where these new terms do not appear.

The great majority of these new words were adopted by contemporary and subsequent users of English – as further quotations in the *OED* testify –, while only in 58 cases (9.17% of all his neologisms) do we find Boyle's single quotations as exemplification of these lexical and semantic innovations. This figure (i.e. 90.83%) certainly reinforces the importance of his contribution to the increase in the English lexicon, especially if we compare it with the results obtained by Barber (1976) in a similar analysis of lexical innovations in the Early Modern English period,[1] where the terms abandoned a few years after their first appearance in the *OED* amount to 31.69 per cent.

1. Origin of the neologisms

Of the 632 new words included in our corpus, 186 (29.43%) represent cases of semantic innovation, while 446 (70.57%) are new lexical formations. The main processes undergone by existing vocabulary are those of semantic restriction[2] (103 cases – 55.38% of all innovations of meaning), generalization (53 items – 28.49%) and figurative extension (30 words – 16.13%), as shown in Table I. Most of these neologisms, however, are obtained by means of affixation (315 cases – 70.63%) and borrowing (73 words – 16.37%). Fewer, instead, are the words obtained through the use of compounding (12 lexical items – 2.69%), conversion (8 cases – 1.80%), blending (2 words – 0.44%) or analogy (1 word[3] – 0.22%). In the remaining cases, mixed

---

1   Barber (1976) carried out an analysis of 1,988 words, recorded in the *OED* with an initial date ranging between 1500 and 1700.

2   Among the cases of semantic restriction we have included all kinds of specialization of meaning, not only those referring to the passing from a generalized use of a lexeme to a more specialized one, but also those involving transfer from one specialized field to another.

3   The only case of analogical formation is represented by *pottern* (= of or pertaining to potters), formed from the noun *potter* after *leathern*, etc.

processes of word-formation[4] were used (31 words – 6.96%), or no particular criterion was followed (4 items[5] – 0.89%).

SEMANTIC RESTRICTION – Absolute, abstract, accenting, acuteness, adiaphorous, amicableness, analyze, ballance, bed, branle, bread-corn, brisk, concentrated, conjunct, corporal, cubic, decrement, deflagration, discoloration, discomposure, efflorescence, embody, engagement, enjoyment, enlargement, ennoble, estuary, evanid, exhaustion, exploded, explorer, extrication, female, flint, focus, glacial, gravity, hartshorn, immersed, impenetrable, incident, incoherence, inconspicuous, incumbent, integer, interception, irritation, made, magnifier, marbled, Martial, materiate, mering, metastasis, midrif, minuteness, neutral, parathesis, peculiarity, penetration, perforation, ponderation, potency, precipitated, prepared, pressure, punctum, quadrature, rammer, refractory, revived, rostrum, sediment, sequestered, shank, specular, splinter, statical, station, steam, subsidence, sweet, tartareous, temperature, tension, terrate, texture, translation, unexhausted, unjustified, unsincere, unsincerity, unsociable, vacuous, vapid, venereal, vitreous, vivacious, vivacity, vive, voidable, wire-draw, wristband.

SEMANTIC GENERALIZATION – Adequately, architect, Cartesian, celebrated, clog, cosmical, customariness, dampy, entail, equiponderate, estreat, ethical, eventually, exantlate, exhausted, filtrate, flaky, forceps, generous, gusto, inorganical, intercourse, magnetical, maturity, oxeye, paralipomena, percolate, puffing, puncuation, reduced, reproduce, resonant, resupine, retrenchment, reverberatory, rummage, samphire, scarceness, scented, scripturist, sprig, spingy, squash, stirring, suck, swim, tea, unassisted, unenlighted, unfashionable, unherd, unlicked, vivid.

FIGURATIVE EXTENSION – Constellate, contagious, depreciate, determination, dethrone, diaphragm, elevated, expropriated, extraction, exuberant, gild, hermitage, illuminated, innocency, jarring, open-mouthed, ramble, recruit, regurgitate, roaring, stage, stranger, stuff, subvert, symphonize, tour, tumid, uncultivated, unfading, unhood.

Table 1.   Cases of semantic restriction, semantic generalization and figurative extension in the corpus analysed.

---

4   The mixed processes of word-formation used in our corpus include borrowing + affixation (24 cases), compounding + suffixation (5 words) and borrowing + compounding (2 items).

5   This is the case of *grisolet* (a variant of *chrysolite*), *semplar* (variant of *sampler*), *spelter* (a word corresponding to the Old French form *espautre*, but whose immediate source is not clear) and *swig* (of unclear origin).

If we compare these figures with Barber's (1976), we notice a similar limitation in the recourse to the process of borrowing as against other processes; in his corpus, loanwords are adopted more often than in ours (this figure is 32.70%, while, if we include also borrowings we find in the cases of mixed formations, we reach a percentage of 22.19%). Of the remaining processes, however, our data provide evidence for a far higher frequency (corresponding to a ratio of about 10 to 1) of affixation in comparison with compounding, conversion, blending, analogy and others, while in Barber (1976) this ratio is only 2.3 to 1. This does not only confirm Barber's conclusions (i) that, despite the Inkhorn Controversy, in this period the phenomenon of borrowing was more limited than that of lexical creation based on the resources of English, but also (ii) that despite the continuing great increase in vocabulary when Boyle was active, the need for borrowing starts to decline, so that most of the new words turn out to be re-elaborations of or derivations from existing ones.

If we analyze the cases of affixation present in our corpus, we can see that this process was mainly carried out by means of suffixation (237 of the cases — 75.24%), with a ratio of 3 to 1 over that of prefixation (78 items — 24.76%); no cases of infixation appear in the quotations cited in the *OED*. These percentages correlate with those reported by Barber, who provides a figure of 69.93% for suffixation and of 30.07% for prefixation. The suffixes most commonly used to form nouns are (cf. Table 2): -ness (67 cases), -ist (10), -ity (9), -er (8), -or (5), -ing (3), -tion, -ion and -s (2 each), -ence, -ian, -ism, -ure (1 each). Multiple suffixation is also represented, such as in the cases of -ar+tion and ic+tation (1 case each). An interesting phenomenon to be noted is that among the suffixes used in mixed processes of word-formation, which are mainly added to loans of Latin origin, the Latinate and Romance forms are more numerous than the non-Latinate ones: -an (3 words), er, -ion, -ist, -ity (2 cases each), -ancy, -ence, -ency, -ian (1 example each). As regards the formation of adjectives, the most frequent suffixes are (cf. Table 2): -ing (21 words), -ed (20 words, 19 of which derived from verbs and 1 from a noun), -able (12), -al (10, of which 2 preceded by -ic), -ible (4), -ary, -less, -like, -ous (2 cases each), -an, ar, -ent, -ine, -ious, -ish, -ive, -ory (1 each).

Suffixes to form nouns

-ness: abjectedness, abstruseness, acquaintedness, addictedness, advantageous-ness, alkalizateness, applicableness, colourlessness, commensurateness, conspicuousness, desultoriness, friableness, gallingness, globulousness, ground-lessness, innatureness, immethodicalness, impenetrableness, incommensurable-ness, inflammableness, insolubleness, instructiveness, languidness, luminousness, manageableness, movingness, narrow-mindedness, notedness, passionateness, pellucidness, permeableness, pleasedness, producibleness, promisingness, propagableness, prosperousness, receivedness, reducibleness, resolubleness, ropiness, saltiness, satisfactoriness, sinlessness, sneakingness, sonorousness, sparklingness, spirituousness, stupefiedness, sublimableness, transmurableness, tumidness, unaccurateness, uncloudedness, undisciplinedness, undistructedness, unforbiddenness, unfurnishedness, unhabitableness, unleisuredness, unmerited-ness, unqualifiedness, unrequitedness, unreservedness, unwelcomeness, vividness.

-ist: elaterist, gnomonist, hyperbolist, impartialist, lithotomist, naturist, secretist, superficialist, terragonist, zootomist.

-ity: compressibility, corrosibility, deflagrability, diaphaneity, effumability, fixity, intensity, semi-diaphaneity, semi-opacity.

-er: blusher, deplorer, disregarder, disrespecter, impeller, starer, theologizer, unveiler.

-or: cultivator, inculcator, meditator, reflector, remunerator.

-ing: inletting, plumbing, supervening.

-ation: dephlagmation, volatilization.

-ion: prepossession, pression.

-s: hydraulics, hydrostatics.

-ence: lactescence.

-ian: hydrostatician.

-ism: Antiscripturism.

-ure: divesture.

Suffixes to form adjectives

-ing: compressing, defeating, discomposing, exalting, exhaling, exploring, geo-metrizing, impairing, imposing, improving, preponderating, puzzling, restoring, resulting, ricketing, rippling, tinging, unsettling, vibrating, vitrifying, wetting.

-ed: asperated, bottled, caked, decompounded, foliated, fumigated, hopped, ignited, impelled, predesigned, predigested, redintegrated, refrigerated, rochled, stellated, substrated, unluted, unscreened, unscrupled, vesselled.

-able: amalgamable, containable, diversifiable, employable, irrejectable, mingle-able, overthrowable, preparable, salvable, specifiable, sublimable, unmingleable.

-al: atmospherical, barometrical, hermetical, hygienal, hypostatical, narcasitical, noctitucal, orpimental, pathological, thermometrical.

-*ible*: compressible, divestible, exhaustible, transfusible.
-*ary*: quaternary, visionary.
-*less*: flawless, phegmless.
-*like*: prism-like, wave-like.
-*ous*: butyrous, noctilucous.
-*an*: Torricellian.
-*ar*: corpuscular.
-*ent*: constituent.
-*ine*: cinnabarine.
-*ious*: refractious.
-*ish*: aguish.
-*ive*: reflexive.
-*ory*: coagulatory.

Table 2. Suffixes to form nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

Suffixes to form adverbs
-*ly*: adequately, briskly, conically, corrosively, designlessly, discordantly, hesitantly, hydrostatically, inadequately, incidentally, inconspicuously, intelligently, interruptedly, irrelatively, languidly, mentally, pardonably, prismatically, promisingly, prooflessly, reflectingly, reputedly, resonantly, sparklingly, surprisingly, systematically, unaccurately, undesignedly, undistractedly, unfalteringly, unimposedly, unprejudicedly, unprovokedly, unregardedly, unresistedly, unsatisfiedly, unveiledly, vividly.

The only suffix employed in the formation of adverbs is -*ly* (39 cases – cf. Table 2), while to create new verbs either -*ate* or -*ify* is used (1 case each: *granulate, mercurify*). If we compare these suffixes with those reported by Barber (1976), we notice the absence of suffixes very popular in that period, such as -*ment*, -*ship*, -*age* (to form nouns), -*y* (to form adjectives), *ize* (to form verbs). This does not mean that these suffixes were not in use in Boyle's days, but only that different suffixes were used to obtain the derivations needed; indeed, all the neglected suffixes can be replaced by others with the same syntactic function. It may be added, moreover, that as regards -*ize* we witness the anticipation of the drastic decrease in recourse to this suffix that took place in the Augustan period (cf. Görlach 1991:177).

As to prefixes, those used to express negation tend to prevail (cf. Table 3): in our corpus *un*- appears 49 times, *in*- 5, *im*- 3. Of the

others, only *re*- is used with frequency (11 times), while the remaining forms are rarer: *mis*- (3 words), *semi*- (2 words), *e*-, *inter*-, *over*-, *pre*-, *self*- (1 word each). Here too we can notice the absence of some of the commonest prefixes that Barber (1976) lists, such as *counter*-, *trans*-, *en*- and *com*-. It is true that, among the neologisms in our corpus, some do begin with these prefixes (e.g. *transfusible, transmittableness, enlargement, ennoble, commensurateness, compenetrate*), but these are formal or semantic modifications of pre-existing lexemes already containing those prefixes.

un-: unaccurate, unallied, unanalysed, uncoated, uncompressed, unconceded, unconducive, unconjectured, unconspiringness, uncontentingness, uncorroded, uncurious, undedicated, undephlegmated, underogatory, underactingly, undiaphanous, undiscoloured, undissipated, undistracted, undiverted, unelaborate, unequalable, unexplicated, unexposed, unextirpated, unfermented, unheated, unimaginably, unimposedly, unimproved, unincreasable, unindustriously, uninflammable, uninstructive, unlure, unmechanical, unobsequiousness, unprecipitated, unprepossessed, unprevalent, unproduced, unseveredly, unstudious, untinged, untraceable, untransmuted, unvouchsafed, unwetted.

re-: reacquire, recoagulation, recondense, recoporification, redistil, re-embody, re-expanding, reimmit, reimpel, reinvert, resublimation.

in-: inadequate, inappetence, incompacted, indestructible, irrefracted.

im-: immalleable, improficiency, impulverable.

mis-: misaddress, misassign, misrendering.

semi-: semi-diaphanous, semi-opacous.

e-: elucid.

inter-: interplanetary.

over-: overclog.

pre-: pregravitate.

self-: self-admiration.

Table 3. Prefixes.

As regards the syntactic categories involved in derivation, nouns are mainly derived from adjectives (80 cases compared with the 22 each of nouns derived from other nouns or verbs), while adjectives are obtained primarily from verbs and adjectives (60 and 51 cases respectively, compared with the 21 cases of adjectives derived from

nominal bases). Verbs are mainly derived from other verbs (13 cases; only 3 originate from nouns, and only one from an adjective); similarly, most adverbs are based on existing adjectives (with 37 neologisms, compared with the 5 derived from other adverbs).

As regards borrowing (cf. Table 4), the principal source language is Latin (giving 56 loanwords – 76.71%), followed by Greek (9 loans – 12.33%), French (5 loanwords – 6.85). Arabic, Italian and Spanish (1 loanword each – 1.37% each). The loanwords used in the mixed processes of word-formation bring the number of lexemes derived from Latin to 77 cases, those from Greek to 13, and the Arabic ones to 2.

Table 4. Loanwords.

LATIN: adept, amplificator, aperitive, assimilable, aurific, bullient, butyrous, camphorate, compenetrate, construct, contusion, corpuscle, cupreous, deflagrable, delusible, dephlegm, dephlegmate, destructor, dissitition, effluviable, elastical, embolus, aequilibrium, extraversion, exuvie, flores, funiculus, galega, ibidem, incalescent, incontiguous, indolent, inodorous, laborant, laminate, manubrium, miliary, nexus, noctiluca, otid, opacate, pendulum, pericarpium, permeate, pervasion, plica, semile, stagnant, starera, stiria, supernatant, terebinthinate, transudate, vacuist, vortice, zootomy.

GREEK: androtomy, asymmetrical, cycloid, diabetes, diadrom, dorism, drastic, meletetics, phasis.

FRENCH: bienseance, en passant, frigorifick, insalubrity, resuscitable.

ARABIC: khamsin.

ITALIAN: tarantato.

SPANISH: pregnada.

If we compare our figures with those obtained by Barber (1976) and Wernser (1976),[6] we notice that our corpus presents a higher percentage of loanwords derived from Latin (Barber has 62.88%, Wernser, 57.77%) and Greek (compared with Barber's 5.6% and Wernser's 5.9%), and a lower percentage of loanwords from French (Barber has 19.36%, Wernser, 22.5%) and other languages (compared

6   Wernser (1976) carried out his analysis on the neologisms coined between 1510 and 1724 included in the CED.

with Barber's 12.16% and Wernser's 13.9%). This discrepancy may be due to the different corpora analysed in the three studies. While Barber and Wernser consider all the words registered in the OED / CED for a certain period, the quotations belonging to our corpus are mainly taken from specialized texts, and it is a well-known fact that the words required for those disciplines mainly derived from Latin and Greek sources.

As regards possible alterations to the original form of loan-words, our data show that our neologizer(s) behaved only slightly differently from other borrowers. Sometimes foreign terms and expressions are taken in more or less their original form (e.g. amplificator, destructor, diabetes, diadron, embolus, en passant, aequilibrium, exuvie, flores, galega, ibidem, Khamsin, phasis, supernatant, tarantato), but usually they are submitted to a certain degree of modification: at times their original termination is dropped (e.g. adeptus > adept, aperitivus > aperitive, aurificus > aurific, bullientem > bullient, contrusionem > contrusion, vacuista > vacuist, vorticem > vortice), but generally the original suffix is replaced by one commonly used in English. Thus the suffixes -s and -y are commonly employed to naturalize foreign nouns referring to scientific branches (e.g. androtomy; meletetics, zootomy)), -able and -ible to render the Latin adjectival terminations -abilis and -ibilis (e.g. assimilable, delusible), -al and -ous are used to form adjectives from foreign nouns (e.g. asymmetrical, butyrous, elastical), the suffix -ous also being used to adapt adjectives ending in Latin in -us (e.g. cupreous, incontinguous, inodorous); the terminations -ic(k) and -ity are usually employed as adaptations of the French suffixes -ique and -ité (e.g. frigorifick, insalubrity)), while -ate renders the Latin endings -are and -atus (e.g. laminate, opacate, permeate, transudate; camphorate, terebinthinate); the Latin suffixes -arius and -orius are usually naturalized in the forms -ary and -ory (e.g. miliary, graduatory), while -ence and -ency are meant as equivalents of the Latin ending -entia (e.g. remanence, niency). Consonants which are not part of the English alphabet are rendered by their nearest equivalent form in the native language (e.g. Spanish preñada > pregnada).

If we consider how the process of compounding is carried out in our corpus (cf. Table 5), we realize that this is mainly by means of the juxtaposition NOUN + NOUN (this happens in 4 compounds – one third

of all cases), followed by ADJ + NOUN, COMBINING FORM + ADJ, COMBINING FORM + NOUN, COMBINING FORM (2 compounds each – 16.67% each), and VERB + NOUN or NOUN + ADJ (1 compound each – 8.33% each).

Table 5. Compounds.

NOUN + NOUN: air-pump, pump-water, sea-air, snow-drop.
ADJ + NOUN: dead-weight, sucking-pump.
COMBINING FORM + ADJ: physico-mechanical, physico-theological.
COMBINING FORM + COMBINING FORM: hydrometer, myriagon.
VERB + NOUN: blow-pipe.
NOUN + ADJ: rust-coloured.

It is interesting to notice that in the process of forming new compounds also two new combining forms are provided: *hydraulico* (in *hydraulico-pneumatical*) and its clipped form *hydraulo* (in *hydraulo-pneumatical*). In the formation of this confix we find a confirmation of the unwritten norm adopted by previous neologizers to end initial-combining-forms with an *o* (cf. Bauer 1983: 214).

As far as conversion is concerned, the most frequently used pattern is ADJ > NOUN (3 cases – 37.50%; *fluid, precipitant, solvent*), followed by NOUN > ADJ (2 cases – 25%; *changeling, Ciceronian*), ADJ > VERB (*amalgamate*), VERB > ADJ (*decompound*) and NOUN > VERB (*efflux*) (12.50% each). These patterns belong to those commonly in use in the Early Modern English period, and thus represent no significant innovation either from a quantitative or a qualitative point of view.

2. Boyle's metalinguistic comments on his neologisms

It may be interesting at this point to investigate the metalinguistic structure of Boyle's neologizing activity, in order to highlight the

techniques he chooses to make readers aware of his role as lexical innovator and the forms he commonly adopts to explicate the semantic value of the terms he coins or redefines. The quotations in our corpus show Boyle's consciousness that he is coining neologisms, and this awareness is often explicit. Here are a few examples (We have used italics to highlight a neologism in each quotation.):

(1) The opinion of the ready *deflagrability* (if I may so speak) of salt-petre. (*Whs*, I: 362)

(2) Paracelsus [...] seems to define Mercury by Volatility, or (if I may coyne such a Word) *Efflumability*. (*Sept. Chem.*, IV: 271)

(3) A great quantity of *marchasticall* Earth, if I may so call it (*Tracts Cosm. Qual.*, IV: 21)

Sometimes Boyle not only makes readers aware that they are faced with a neologism, but also specifies the reason for his coining the new term, as can be seen in the following:

(4) His Adversaries (whom for brevities sake we will venture to call *Elaterists*). (*Spring of Air*, I: ii: 3)

The need to create a word for a complex concept lies at the basis of several of Boyle's new lexical formations, which are thus meant to fulfil a syntactic function rather than a semantic one (cf. Kastovsky 1986). Here is another example of this word-formation process:

(5) Those that admit and applaud the Vulgar Notion of Nature: whom I shall hereafter many times call *Naturists*. (*Enq. Notion Nat.*, 34)

On certain occasions Boyle not only highlights his neologizing, but also specifies the nature of the process he has followed. In the passages below, for example, he points out his indebtedness either to another discipline or to another language for the loanword that he has borrowed:

(6) The pretended salts and sulphur are so far from being elementary parts extracted out of the body of mercury, that they are rather, to borrow a term of the grammarians, *decompound* bodies. (Quoted in *OED*, III: 105)

(7)   The Laws of Decorum or, as the French call it, *Bien-seance*. (*Occas. Refl.*, Pref.: 20)

Sometimes the new words recorded in Boyle's quotations are not his own original creations. Even in these cases, however, Boyle is very conscientious not only in pointing out that the lexeme is new, but also in specifying the source of the neologism he is quoting:

(8)   Mr Hobbs is pleased to call us *Experimentarian* Philosophers. (*Examen*, V: 46)

(9)   An ore, which for its aptness to vitrify, and serve the potters to glaze their earthen vessels, the miners call *pottern-ore*. (*Unsuccessfuln. Experim*, I: 323)

(10)   A servant of mine that deals much in Cattle, and had lately divers Sheep *swigg'd* (as they call it) after this manner. (*Usef. Exp. Nat Philos*, II.V.xii: 234)

Boyle not only takes care to point out the novelty of a term or its origin, but is very keen to specify its semantic value. This attitude reflects the particular importance that scientists place on the fact that their words should be decoded easily and correctly by their readers. In these explanations, Boyle makes use of several encoding techniques, which he alternates in the various texts. On some occasions he clarifies the meaning of a certain expression by providing a synonym for it:

(11)   The pressure or *contraction* of the particles of the water against one another. (*Wks*, III: 617)

(12)   The *Embolus* or Sucker of a Syringe. (*Contn. New Exp.*, LXXXII: 106).

(13)   A Philosophizer may justly ask, How a Corporeal Being can so pervade, and, as it were, *compenetrate* the Universe, as to be intimately present with all its Minute Parts. (*Free Enq.*, 359)

Another technique often adopted by Boyle to make the semantic value of a neologism clear is the use of antonyms:

(14)   This Liquor [...] was far enough from being smooth, being variously *asperated* by many flaky particles. (*Phil. Trans.*, XI: 806)

(15)   Not [...] to conclude that the air is so much more rarefiable than *compressible*. (*Wks*, III: 508)

On other occasions, instead of providing a concise synonym or antonym of the new term, Boyle gives a full paraphrase of it or an exemplification, as in the following cases:

(16)   *Androtomy*, as some of the moderns call the dissection of man's body, to distinguish it from zootomy, as they name the dissection of the bodies of other animals. (*Wks*, I: 68)

(17)   A watering pot, shaped *conically*, or like a sugar loaf. (*Spring of Air*)

At times the paraphrase is so detailed that it appears to be a definition, as is the case of the following examples:

(18)   Truths [...] asymmetrical, or *unsociable*, that is, such as we see not how to reconcile with other things evidently and confessedly true. (*Chr. Virtuoso* II:8)

(19)   That the things we ascribe to the weight or spring of the air are really performed by neither, but by a certain *Funiculus*, or extremely thin substance provided by Nature [...] which [...] does violently attract bodies whereunto it is contiguous if they be not too heavy to be removed by it. (*Spring of Air*, II: i)

3. The semantic and syntactic features of the neologisms

A further point of investigation in our analysis of Boyle's quotations concerns the semantic and syntactic features of his lexical innovations, for the results may hint at his reasons for coining new terms. As far as the semantic value is concerned, most neologisms are for specialized uses of the language; indeed, 389 words are specialized terms, compared with the 243 words created for general usage. These new specialized lexical formations mainly refer to the physical sciences, although there are a few that concern other specific subjects, such as religion (*Antiscripturism*, *Sabian*, *sinlessness*, *theologizer*), philosophy (*compenetrate*, *constituent*, *meletetics*) and rhetoric (*accenting*, *Ciceronian*, *dorism*). Although the majority of neologisms are of a

specialized nature, the large number of words belonging to a general field of reference is remarkable, especially if one considers the type of texts that make up our corpus, and that most of the sentences reported in the *OED* concern scientific subjects. Another interesting observation may be made about the processes followed in the creation of these neologisms. If we analyze the various processes of word-formation adopted, we see that the majority of the words obtained by means of affixation refer to terms for general use (179 are 'general' words vs 136 specialized terms), while those created through borrowing, compounding and conversion belong to 'specialized' semantic fields (120 are specialized terms vs only 11 'general' words).

As to the syntactic features of these neologisms, the great majority are composed of nouns and adjectives (268 and 263 respectively), while there are only 56 new verbs, and a mere 45 adverbs. If we analyse the nouns, we notice that these refer mainly to abstract concepts (175 items), while those meant for concrete referents are just one third of the total (93 items). This means that the call for neologisms in that period was not so much linked to the designation of concrete semantic values, as to the need to find more nouns to express all the abstract concepts related to the new scientific theorizations. Moreover, the other important area held in great consideration as far as the expressive demands of the scientific world is concerned was that of adjectives, of those words, that is, that would greatly assist in the increasingly accurate and detailed description and presentation of the various aspects of reality and of more and more sophisticated scientific experiments.[7]

Another growth area in Boyle's texts is that of adjectives and nouns referring to previous and contemporary scientists; this is a further sign of the growth and systematization of the scientific community, which needed new terms not only to refer to physical phenomena and scientific experiments, but also to write about the main figures and ideas dominating the various branches of the sciences. This may explain the abundance not only of neologisms coined from the names of various leading figures of the scientific

---

7   The large number of new adjectives is greatly at variance with modern tendencies in neologising. In his analysis of 1,000 new words, Algeo (1980) showed that 76.7 % were nouns.

tools for more accurate descriptions of natural phenomena and scientific experiments, the latter can be regarded as a confirmation and strengthening of the process of nominalization taking place in that period (cf. Chapter 5). Indeed, the adoption of nominalized forms was becoming more and more popular as, by allowing the thematization of the actions commonly expressed by verbs and increasing the textual potentialities of those lexemes, it enabled the scientist to include more information in the same sentence and guaranteed a better flow of his discourse. Boyle's texts contain several examples of nominalized verbs, such as the following:

(20)   The *misrendering* of Original Particles. (*Style of Script.*, 64)

(21)   The *supervening* of a higher Form. (*Orig. Formes & Qual.*, 345)

Another advantage offered by the process of nominalization consists in allowing the writer to create concise noun phrases, which can be made to perform the various different syntactical functions required in specialized texts. The following quotations provide examples of noun phrases used as objects of verbs:

(22)   Affording them a full *Prepossession* of all the Objects of Desire. (*Seraph. Love*, XXV: 151)

(23)   The Box they are inclos'd in would as much resist their *re-expanding* of themselves. (*New Exp. Phys. Mech.*, ii: 40)

On the other hand, the sentences below offer evidence of the use of noun phrases containing new nominalizations employed as prepositional phrases:

(24)   Upon the *inletting* of this external Air the water was not again impelled to the very top of the tube. (*New Exp. Phys. Mech.*, XXII: 156)

(25)   Both those kinds or manners of fluidity [...] will appear to be caused by the *pervasion* of a foreign body. (*Fluidity*, XVII)

(26)   This salt we speak of, being [...] dissolved in a convenient quantity of water, does upon its *re-coagulation* so dispose of the aqueous particles among its own saline ones, that [...] (*Phys. Ess. Hist. Firmness, Wks*, I: 423)

A further advantage offered by the process of nominalization consists of the possibility it gives the scientist of increasing the number of specialized terms, as the following examples show:

(27) What methods the minemen use in following the Vein, and tracing their passages under ground (which they call *Plumming* and *Dyalling*) according to several exigencies? (*Phil. Trans.*, I: 335)

(28) Multitudes of Chymists have [...] attempted in vain the *Volatilization* of the salt of Tartar. (*Scept. Chym.*, VI: 420)

In using nominalizations, however, the specialist did not only call on those derived from verbs, but also on new nouns obtained from adjectival forms, as the following examples show:

(29) The air being a *fluid*. (*Spring of Air*, I.IV: 10)

(30) A copious *Precipitate*, such as might have been expected from an alkaline *Precipitant*. (*Min. Waters*, 59)

(31) By a substitution of burnt Allom for Vitriol, [...] we made *Solvents for Silver*, as good as theirs. (*Usef. Nat. Philos.*, II.II: 18)

As is normal in the process of language evolution, several of the words coined in the 17th century have become rare or obsolete. This has happened also to some of the scientific terms in our corpus, which have been supplanted by more recent technical terms (e.g. *alkalizateness* replaced by *alkalinity*, and *androtomy* by *anthropotomy*). Most of the new words reported in the passages from Boyle, however, have remained in use (as the figures given in the first part of this chapter testify), thus highlighting his important contribution to the development of English specialized vocabulary.

IX. The Origins of the Experimental Essay

The experimental essay originated in the Early Modern English period as a result of a complex process of scientific evolution which determined the need for a new expository genre to suit the new epistemic approach of 17th-century 'natural philosophers'. Their need could no longer be satisfied by the traditional essay, as this mainly followed principles and employed techniques of a prevalently literary type. The innovative characteristics of this new text type derived from the great importance attributed to the experimental process in the research programmes of Early Modern English men of science, who – elaborating on Francis Bacon's intuitions – shared the principle that the progress of knowledge could not be based on the servile observance of traditional theory, but should rely on the observation of natural phenomena and accurate experimental activity. According to Bacon, therefore, the correct way for a scientist to deal with past theory should be to "read not to contradict and confute, nor to believe and take for granted [...] but to weigh and consider" (quoted in Houghton 1975:12).

The years immediately following Bacon's teachings witnessed the presence of both philosophical approaches: the deductive and the inductive. Some natural philosophers continued to write their works relying mainly on past authority, usually starting out from the citation of an ancient or medieval philosopher and demonstrating the correctness or incorrectness of his views by means of deductive theoretical argumentations. Others, instead, based the evidence of their theoretical claims on direct experience and personal observation. This was the attitude taken by the large group of scientists who in the 17th century promoted the formation of the Royal Society. In their preliminary meeting on 28th November 1660 the founders of the Royal Society determined that the purpose of their gathering was "a designe of founding a Colledge for the promoting of Physico-Mathematicall Experimentall Learning" (quoted in Boas Hall 1991:9), and chose the phrase *Nullius in verba* as their motto. These new researchers were

convinced that many natural philosophers in the past had been anxious to provide explanations and theories before having enough evidence to base them on, and emphasized therefore the need for an experimental approach, so as to collect abundant data from which correct generalizations could be derived. Apart from this emphasis on experimental activity, another important aspect of the new scientific approach consisted in the need for both the procedures and the results of these experiments to be made known to the entire learned world. The publicity given to the work of the members of the Royal Society would further distinguish them from the group of alchemists, who considered secrecy one of the main characteristics of their research method.

To carry out their communicative task, scientists needed a new expository form. Already Bacon, by means of the aphorism, had tried out a writing device different from the traditional ones to convey personal observations relating to short and specific items; this form, however, while useful for brief comments and reflections, was not deemed appropriate for the description of experiments. The other main forms available to the scientist were the essay, the dialogue and the treatise. The first, however, had been used also for literary or philosophical purposes, and therefore retained some rhetorical features unsuitable for scientific purposes. The latter two were more suitable for long issues and when the purpose was mainly argumentative, so would be used in such cases as when a new theory was to be set out or old ones debated. The writing of treatises or dialogues was instead deemed inappropriate for tentative suggestions or early formulation of hypotheses. This point of view was very effectively expressed by Boyle in simile form:

For as those, that apply themselves to procreation too young, and before they have attained to their full vigour and strength, do generally both hinder their own growth, and become the parents but of weak and short-lived children; so they, that too early, and before their judgment and experience be fully ripe, addict themselves to write books, do commonly both hinder their own proficiency in knowlegde, and write but immature, and therefore seldom lasting treatises. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 299-300)

There was a need, instead, for a shorter form, which would offer the scientist the opportunity to report briefly experiments carried out,

procedures followed, results obtained, and any personal comments. This genre would allow immediacy of communication, and would protect the writer from any accusation of incomplete theoretical exposition, as its purpose would be mainly descriptive rather than argumentative. The lack of such a form would have detrimental effects on the growth of the sciences, as it either compelled the experimenter to write unnecessarily long and theoretically still immature books, or discouraged him from revealing his experiences and tentative opinions, as is confirmed by Boyle's words:

It has long seemed to me none of the least impediments of the real advancement of true natural philosophy, that men have been so forward to write systems of it, and have thought themselves obliged either to be altogether silent, or not to write less than an entire body of physiology: for, from hence seem to have ensued not a few inconveniences. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 300)

The means of communication identified as appropriate for scientific purposes was the experimental essay, meant to enable the researcher to report his experiences with immediacy and precision. Such a genre, however, would differ from the traditional essay, following foreign models – such as Montaigne's[1] –, structured on principles inspired either by literary or argumentative criteria.

1. The main features of experimental essays

This part of the chapter takes into consideration the main features of Early Modern English experimental essays. The comments and examples provided to support each point are mainly drawn from

1   For a comparative analysis of Montaigne's model of the essay and that of 17th-century English scientists – such as Robert Boyle – cf. Paradis (1987); this, however, presupposes a powerful influence of the French essayist on the British writer ("Boyle consciously modeled his essay after the French familiar essay", Paradis 1987: 59), which is hardly tenable when we consider the structural and theoretical differences underlying the two kinds of essays.

Robert Boyle's texts.[2] This British scientist has been selected as a paradigmatic figure both because of the specific metatextual indications provided in his *Proemial Essay, General* (1661) and the many practical exemplifications of this genre written by him, such as his *New Pneumatical Experiments about Respiration*. Indeed, the influence of Boyle on the formation of this new text type has been widely acknowledged by contemporary and subsequent scientists and critics; cf. Boas Hall:

> [Boyle] not only described experiments, he taught the world how to write up experiments so that they could readily be repeated. (Boas Hall 1965: 43)

As a confirmation of this statement cf. Paradis's acknowledgement of Boyle's influence on Newton:

> Boyle was both a conscious inventor of the form he called the 'experimental essay' and its first extensive exploiter. We can hardly doubt that Newton took many of his literary cues from Boyle, whose work he had studied and mastered. (Paradis 1987: 85)

It has also been suggested that Boyle's detailed accounts of his experiments influenced not only scientific but also literary writing, and it has been considered a stimulus to the development of the novel. According to Hunter, "in his quest to make science palatable to wide varieties of people and to make it a powerful cultural force in the thinking of ordinary individuals, he created – perhaps inadvertently – a context of receptivity that novelists were able to exploit for very different needs." (Hunter 1990: 277)

1.1. Brevity

As already noted above, one important characteristic of the experimental essay is its shorter length compared with that of a treatise or a dialogue. This conciseness enables the researcher to report even limited experiences without compelling him to describe them at

---

2 Robert Boyle's metalinguistic and metatextual observations as well as his writing practice are examined at length in Gotti (1996a).

book-length. Indeed, several of the 17th-century experimental essays consist of reports of single experiments, and resemble the rewording in continuous prose of the notes that the researcher has made in his diaries. The principle of conciseness and economy of discourse is often pointed out by specialists. Sentences should be as concise as possible with no space given to unnecessary details.

However, this brevity of form is not meant to lead to an over-concise treatment of the subject. On the contrary, experiments are usually reported very fully, and even the slightest detail is described, as this will enable the reader to carry out an accurate appreciation of the contents of the essay. Indeed, a feature of experimental essays that strikes the reader is the richness of detail to be found in them. Descriptions are vivid, with an abundance of data providing a precise and immediate representation of the experience reported. The details are very specific as regards not only the procedures followed, but also the equipment used and the time required for each experiment. Here is an example:

(1) About 11 of the clock in the forenoon we put a frog into a small receiver, containing about 15½ ounces troy weight of water, out of which we had tolerably well drawn the air (so that when we turned the cock under water, it sucked in about 13¾ ounces of water); the frog continued in it (the receiver all the while under water) lively enough until about 5 of the clock in the afternoon, when it expired. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 358)

The precision of the narration is also visible in the use of very specific terminology appropriate to specialized writings:

(2) The jaws remained mightily opened, and somewhat distorted; the epiglottis with the rimula laryngis, which remained gaping was protruded almost to the farther end of the nether-chap. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: II, 357)

(3) I had a mind to observe, whether, [...] there would not [...] appear some sudden swelling, greater or less, of the body of the animal, by the spring and expansion of some air (or aërial matter) included in the thorax or the abdomen. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 360)

This provision of maximal information confirms the main pragmatic goal of the experimental essay, which is meant to give as many details as possible in the clearest way. This, however, should not induce the

writer to fall into redundancy or repetition. In particular, opinions expressed by others or information which can easily be found in other papers are generally omitted.

The abundance of detail and the precision of the narration of the experimental events may be attributed to the writer's willingness to provide his readers with as many opportunities as possible to understand his report clearly, not only in order to enable them to come to appropriate conclusions, but also to repeat the same experiment in their own laboratories, and thus prove his results to be more reliable. Moreover, the minuteness of detail and the accuracy of the narration is meant to make repeatability easier and thus encourage the growth of empirical practice in the community of scientists. Boyle confirms the proselytizing aim of experimental essays in his preface to the *Proemial Essay*, where he encourages his model reader, Pyrophilus, to carry out experimental activity:

I was also hopeful, that the easiness of divers things inviting you to make trial of them, and keeping you from being disappointed in your expectations, the success of your first attempts would incourage you to make trial also of more nice and difficult experiments. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: 1, 306)

This emphasis on the promotional purpose of the experimenter's writings betrays the strong feeling of belonging to a new scientific community which animated the members of the Royal Society. This zealous spirit helps explain why so much detail is provided in Early Modern English experimental essays. Though it led some of them into a sort of prolixity and drudgery, their purpose was to contribute to the advancement of science and not to gain any personal advantage:

By the way of writing, to which I have condemned myself, I can hope for little better among the more daring and less considerate sort of men, should you shew them these papers, than to pass for a drudge of greater industry than reason, and fit for little more, than to collect experiments for more rational and philosophical heads to explicate and make use of. But I am content, provided experimental learning be really promoted, to contribute even in the least plausible way to the advancement of it; and had rather not only be an under-builder, but even dig in the quarries for materials towards so useful a structure, as a solid body of natural philosophy, than not do something towards the erection of it. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: 1, 307)

A further reason that justifies the experimenter's recourse to this detailed narrative technique is his need to acquire official recognition of his results. Indeed, the detailed and accurate description of his personal scientific experience was considered one of the requisites for transforming a personal account into an official protocol to be submitted to the broad community of men of science. The careful and objective narration of one's experiments may provide the materials for proper scrutiny and reliable judgement, and thus permit the transformation of personal results into facts widely accepted by the scientific world. Having obtained in this way the consensus of a wider public, experimental data can become 'matters of fact' and part of scientists' shared culture.

However, the criterion of conciseness is subordinate to the higher principle of clarity of exposition, which is considered the most important in terms of perlocutionary value. Indeed, the principle of the avoidance of verbosity so often maintained by Sprat and the other members of the Royal Society is neglected whenever the author runs the risk of being too brief and therefore unclear. This hierarchy of criteria is confirmed by the following passage, in which Boyle apologizes for the impression of verbosity that some parts of his essays might create:

I have knowingly and purposely transgressed the laws of oratory in one particular, namely, in making sometimes my periods or parentheses over-long; for when I could not within the compass of a regular period comprise what I thought requisite to be delivered at once, I chose rather to neglect the precepts of rhetoricians, than the mention of those things, which I thought pertinent to my subject, and useful to you, my reader. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: 1, 305)

1.2. Lack of assertiveness

A second feature of this text type is that there is no need for the author to arrive at definite conclusions or to systematise the results obtained; the data are to be reported as they are observed, without the writer being required to accompany them with hypotheses or comments. This allows the researcher to report all the details of his experimental activity, even those that he might not be able to explain, thus reducing his theoretical responsibilities and the risk of being criticized, as

'having for the most part the liberty to leave off when he pleases, is not obliged to take upon him to teach others what himself does not understand' (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 303).

These experimental accounts, however, provide the identification of useful superstructures on which other scientists might be able to build appropriate theories. The same principle enables writers to report also experiments that have been unsuccessful, as the analysis of these experiences might help the reader not to make the same mistakes as those reported or enable him to draw interesting conclusions. Also in promoting the reporting of even unsuccessful experiments 17th-century scientists were following Bacon's teachings:

> No one should be disheartened or confounded if the experiments which he tries do not answer his expectation. For although a successful experiment be more agreeable, yet an unsuccessful one is oftentimes more instructive.
>
> (Quoted in Hacking 1983: 247)

A feature that clearly stands out in reading Early Modern English experimental essays is the frequent use of the narrating technique compared with the very limited space allotted over to the author's reflections. Also the introduction to the experimental essay is usually very short, and briefly outlines the purpose of a series of connected experiments. This confirms the non-argumentative but mainly informative purpose of the genre.

1.3. Perspicuity

As regards the way experimental essays should be written, the prevailing opinion is that authors should adopt a 'philosophical' rather than a 'rhetorical' style – that is, a style which does not coincide with the traditional way of writing, typical of literary and philosophical works. Underlining a need widely felt by the contemporary world of science, Boyle stresses the fact that the expressions used in experimental writings should be "rather clear and significant, than curiously adorned" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 304). This choice of a more referential language is due to the very function of the paper, which is to provide information in as clear a way as possible:

> And certainly in these discourses, where our design is only to inform readers, not to delight or persuade them, perspicuity ought to be esteemed at least one of the best qualifications of a style. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 304)

This is the reason why in several scientific texts of this period we find a strong condemnation of metaphors, which are usually seen as deceitful devices. The scientific community is convinced that the use of unnecessary rhetorical devices in specialized literature can hinder the comprehensibility of the text; Boyle depicts the negative consequences on the informative value of the paper itself with the aid of the following comparison:

> And to affect needless rhetorical ornaments in setting down an experiment, or explicating something abstruse in nature, were little less improper, than it were (for him that designs not to look directly upon the sun itself) to paint the eye-glasses of a telescope, whose clearness cannot so much please the eye, as they would hinder the sight. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 304)

As can be seen from this passage, rhetorical devices are not to be banned from scientific texts completely, but they should be avoided when unnecessary, when they do not improve the illustrative value of the paper but, on the contrary, only make the text more confused and more difficult to understand. On the other hand, Boyle is also careful to note the opposite risk, that is, the adoption of a dull mode of expression:

> For though a philosopher need not be sollicitous, that his style should delight its reader with his floridness, yet I think he may very well be allowed to take a care, that it disgust not his reader by its flatness, especially when he does not so much deliver experiments or explicate them, as make reflections or discourses on them. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 304-305)

And, to reinforce his point, he makes use of a very effective simile:

> Thus (to resume our former comparison) though it were foolish to colour or enamel upon the glasses of telescopes, yet to gild or otherwise embellish the tubes of them, may render them more acceptable to the users, without at all lessening the clearness of the object to be looked at through them.
>
> (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 305)

Boyle also condemns the habit that certain scientists have of using cryptic language so as not to make their discoveries comprehensible to their readers. He maintains, on the contrary, that all works should be written in clear language so that everybody can decode the contents and so improve his knowledge of the subject. This universal sharing of single discoveries is considered essential for the formation of a specialist community and for the progress of scientific thought. This principle justifies the harsh criticism of all those who wilfully use obscure language, and who therefore do not deserve to be admitted into the select society of men of science. On several occasions Boyle mentions a close relationship between obscure language and obscure thought. As the clearest example of this criticism he cites 'alchemists', whom he attacks in *The Sceptical Chymist* for "their obscure, ambiguous, and almost aenigmatical way of expressing what they pretend to teach, that they have no mind to be understood at all, but by the sons of art" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 460). Moreover, "they deliver their hypotheses as darkly as their processes; and it is almost as impossible for any sober man to find their meaning, as it is for them to find their elixir" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 470-1). In the same work, Boyle suggests another close relationship, establishing an equation between the author's clarity of language and his honesty of behaviour. As an example of this questionable behaviour he once again quotes alchemists, whom he accuses of using obscure language to mask the inaccuracies and unreliability of their principles:

[They] write thus darkly, not because they think their notions too precious to be explained, but because they fear, that if they were explained, men would discern, that they are far from being precious. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 521)

Boyle's conclusion is that "when they pretend to teach the general principles of natural philosophers, this equivocal way of writing is not to be endured" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 521). The solution proposed is that "judicious men, skilled in chymical affairs, shall once agree to write clearly and plainly of them, and thereby keep men from being stunned, as it were, or imposed upon by dark or empty words" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 522). This need for clarity also applies to the use of specialized terminology. One accusation frequently made against scientists by non-specialists is the obscurity of the terms used, many

of them being either new or adapted from foreign languages. A very balanced position on the subject is adopted by the majority of the members of the Royal Society, who condemn the unjustified use of foreign loans or strange terms and therefore try to avoid them when other English words with the same meaning are available. But they are also aware that recourse to specific terminology is at times unavoidable, as certain specialized concepts require new names, which are not available in English.

Another criticism often made by scientists concerns the polysemy characterising most words in a language and which often makes texts ambiguous. Scientists cannot tolerate the uncertainty of meaning provided by existing words and condemn all those who do not use language accurately. It is however true that when redefining the properties of already-studied compounds or facts, a scientist would frequently continue to employ existing vocabulary in spite of the fact that the use of an old term to refer to a new concept would create a mismatch between the existing *signans* and its new *signatum*. Boyle himself followed this practice. Indeed, when reporting his pneumatic discoveries in *New Experiments* he specified the concept of a totally void space by making use of the existing term *vacuum*, which was commonly employed by the English-speaking community to refer to the amount of air present in an exhausted receiver. However, he tried to avoid problems of ambiguity by specifying the context of reference to which his terms should be attributed. For example, in using the term *vacuum*, to which many of his contemporaries continued to attribute its traditional metaphysical meaning, Boyle was careful to specify the physical significance he conferred on it:

By which I here declare once for all, that I understand not a space, wherein there is no body at all, but such as is either altogether, or almost totally devoid of air. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 10)[3]

3   In spite of this criticism, Boyle himself is not completely free from blame. Indeed, he sometimes makes inconsistent use of terminology, as in *New Experiments*, where he refers to the heaviness of the cover of the empty vessel as "spring of the external air", "force of the internal expanded air and that of the atmosphere" or "pressure". In the same text, the term "pressure" is often used interchangeably with "protrusion" (e.g. Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 11) or to refer both to spring and weight (e.g. Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 18, 76).

1.4. *Simplicity of form*

Another feature of the language that guarantees maximum comprehension is the adoption of a plain style, which makes use of simple verb-forms and sentence-constructions. Indeed, the voice commonly used in experimental essays is active, often putting the researcher in a thematic position and usually conferring on it the grammatical function of the subject, so as to parallel his active role in the experimental activity:

(4) We put a full grown duck [...] into a receiver [...]; then pump[ed] out the air, [...] she appeared much discomposed; [...] from which we presently rescued her by letting in the air upon her; [...] we soon after included the same bird in the same receiver, and having by a special way cemented it on very close, we suffered her to stay thus shut up with the air for five times as long as formerly (by our guess, helped by a watch) without perceiving her to be discomposed.

(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 355-356)

The active presence of the scientist is emphasized not only when he is performing some operation, but also when the behaviour of the animal or object used in the experiment is being described. In many cases, indeed, such behaviour is reported as perceived by the researcher, as if to underline the fact that what is being narrated is not happening spontaneously, but as a result of the experimenter's actions, whose role therefore remains central in all the parts of the report:

(5) I perceived some little motions, which made me conclude him alive. [...] We [...] observed that divers violent convulsions [...]

(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 360)

Although the active voice is quantitatively prevalent in the narration, there is also appropriate use of the passive form. This is usually employed for specific cases, such as to underline unexpected results, as if to diminish the scientist's responsibility in those cases. Here are some examples:

(6) This duck being reduced, in our receiver, to a gasping condition [...]

(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 356)

(7) His jaws, which were formerly shut, gaped exceeding wide, as if they had been stretched open by some external violence. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 358)

A confirmation of the close connection between the use of the passive and the attribution of responsibility for an unpleasant consequence to external forces, and not to the experimenter himself, can be seen in the following sentence, in which Boyle prefers to use the passive of *to kill* rather than the active of the verb *to die*:

(8) She continued, by our estimate, above two hours and half in the exhausted receiver without giving clear proof of her being killed.

(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 357)

Another case in which the passive is frequently used is in reporting how certain procedures (usually involving the utilization of equipment) have been carried out. The shift from the active to the passive voice in these cases underlines the passing from the active role of narration of events to the description of procedures that are becoming standardized in the experimenter's repertoire or in that of scientists in general:

(9) A chemical pipe sealed at one end, and 36 inches, or somewhat less, in length, was filled with water, and inverted into a glass vessel, not two inches in diameter, but ¼ of an inch, or little more in depth. These glasses being conveyed into a fit receiver, and the air being leisurely pumped out, and somewhat slowly readmitted, the numerous bubbles that had ascended during the operation, constituted at the top an aërial aggregate, mounting to 8/10, wanting about an hundredth part of an inch. Presently after the tube (by and by to be described) was filled again with the same water, and inverted; and the water being drawn down to the surface of the vesseled water, and the air let in again, the water was impelled up to the very top, within a tenth and half a tenth of an inch. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 361)[4]

The confirmation that the actions described here are not novel, but rather a standardized procedure comes from the text itself, as the author clearly refers to them as "matter of fact" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 362). Indeed, when he comes to underline the originality of the

---

4   More examples of passive forms used in Boyle's papers to report standardized procedures can be found in Dear (1985).

experimental events he is describing in the following paragraphs, the writer resorts to the use of the active form:

(10)   We provided a clear round glass [...]. We conveyed the glass [...]
(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 362)

1.5. Objectivity

Another quality which should be reflected in the style adopted by the experimental writer is his honesty. This quality requires the researcher to report events faithfully and sincerely, and to express his opinions and conclusions with the degree of positiveness corresponding to the certainty of the facts described, using the various modal expressions that the English language offers to suit the different degrees of certainty of the facts reported; here is an explanation for this writing policy:

Perhaps you will wonder, Pyrophilus, that in almost every one of the following essays I should speak so doubtingly, and use so often, *perhaps, it seems, it is not improbable*, and such other expressions, as argue a diffidence of the truth of the opinions I incline to, and that I should be so shy of laying down principles, and sometimes of so much as venturing at explications. But I must freely confess to you, Pyrophilus, that having met with many things, of which I could give myself no one probable cause, and some things, of which several causes may be assigned so differing, as not to agree in any thing, unless in their being all of them probable enough; I have often found such difficulties in searching into the cause and manner of things, and I am so sensible of my own disability to surmount those difficulties, that I dare speak confidently and positively of very few things, except of matters of fact.
(Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 307)

This careful attitude prompts the author to use modal expressions and verbs like *to seem* and *to appear* to report with caution the actions as he perceives them, as can be seen in the following quotation:

(11)   *His body seemed to be perpendicular to the horizon. [...] We perceived him to lie stark dead with his belly upwards. [...] The other frog [...] seemed to be distressed. [...] She appeared to be very much disquieted.*
(Boyle 1772 / 1965: II, 359)

The same prudence is shown by hedging expressions, usually placed in parentheses:

(12)   The frog was perfectly alive, and continued to appear so (if I am not mistaken) near an hour. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 359)

(13)   She seemed at first (which yet I am not too confident of, upon a single trial) to continue well somewhat longer than a hen in her condition would have done.
(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 355)

(14)   Such an inflation (though not great) we thought we observed; but until farther trial, I dare not acquiesce in it. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 360)

In taking this cautious attitude, the experimenter not only shows his professional correctness in that he reports actions as he perceives them with the appropriate degree of certainty, but offers a picture of himself as a reliable and faithful witness to the events that he is reporting.[5] Moreover, in order to make his narration more reliable, he carefully inserts the testimony of his collaborators:

(15)   I could not, I say, discern the difference to amount to above, if so much as an hair's breadth; and the chief operator in the experiment professed, that, for his part, he could not perceive any difference at all.
(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 362-3)

Although the narration mainly reports the events in an objective way, the essay also includes mention of the experimenter's reactions, but these are usually expressed in brief hints, often relegated to parenthetical phrases:

(16)   Whilst the air was drawing out, the lesser frog skipped up and down very lively, and, somewhat to our wonder, clambered up several times to the sides of the receiver. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: II, 358)

Moreover, it was easier to secure acceptance of experimental results by the scientific community if a higher degree of officialness was

5   In this way 'ethos' is built up. Cf. Bazerman: "How does one convince a critical audience that something happened when they didn't see it? One rhetorical strategy is to establish ethos; that is, that the author / observer is a credible witness, following all proper procedures thoughtfully and carefully."
(Bazerman 1988: 140)

conferred on the experiment itself. This is the reason why the researcher often invited persons of a certain standing to be present while he was carrying out his activities. The presence of these reliable witnesses, explicitly noted in the experimental report, provided official substantiation to the procedures and results narrated. For example, to confirm his experiments concerning respiration, Boyle adds the following statement:

(17) For confirmation of which, I have this to alledge, that, having in the presence of some virtuosi provided for the nonce a very small receiver, wherein yet a mouse could live some time, if the air were left in it, we were able to evacuate it at one suck, and by that advantage we were enabled, to the wonder of the beholders, to kill the animal in less than half a minute.

(Boyle 1772 / 1965: III, 370)

The confirmation provided by the presence of esteemed and reliable witnesses proves particularly useful in cases in which novel or expensive apparatus is used to carry out the experiment. Although not able to repeat the experience in his own laboratory, the reader – provided with a detailed account of the events and reassured by the presence of reliable spectators – is nevertheless able to scrutinize the contents of the report, and – by means of this process of 'virtual witnessing' (Shapin 1984) – he can make a correct evaluation of them. Another important principle followed in the writing of experimental essays was to reproduce in that activity the same distinction correctly adopted by the scientist between the setting out of the facts observed and his considerations on them. Indeed, Boyle suggests leaving "a conspicuous interval" (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 2) on the page between the two textual parts (report of experimental findings and reflections on them) so as to show the methodological procedure adopted while underlining the rhetorical and pragmatic difference between those two parts. This approach to the analysis of scientific phenomena can also be found in the researcher's habit of examining facts and opinions critically and severely, while at the same time respecting the people whose views and conclusions are being considered. On this subject Boyle writes: "For I love to speak of persons with civility, though of things with freedom."(Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 312)

This impersonal way of analyzing other scientists' conclusions and attacking wrong or inconsistent ideas allows the argumentative paper to be accepted more readily and highlights its persuasive strength, thus increasing its perlocutionary effect, which consists in convincing the reader of the validity of the writer's thesis. The advantages of this approach are clearly perceived by Boyle:

And as for the (very much too common) practice of many, who write, as if they thought railing at a man's person, or wrangling about his words, necessary to the confutation of his opinions; besides that I think such a quarrelsome and injurious way of writing does very much misbecome both a philosopher and a Christian, methinks it is as unwise, as it is provoking. For if I civilly endeavor to reason a man out of his opinions, I make myself but one work to do, namely, to convince his understanding; but, if in a bitter or exasperating way I oppose his errors, I increase the difficulties I would surmount, and have as well his affections against me as his judgment; and it is very uneasy to make a proselyte of him, that is not only a dissenter from us, but an enemy to us. (Boyle 1772 / 1965: I, 312)

2. The evolution of the experimental essay

The experimental essay was widely accepted by the scientific community of the 17th century. The various advantages it offered made it become very widespread, and its popularity became even vaster with the increase in circulation of scientific journals, which mainly consisted – apart from letters and reviews – of brief reports of experimental activity.[6] The first scientific journal to appear in England was the *Philosophical Transactions* (1665) edited by Henry Oldenburg, and various members of the Royal Society published many experimental essays in it. The Early Modern English model of experimental essays greatly influenced the subsequent realizations of this text type. As Bazerman (1988) notes in his analysis of the first 135 years of the *Philosophical Transactions*, the basic narrative structure of early scientific experimental reports was retained into the

6 For further details on early scientific papers cf., among others, Houghton (1975), Kronic (1976), McKie (1979) and Manten (1980).

19th century. His conclusions have been confirmed by further research. For example, on the basis of his review of selected research articles published in the *Edinburgh Medical Journal* between 1735 and 1985, Atkinson comes to the conclusion that "original articles in the eighteenth-century *EMJ* were typically narrative reports of single cases, often presented in epistolary form" (Atkinson 1992: 359).

To appreciate the importance of this genre, we should consider the fact that, in the following centuries, while some forms of specialized writings – such as the dialogue – almost disappeared, the experimental essay survived and became an essential part of specialized literature. The rapid diffusion of scientific journals has made it an established genre commonly used by men of science. In the course of time the experimental essay has certainly evolved and has found a more cohesive structure, commonly consisting of the following steps: stating of purpose, description of the apparatus, account of the phenomena to be investigated, narration of the experiment(s), record of the results, expounding of any theoretical implications. As can be seen, most of these steps were constant parts of Early Modern English experimental essays. Some of the features of these early essays have changed down the centuries. For instance, there is more frequent use of the passive form and there has been the abandonment of the report of unsuccessful experiments, while greater emphasis is commonly laid on the theoretical conclusions to be drawn from the experiments. But many have remained, and they testify to the seminal role that the reflections and writing practice of several members of the Royal Society have had in the widespread adoption of this important scientific genre.

X. Malthus and the Definition of Economic Terms

Malthus is mainly known for his *Essay on the Principle of Population* and for his *Principles of Political Economy*. Very little importance has instead been given by economists to another essay of Malthus', that is, his *Definitions in Political Economy*, which was written in 1827. The reason for this lack of interest on the part of economists towards this essay is easily retraceable in the topic and purpose of this work, which may, on the contrary, be of great interest to the linguist. In fact, in writing this work Malthus aimed at providing some theoretical principles that he and his colleagues should follow in outlining the definitions of the terms they used. His work is therefore principally of a metalinguistic nature, and not surprisingly economic literature has almost totally ignored this essay. The purpose of this work is clearly pointed out in its preface:

> The differences of opinion among political economists have of late been a frequent subject of complaint, and it must be allowed, that one of the principal causes of them may be traced to the different meanings in which the same terms have been used by different writers. The object of the present publication is to draw attention to an obstacle in the study of political economy, which has now increased to no inconsiderable magnitude.
>
> (Malthus 1827 / 1963: vii)

The idea of writing this essay, therefore, came to Malthus when he noticed the confusion that had already started to exist even in such a young discipline as economy was in his time. In Malthus' opinion such confusion existed because the various economists employed the same terms to refer to different concepts.[1] The "considerable magni-

---

1   A similar criticism had been put forth the year before by Richard Whateley. To the revised edition of his *Elements of Logic* he had added an appendix ('On certain terms which are peculiarly liable to be used ambiguously in Political Economy') "furnished by the kindness of the Professor of Political Economy" Nassau W. Senior. This appendix stated that "there would be as little difference of opinion among Political-Economists as among Mathematicians (if only) they had possessed a vocabulary of general terms as precisely defined"

tude" to which such a phenomenon had increased determined the need on the part of Malthus to outline certain principles that should bring some clarity in the field.

1. The relationship between definition and science

Our interest in Malthus' effort to provide some clear guidance in the definition of economic terms was mainly aroused by his approach to the problem. In fact, Malthus lucidly realized the strict relationship existing between the definitional process of a certain science and the nature of that science. Therefore, before dealing with the features of appropriate definitions of political economy, he felt it necessary to enquire into the various natures of the different scientific branches and the value they attributed to the definitional process. In doing so he realized that he also had to take into consideration the relationship between the definitional process and the research methodology mainly employed by the various disciplines.

In the first chapter of his book, therefore, Malthus examines the various types of definitions employed in scientific research and clearly identifies three main patterns. This tripartite division is a very original contribution on the part of Malthus as it links the value of the formulation of each type of definition to the specific principles of the methodological research which characterizes each group of sciences. In mathematical definitions, for example, the importance of the choice of words is limited by the intrinsic need of exact disciplines to determine the nature of a certain item by means of an appropriate demonstration. The choice of a term or a definition is thus purely conventional, and does not in itself have any relevance on the creation of the meaning of such a term. Therefore alternative definitions of the same concept might just as well exist, as the concept derives its constitutional entity from the demonstrational process rather than from

---

as the mathematical.'. Instead, hardly any of the terms used by the writers 'has any settled and invariable meaning, and their ambiguities are perpetually overlooked.'

the definitional one. Malthus accompanies this concept with the following exemplification:

> Whether a *straight* line be defined to be a line which lies evenly between its extreme points, or the shortest line which can be drawn between two points, there never can be a difference of opinion as to the lines which are compre-hended, and those which are not comprehended, in the definition.
> (Malthus 1827/1963:1)

In exact sciences, therefore, the definitional process is secondary and purely conventional, as the choice of a term instead of another is left to the scientist who first analyses and defines that concept. We may complete Malthus' argument by adding the consideration that in defining the new concept the specialist will either add a new semantic trait to a word already existing in the common language or will invent a new term for that specific purpose. The adoption of a new term will enable both the specialist and his colleagues to refer to a certain concept in a very synthetic way, with great advantages in the formulation of discourse.

The second kind of definition to which Malthus refers is that pertaining to the natural sciences, whose definitional process follows the specific methods they employ, these being mainly based on natural observation and empirical experimentation.[2] In the natural

---

2   The soundness of the correlation that Malthus draws between the definitional process and the research methodology of the natural sciences is demonstrated by the similar conclusions reached by later linguists and semiologists. In dealing with the definitional process used in chemistry, Peirce, for example, provides two examples of definition of lithium, both based on a perceptual acquaintance with the object of the word. The first of these is mainly based on the process of observation ("[Lithium] is that element whose atomic weight is 7 very nearly"), while the second derives from a process of empirical experimentation: "If you search among minerals that are vitreous, translucent, grey or white, very hard, brittle, and insoluble, for one which imparts a crimson tinge to an unluminous flame, this mineral being triturated with lime or witherite rats-bane, and then fused, can be partly dissolved in muriatic acid; and if this solution be evaporated, and the residue be extracted with sulphuric acid, and duly purified, it can be converted by ordinary methods into a chloride, which being obtained in the solid state, fused, and electrolyzed with half a dozen powerful cells will yield a globule of a pinkish silvery metal that will float on gasolene; and the material of that is a specimen of lithium." (Peirce 1931:II,330)

sciences, in fact, where the elements to be defined already exist in nature and are consequently visible and describable, the definitional process requires the identification of those semantic traits which distinguish the various items from one another. The identification of such semantic traits implies the adoption of fixed parameters to be followed, thus allowing the grouping of various items into congruent categories. This process of classification – although based on such empirical criteria – may, however, give rise to problems of identification, mainly depending on the arbitrary selection of the traits to be taken into consideration when attributing an item to a certain category rather than another. As Malthus states:

> The classifications in natural history, notwithstanding all the pains which have been taken with them, are still such, that it is sometimes difficult to say to which of two adjoining classes the individuals on the confines of each ought to belong. (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 1-2)

The third type of definitions is that concerning the moral sciences, in which the use a person makes of a certain term determines the meaning that he attributes to it. The examples that Malthus gives – *virtue, morality, equity, charity, liberty* – are indicative of their very subjective values, which are therefore likely to be decoded in different ways by different interlocutors. As Malthus states:

> The terms liberty, civil liberty, political liberty, constitutional government, &c. &c., are frequently understood in a different sense by different persons.
>
> (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 2)

2. The relationship between economics and language

Having thus distinguished these three types of definitions, Malthus then proceeds to identify the kind of science – whether exact, natural or moral – to which political economy might be assimilated. He discards the opinion of some economists that economics belongs to the "strict science of mathematics", and maintains instead that "it approaches more nearly to the sciences of morals and politics"

(Malthus 1827 / 1963: 2). This attribution is justified by "the great deviations which have lately taken place from the definitions and doctrines of Adam Smith" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 2), which have given birth to several different views concerning basic concepts of the discipline. This, in fact, is the situation of political economy at the beginning of the 19th century as depicted by Malthus:

> It does not seem yet to be agreed what ought to be considered as the best definition of wealth, of capital, of productive labour, or of value; – what is meant by real wages; – what is meant by labour; – what is meant by profits; – in what sense the term 'demand' is to be understood, &c. &c.
>
> (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 2-3)

Malthus is conscious that such theoretical differentiations could not be solved with the mere adoption of a new nomenclature, as the concepts examined by political economy are so strictly connected to everyday life that it is impossible to refer to them with terms other than those commonly used in general language. In setting up this strict relationship between the economic discipline and natural language Malthus is aware of the risk of subjectivity and confusion which is intrinsic to it, which is a direct consequence of his attribution of political economy to the field of moral sciences and excludes the possibility that even a charismatic figure playing a leading role in the contemporary economic world could successfully carry out a renaming operation similar to those effected by scientists like Linnaeus, Lavoisier and Cuvier in their fields. The remedy which he suggests therefore consists in the formulation of certain rules that all economists should follow so as to limit as far as possible the problem of arbitrary definitions and subjective use of terms. It is Malthus' opinion that, if followed, such principles could not only help economists to identify all inappropriate definitions existing in their field, but also serve as a guide for a more accurate definition of future concepts.

3. Malthus' principles

The first principle that Malthus points out concerns the use of terms borrowed from general language. According to the British economist, when terms of daily occurrence are used, they should be defined in such a way as to agree with the sense in which they are commonly understood in the conversation of educated persons. This reference to common usage becomes therefore "the best and more desirable authority for the meaning of words" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 4–5). As a second principle Malthus maintains that when such reference is impossible, "the next best authority is that of some of the most celebrated writers in the science, particularly if any one of them has, by common consent, been considered as the principal founder of it" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 5). This should happen every time an author uses a term invented by someone else, although this should not imply the impossibility of an author's using an existing term in a new way. Malthus is anxious to point out the latter, as he does not want the reader to think that his attitude is too conservative. In fact, he asserts:

> But it may be observed, that we shall not be able to improve the science if we are thus to be bound down by past authority. This is unquestionably true; and I should be by no means inclined to propose to political economists *jurare in verba magistri*, whenever it can be clearly made out that a change would be beneficial, and decidedly contribute to the advancement of the science.
>
> (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 5)

However, he is not too keen on the redefinition of existing terms as "in the less strict sciences there are few definitions to which some plausible, nay, even real, objections are not to be made" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 5–6). Therefore, he is convinced that the temporary advantages of this re-defining activity would be largely outnumbered by the great confusion caused by a frequent change of terms. Moreover, as Malthus correctly points out, the nominal problem is only the result of the greater confusion which occurs at the conceptual level and which is reflected in the heterogeneous subdivision and classification of economic phenomena:

> What I consider as the main obstacle to a more general agreement among political economists, is rather the differences of opinion which have prevailed as to the classes of objects which are to be separated from each other by appropriate names, than as to the names which these classes should receive.
>
> (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 232)

In support to his opinion he quotes Bacon's words:

> To say, where notions cannot be fitly reconciled, that there wanteth a term or nomenclature for it, is but a shift of ignorance.
>
> (Quoted in Malthus 1827 / 1963: 232-3)

As a third principle, therefore, Malthus imposes some limits on the recourse to alteration of existing terminology, warning economists against excessive redefinitions of commonly-used words. In fact, in trying to remove the immediate objections which may have been connected to the previous use of certain terms, there might be the danger that other equal or greater objections might be raised. Therefore Malthus suggests that redefinition of a term should take place only when such a process makes the word "obviously more *useful* in facilitating the explanation and improvement of the science. A change which is always itself an evil, can alone be warranted by superior utility taken in the most enlarged sense" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 6). The principle of utility thus becomes a relevant criterion – along with the previous criteria of lack of ambiguity and precision of reference – to be followed in a suitable definitional operation. It is to be noted that this principle of utility is carefully adopted by Malthus himself in his definitional work. In fact, in introducing his own definitions of some economic terms given in the tenth chapter of his essay, Malthus writes:

> Whenever it has been thought necessary either to deviate from the general rule of employing terms according to their ordinary meaning, or to determine between two meanings both of which have some authorities in their favour, I have always been guided in my choice by what appeared to me the superior practical utility of the meaning selected in explaining the causes of the wealth of nations. (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 231)

A further criterion to be adopted in the definition of economic terms is pointed out by Malthus in his fourth principle, and corresponds to the

criterion of consistency. According to Malthus, in fact, it is important "that any new definitions adopted should be consistent with those which are allowed to remain, and that the same terms should always be applied in the same sense" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 6). The constant reference of a *definiens* to the same *definiendum* is therefore essential if a clear interpretation of a text is to be guaranteed. As economics makes use of words belonging to general language, it is natural for several of them to be polysemic. Malthus is aware of this danger, and explicitly warns his colleagues:

Where inveterate custom has established different meanings of the same word [...], the sense in which the word is used, if not marked by the context, which it generally is, should be particularly specified. (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 6-7)

As they are mainly derived from common sense, Malthus considers his four rules for the definitions in political economy "obviously natural and proper" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 7). He is also convinced of the great importance of having a common set of principles to be followed and of the relevance that their observance might have for the future developments of the discipline. As he states:

If changes are made without our attention to them, we must necessarily run a great risk of impeding, instead of promoting, the progress of the science.
(Malthus 1827 / 1963: 7)

Although the rules he expresses appear so obvious and natural, Malthus thinks it necessary to point them out because no such systematic exposition has ever been effected before. The obvious result of such neglect is the clear state of confusion the field of economic terminology is in. Malthus himself admits his guilt, when he says:

I am very ready to include myself among those political economists who have not been sufficiently attentive to this subject. (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 202)

As a matter of fact, one might even suspect that one of the reasons that moved Malthus to write this essay was his willingness to respond to the critics who had accused him of inconsistency in his use of economic terminology (cf., for example, DeQuincey 1823). In the

subsequent chapters of his book Malthus takes into consideration the definitions provided by various economists and criticises them. The main faults that he finds in them is their inability to comply with the four rules that he has pointed out in his first chapter. So, for example, he criticizes the French economists for having given a definition of wealth which contrasts with the sense in which it is generally understood in society. Adam Smith is criticised as he is sometimes deficient in the precision of his definitions, and does not always, when he adopts new terms, adhere to them with sufficient strictness. Say is criticized for his use of the term *utility* in a sense totally different from that in which it is used in common conversation and in the language of those who were considered the best authorities in political economy.

In the last part of his book Malthus provides the definition of sixty terms which centre around ten main concepts: wealth, utility, value, labour, capital, revenue, wages, profit, supply and demand. These definitions form a system of interrelated references, which however are not circular as they centre around a main concept – that of wealth – which functions as the hierarchical notion of his economic theory. For example, the term *production* is defined as "the creation of objects which constitute wealth", and *product* and *produce* are defined as "the portion of wealth created by production" (Malthus 1827 / 1963: 235). In this strict interrelation of terms Malthus applies his fourth principle of guaranteeing consistency within the whole field of his terminology. When more terms depend on a common word for their definition, it is essential that, in order to guarantee their understanding and avoid a vicious circle, this basic term should be defined with the recourse to some decodable reality. Particularly when dealing with specialized topics, the avoidance of the appearance of a noxious and useless circularity of reference between the various terms is guaranteed by the reference in the *definiens* of the word at the start of the chain to some lexical items belonging to general language. By applying his first principle, Malthus prevents the risk of a vicious circle in outlining the definition of 'wealth'- which, as we have seen, is basic to his terminological system – by making reference to no other economic concept, but to common knowledge. In his dictionary, in fact, 'wealth' is defined as:

the material objects necessary, useful or agreeable to man, which have required some portion of human exertion to appropriate or produce.

(Malthus 1827 / 1963: 234)

4. Evaluation of Malthus' principles

The value of the short dictionary that Malthus has left us may seem limited today, especially if compared to the vast development of economics and the consequent need for a larger specialized vocabulary. What seems to a linguist particularly dated in Malthus' position, is the static view he gives of meaning. Malthus, in fact, does not seem to realize that new semantic traits are continuously added to a term, while the existing ones change, so that the global meaning of a word is always submitted to a process of modification. The various properties of a concept are added to each other and only a detailed componential analysis can point out all the semantic traits of a term. In spite of the efforts of certain methodologists and specialists, the evolution of a discipline implies a continuous evolution of its terminology which is made to fit the new shades of meaning that new scientific findings attribute to existing knowledge. The complexity of this phenomenon is well applied to the field of economics by the following analysis carried out by Moore:

Economic terms seem to pass in their historical development through a series of stages which, without pretension to rigidness, may be described as follows: first, no definition is given, but it is assumed that every one has a sufficiently clear idea of the subject to make a formal definition unnecessary; second, a definition is attempted and a number of exceptional forms are noted; third, with the further increase of data, the relative importance of the various forms changes, confusion in discussion is introduced, logomachy takes the place of constructive investigation; fourth, a complete classification of the forms embraced under the original term is made, and problems are investigated with reference to these classes. The bewildering vagueness of economic theory is largely due to the fact that the terms used are in all these stages of development. (Moore 1906: 211)

This process of evolution of economic terms concerns also those employed by Malthus and for which he claims a clear reference to the usage commonly accepted by educated people. A typical example may be the term which is basic to the system of Malthus' economic definitions, that is, *wealth*. Over the centuries, in fact, this term has acquired various meanings: 'riches', 'prosperity' and 'welfare' (cf. Hughes 1988: 74). The presence of more semantic traits connected to the same term implies therefore skill both in the production and the reception of a text. In fact, the definitional process of polysemic words involves a careful choice on the part of the encoder, as he has to select from the various properties and meanings pertaining to a lexical item, only those that he considers the most suitable for the purpose of his definition.[3] On the other hand, the decoding of the value of a term does not imply a mere recognition of a given entity, but an interpretation of the contextual reality in which that entity is found.

In outlining his principles, Malthus establishes a direct relationship between term and object neglecting the fact that the same word may give rise to different interpretations of the same reality for which it stands. As the two processes of 'signification' and 'designation' (Coseriu / Geckeler 1974) do not coincide, in the decoding process the relationships between the linguistic elements and the extralinguistic world is not at all neutral but relies on the decoder's personal experience. On the contrary, in his pragmatic approach to political economy Malthus seems to be starting from the presupposition that language is a mere representation of the objects of the world, leaving very little space to the personal interpretation of reality. The way in which different economists consider the various economic concepts is instead multifarious, and implies a polysemic use of language. Moreover, some of them are totally aware of this polysemic nature of the language used in economic discourse, and skilfully exploit such features in their argumentative discourse.

---

3 As we can deduce from Peirce's two definitions of lithium reported in note 2, the elements inserted in the definition will depend on the use that is made of such a definition and also on the experiential method adopted in ascertaining the features of the item being defined, whether it be observation, demonstration, experimentation or any other.

In drawing a strict relationship between a sign and its object, Malthus instead adopts the monoreferential principle that characterises specialized terminology typical of the exact and natural sciences. In this way he contradicts himself, as he seems to forget the starting point of his discussion, that is, the subjectivity of use of the terms of the moral sciences. Rather than emphasizing a strict reference of a definition of a term to the meaning it has "in the common conversation of educated persons" – which, as we have seen, is by no means univocal and stable –, Malthus should have stressed much more emphatically the need for a clear specification by each author of the exact meaning of the terms he is using, either by reference to the authority who has used that term before with the same meaning he is adopting or by specifying the personal meaning he is attributing to a word which has already been used – but with a different meaning – by other people. Also his objection to the use of a new term in the case of a shift of meaning of an existing word – though as a general principle very reasonable[4] – is sometimes excessive, and itself gives rise to more confusion.

5. Conclusion

In spite of their limitations, the principles pointed out by Malthus may still represent a good guide for the theorist (not only of economic subjects) for providing appropriate definitions. The importance of Malthus' essay particularly lies in his intuition on the close link which exists between the definition of a term and the particular scientific procedure which has brought it about. Also his tripartite distinction of specialized sciences and definitional processes represents an original contribution on his part. Moreover, this essay has pointed out the essential need for an economist who investigates the soundness of the

---

4   One of the disadvantages of excessive change in terminology is pointed out by Naess: "History provides many examples of persons who, perhaps to emphasize the originality of their views, have introduced new terms where the old ones could have done just as well and perhaps better." (Naess 1966: 66)

concepts of his discipline to assess their linguistic realization, as their interpretation greatly relies on the form in which they are expressed. The identification of this close link between the definitional process and the conceptual has also contributed to the discovery of unknown exegetical perspectives and the application of new interpretative strategies, which have enabled the researcher to reconstruct an economist's epistemological principles from the definition of the terms that he provides (an example of the application of such an interpretative method to Malthus' own definitions can be seen in Schmidt 1983).

Moreover, Malthus has had the particular merit of pointing out the double requirement for successful terminological definitions in political economy, which depend both on consistency with the theoretical structure of the conceptual field of that particular discipline and on reference to the established usage of that term in general language.[5] Modern economists and linguists may disagree on the analysis that Malthus has carried out of the definitions provided by his contemporary economists and may also find some of his suggestions naive and criticizable. They should recognize, however, his merit in highlighting questions which are of essential interest both in economics and in linguistics.

---

5   The great relevance pointed out by Malthus in an accurate definition of economic terms reminds us of the importance that Socrates used to attribute to definitions in the argumentative process. Socrates, in fact, was convinced that nobody has the right to maintain a thesis unless he is able (when asked) to define the words employed in his argumentative discourse. Inability to do this renders the thesis invalid.

XI. Rhetoric and the Language of Economics

In the last decades the topic of rhetoric has become more and more recurrent in economic literature. The reason for the wide interest shown by so many researchers not involved in rhetorical or linguistic disciplines but in economics is the recognition of the important role that detailed analysis of a text plays in the understanding of its content. In this field the leading role has mainly been undertaken by Donald McCloskey, who on several occasions (1983, 1984, 1985, 1987, 1988a, 1988b, 1988c) has urged his colleagues to adopt a rhetorical approach in their analysis of argumentative texts. As his opinions have stimulated such vast controversy among economists and philosophers of science, it may be interesting to analyse the contents of his approach and to investigate in particular the rhetorical and linguistic principles on which it is based.

1. McCloskey's rhetorical approach

What characterises McCloskey's rhetorical approach is the funda-mental role he conceives for rhetoric in the interpretation of a text. Rhetorical devices are not seen as mere ornamentation whose main function consists in the embellishment of a text, but rather as complex manifestations of the author's attitude. The premise that lies at the basis of McCloskey's viewpoint is that the form of a text matters just as much as its contents: thus the abundant use of rhetorical devices made by economists in discourse should be thoroughly investigated.

There are various meanings that have traditionally been given to the word *rhetoric*, and McCloskey himself has supplied his own definitions of this term. The first reference that McCloskey makes to rhetoric defines it in a somewhat general, vague way as "the study of all the ways of accomplishing things with language" (McCloskey

1985: xvii). Later on this meaning is applied specifically to economic argumentative texts and is more clearly referred to as "the study of how people persuade" (McCloskey 1985: 29). In this way its persuasive aim is more prominently highlighted and is identified in the action of "bringing scholars to accept the better argument and reject the worse" (McCloskey 1985: xvii). This function of rhetoric is seen in contrast with the view many economists have of the discourse of their science whose aim should be the persuasion of one's interlocutors by means of plain facts and objective statements. Economists therefore tend to use mainly informative discourse and privilege the denotative over the connotative values of words.

McCloskey, however, points out that even those economists who do not believe in the important function of rhetoric in making their argumentation more convincing unconsciously make abundant use of rhetorical devices, such as dead metaphors, which are a permanent part of economic lexis. Their lack of awareness of such devices, though, can only hamper their discursive activity. McCloskey, in fact, states:

> Economists, without thinking much, have metaphors about the economy; and they have also, without thinking much, metaphors for their scholarly conversation. It would be good for them to become aware of their metaphors and improve them in shared discourse. (McCloskey 1985: 184)

McCloskey's conviction of the important role that rhetoric plays in argumentative texts derives from his epistemological beliefs that the success of a theory relies on its being accepted by its addressees rather than on objective evidence or explicit proof. McCloskey's methodological position contrasts both deductivist and inductivist approaches, and emphasises the fundamental role of the rhetorical aspects of discourse in attaining its persuasive goal. Greater consciousness of such aspects on the part of the economist is essential, as this would not only improve the result of his argumentation, but would also greatly influence its progress. In fact, McCloskey is convinced that "in economics as in other fields, writing self-critically will uncover good reasonings" (McCloskey 1985: 176). This is the reason why McCloskey considers the adoption of a rhetorical approach more important than any other choice of method:

> What distinguishes good from bad in learned discourse, then, is not the adoption of a particular methodology, but the earnest and intelligent attempt to contribute to a conversation. (McCloskey 1985: 27)

Keener rhetorical awareness is not only considered a relevant quality of a locutor as it supplies a better method of expression, but is also considered very useful to an addressee, as his knowledge of the various rhetorical devices will enable him to appreciate economic discourse in a more competent manner:

> Economists should become more self-conscious about their rhetoric, because they will then better know why they agree or disagree, and will find it less easy to dismiss contrary arguments on merely methodological grounds.
>
> (McCloskey 1983: 482)

The possession of this rhetorical awareness is considered a necessary prerequisite when taking part in what McCloskey calls "economic conversation", as it provides the addressee with a new habit "of listening, really listening to what our fellows say, then answering, really answering" (McCloskey 1988b: 256). The mastery of rhetoric will provide decoders with more efficient interpretative skills which will prove very useful not only in the mere understanding of the explicit content of a text, but also in the recognition of all implied meanings and in the assessment of the author's attitude. According to McCloskey the lack of such skills can seriously hamper a reader's critical activity:

> The ignorance of rhetoric leaves economists unable to confront doubts, really confront them. Run another regression that no one else believes. Deduce another consequence that no one else is persuaded by. Adduce another institutional fact that no one else sees as relevant (McCloskey 1988c: 287)

Drawing an analogy with literary criticism, McCloskey states the need for an "economic criticism", which should not represent "a way of passing judgement on economics, [but...] of showing how it accomplishes its results" (McCloskey 1985: xix). On several occasions McCloskey returns to this parallelism between economic criticism and literary criticism:

The task of an economic criticism would be to dissect samples of economic argument, noting in the manner of a literary or philosophical exegesis exactly how the arguments sought to convince the reader. (McCloskey 1985: 69)

Unfortunately, in suggesting a literary model for economic criticism to follow, McCloskey fails to identify precisely the theoretical framework he has in mind. When he tries to specify the principles on which such economic criticism should be based he refers vaguely to classical rhetoric and literary analysis:

A good place to start might be the categories of classical rhetoric. A good place to continue would be the procedures of modern literary critics, bright people who make their living thinking about the rhetoric of texts.

(McCloskey 1985: 69)

2. McCloskey's rhetorical categories

If we examine the examples of discourse analysis that McCloskey provides in his texts we are led to believe that the categories that he applies are mainly drawn from classical rhetoric (Aristotle, the Sicilian sophists and Cicero). In fact, the main rhetorical features that he identifies in the texts he analyses are analogy, metaphor, simile, appeal to authority, symmetry, syllogism, definition and others of a similar nature. Although the analysis he makes of various economic texts denotes his inspiration to classical rhetoric, McCloskey continually stresses the need that economic criticism should adopt the techniques commonly employed in the analysis of a novel or a poem:

Sophisticated criticism is merely understanding how the texts of economists produce their effect, as one criticises poetry. (McCloskey 1988b: 253)

The literary paradigm to be followed, however, is not made explicit, even though a structuralist or semiotic model could be implied by McCloskey's words:

The scientific paper is, of course, a literary genre with an actual author, an implied author, an implied reader, a history, and a form.

(McCloskey 1985: 57)

The reading of McCloskey's papers, therefore, leads us to the conclusion that, while claiming the superiority of rhetorical and literary models, he fails to provide a consistent, original example of discourse analysis. As he himself admits, his critical method varies a lot in its applications:

It is not obvious a priori what the categories might be; in view of the range of modern economics they would doubtless vary from author to author.

(McCloskey 1985: 69)

The great heterogeneity of McCloskey's analytical method is shown in the following example of an economist's metatextual reflections, which include references to procedures typical of classical rhetoric as well as techniques derived from empirical methods and mathematical approaches:

What [...] is the root metaphor in my work? Do I really have evidence for its aptness? I have appealed to an authority here: is it a good one? There my formal language claims the Objectivity of Science: is the point I'm making really up to it? Here I am making a quantitative argument: what are my conventional standards of bigness? Should I simulate the results mathematically, to show that they have quantitative bite? I appeal to 'theoretical reasons' in this argument do I mean pretty diagrams? In what way exactly are they pretty? I depend heavily on introspection for that point: how can I increase my confidence that my audience has the same introspection? I appeal to symmetry at this point: have I appealed symmetrically? Is there another symmetry I might as well impose too? What role do definitions play in my argument? How can I refine my appeal to the argument *a fortiori*?

(McCloskey 1985: 52-3)

What particularly suggests to McCloskey an analogy between economic and literary texts is the presence of metaphors and other rhetorical devices in both kinds of discourse:

When an economist says, as he frequently does, "demand curve slopes down", he is using the English language; and if he is using it to persuade, as he very frequently is, he is a rhetor, whether he knows or likes it or not. A scientific paper, and an assertion within it such as this Law of Demand (that when the

> pripe of something goes up the demand for something goes down), does literary deeds. (McCloskey 1985: 57)

In stressing this parallelism, however, McCloskey seems to ignore the fact that the use of metaphors and other rhetorical devices is very common not only in the economic register, but also in everyday language, and cannot therefore be attributed exclusively to literary style. Moreover, in his analysis of metaphors McCloskey fails to perceive the difference between the economic metaphor and the literary one. According to him the literary use of metaphor is identical to the way in which economists employ this figure of speech:

> To say that markets can be represented by supply and demand 'curves' is to be as metaphorical as to say that the west wind is 'the breath of autumn's being'.
>
> (McCloskey 1988a: 15)

In McCloskey's opinion, when creating a metaphor the economist acts in the same way as the literary figure and tries to select the most striking analogy so as to avoid a mechanical and non-illuminating correspondence to the concept it stands for. However, as has been demonstrated (cf. Hesse 1966), this quality of inciting the reader's imagination by means of uncommon and unexpected analogies is a feature particularly typical of literature. In scientific argumentation, on the other hand, the creation of metaphors follows a more rational and intelligible criterion of conceptual reference, especially in the case of catachresis. In outlining the nature of his rhetorical approach McCloskey makes a brief reference to the speech act theory:

> Scientific assertions are speech acts in a scene of scientific tradition by the scientist-agent through the agency of the usual figures of speech for purposes of describing nature of mankind better than the next fellow.
>
> (McCloskey 1985: 57)

The reference to speech acts is made to point out the important illocutionary and perlocutionary values of propositions in persuasive discourse. But it is another property of Austin's assertions which McCloskey considers of particular value, and the importance that he attributes to this characteristic is shown by the length of the quotation included in his work:

> Suppose that we confront "France is hexagonal" with the facts, in this case, I suppose, with France; is it true or false? Well, *if you like* up to a point ... it is true *for certain intents and purposes*. It is good enough *for a general, perhaps, but not for a geographer* ... But then someone says, ... "it has to be true or false – it's a statement, isn't it?" How can one answer? ... It is just rough, and that is the right and final answer ... it is a rough description; it is not a true or false one ... 'true' and 'false' ... do not stand for anything simple at all; but only for a general dimension of being a *right or proper thing to say ... in these circumstances, to this audience, for these purposes and with these intentions*.
>
> (Austin 1975: 143, 145; quoted in McCloskey 1985: 151; McCloskey's italics)

3. The relationship between rhetoric and methodology

The length of the quotation above denotes the importance that McCloskey attributes to Austin's opinion that assertions are not true or false in themselves, but acquire a degree of correctness according to the context in which they are used. This principle is cleverly employed by the American economist to back up his methodological contrast with the positivist theory. In emphasising the role of rhetoric in economics, McCloskey eventually exaggerates it and attributes to it the function of an "anti-methodology" (McCloskey 1985: 51), which can be used as a useful resource to defeat the existing prevalent method, that is, the positivist method.[1] This new meaning attributed to the word *rhetoric* makes McCloskey's use of this term rather confusing and extremely unsatisfactory. In fact, what seems highly criticisable is his conviction that "rhetorical thinking might free economics from its enslavement to the deductivist style of mathematical papers and the inductivist style of physical papers" (McCloskey 1985: 175–6). In this way he fails to realize that it is the rhetorical patterning of a text which should follow a certain methodological choice and not vice versa. Although approach to

---

1   It should be observed that in the text McCloskey refers to the method that he is attacking with various terms ('modernism', 'empiricism', 'positivism', 'falsificationism') which, however, refer to very different epistemological and methodological positions and are therefore the unfortunate cause of imprecise references and theoretical contradictions.

discourse analysis and choice of method are strictly related and the choice of the former has great relevance to the success of the latter, the two concepts should not be confused.

Moreover, even though McCloskey is to be praised for pointing out a valuable procedure for the analysis of argumentative texts, he fails to show in the examples that he himself gives in his papers how the texts examined fulfil their persuasive function. Also when he states that "economics is badly written" (Mccloskey 1985: 175), he does not examine the rhetorical realization of a specific text. He makes such a comment on existing papers that are "written by a formula for scientific prose" (McCloskey 1985: 175) and follow therefore the positivist approach. Moreover, McCloskey fails to realize that as they aim to achieve a different purpose, they cannot be structured in the rhetorical way that he suggests, but are all the same consistent with their method and are therefore pragmatically correct. The analyses he carries out provide a description of what rhetorical devices are used in various texts, but unfortunately fall short of conclusion. Although McCloskey complains that "economists do not have an official rhetoric that persuasively describes what economists find persuasive" (McCloskey 1983: 514), he himself makes no effort to point out the criteria that should be followed in distinguishing good from bad rhetoric. Also the rare advice that he gives to economists is very general:

Don't lie; pay attention; don't sneer; cooperate; don't shout; let other people talk; be open-minded; explain yourself when asked; don't resort to violence or conspiracy in aid of your ideas. (McCloskey 1988b: 251)

The inadequacy of these comments may also be due to McCloskey's habit of referring to economists' discourse with the lexeme *conversation*,[2] thus conveying a very informal and general tone to the

---

2   This word is often used in McCloskey's texts. Cf., for example, the following quotation: "A way to get out of the modernist maze is to pick up a thread long separated from science: rhetoric. Rhetoric does not deal with Truth directly; it deals with conversation. It is, crudely put, a literary way of examining conversation, the conversation of economists and mathematicians as much as of poets and novelists. It can be used for a literary criticism of science." (McCloskey 1985: 28)

argumentative language which he is taking into consideration. In particular, it is in his treatment of metaphors – to which he devotes his keenest attention as he considers them the most common of all rhetorical devices – that McCloskey shows the limitations of his method, failing to point out the features that make some more successful than others. Thus McCloskey's approach seems to imply that the success of a text is guaranteed merely by its containing a profusion of metaphors. Although it can be agreed that metaphors make discourse more striking and effective and therefore increase this persuasive power, it must also be admitted that if incorrectly chosen they can render a text more imprecise and at times even ambiguous. Moreover, by emphasizing the use of rhetorical devices without specifying their degree of persuasiveness McCloskey risks giving the wrong picture of his approach, suggesting the return to the traditional descriptive method of analysis of an author's style according to the teaching of rhetoric conceived as *l'art de bien dire*. This misinterpretation of McCloskey's approach would reach the exact opposite conclusion that the American economist had set out to defeat, that is, would emphasise the importance of figurative language and rhetorical devices as mere embellishment of economic discourse.

Another cause of misinterpretation derives from McCloskey's excessive opposition to the positivist use of literal language. In overemphasising the rhetorical aspects of the text, McCloskey suggests an incorrect view of the language to be used in economic argumentative texts, which, instead, in order to be clear and persuasive, must make use of both literal and figurative language. The value of language is not to be judged according to its literal and figurative nature, but rather following pragmatic criteria, which can help to point out its success in reaching the persuasive effect. Such an approach would enable the analysts not only to identify the main rhetorical features of a text, but also to explore their real meanings, the different interpretations they may allow, and the pragmatic value they play in that specific discourse. In his reaction to the positivist method McCloskey emphasises too strongly the literary and rhetorical aspects of economic discourse. The exaggerated function that he assigns to figurative language makes him alter the nature itself of economics, which he identifies as "a collection of literary forms" (McCloskey 1985: 55). In this way economics is subtracted from the epistemolo-

gical field of the sciences and wrongly transformed into an "instance of literary culture" (McCloskey 1985: 68). Adopting these premises McCloskey reaches the conclusion that no specificity exists in scientific and literary branches apart from the topic dealt with, as "a field of thought is special, after all, not because it has a certain Methodology – for these dissolve into tropes common to all persuasion – but because the conversation has a special subject, such as medieval economic arrangements or Latin poetry books." (McCloskey 1984: 115)

By reaching this conclusion, however, McCloskey does not seem to realize the great differences in epistemological principles and expressive functions that actually exist between literature and the sciences. In his effort to synthesise so many suggestions coming from such varied disciplines as rhetoric, semiotics, literary criticism, philosophy of science and linguistics McCloskey tries to give a unified procedure of discourse analysis. However, in using terms coined in certain specific fields and in borrowing various descriptive devices from many different sciences he is bound to create confusion and cause misunderstanding. In spite of these shortcomings, McCloskey must be credited with the merit of drawing his fellow-economists' attention to the relevance of and the need for a detailed analysis of the rhetorical patterns of the texts examined, and of making them aware of the important contribution that linguistic and rhetorical means and discourse processes make in the successful attainment of the persuasive goal of argumentative papers. Such an analysis, however, cannot be carried out by the economist alone, as McCloskey's experience has shown. The interpretation of an economic text is such a complex task that it requires the skills and competences of particular specialists coming from specific fields, and linguists can certainly make a fundamental contribution to the completion of this interpretative task (cf. Gotti 2002b).

XII. The Formation of the Lexis of Computer Science

Although it is a fairly recent subject, information science has rapidly assumed a very important role in the modern world. The use of computers has become more and more widespread in all countries as too has the vocabulary related to this field. Since it is a relatively new branch with specific concepts and tools, information science has developed its own terminology, part of which derives from other disciplines or from general English, and part of which has been devised for this discipline only. The main purpose of this chapter is to examine the lexis used in computer science texts, in order to ascertain the processes most commonly used in the formation of their terms. Such processes will be compared to those commonly adopted in general English and any possible discrepancies will be pointed out. Comparisons will also be made with the main features of other specialized languages in order to discover similarities and differences. The second part of the chapter will take into consideration some recently-coined terms belonging to the lexis of computer science, in order to outline the processes of word-formation employed.

1. Main features of the lexis of computer science

Before starting our analysis some clarifications ought to be provided: not all the words used in computer science texts will be taken into consideration here. Of the three categories of lexis found in scientific and technical texts by Inman (1978) – functional, subtechnical and technical words – only the latter will be taken into consideration. Sub-technical words, instead, will be neglected as they are context-independent and occur in several disciplines. Moreover, the language examined here is that used by specialists of computer science to

communicate with other specialists as regards computers, their functioning and their applications. Such language is to be considered part of the English language itself, and should not be confused with 'programming languages' (such as FORTRAN, BASIC, COBOL, ALGOL, etc.), that is, the symbolic codes based on numbers and letters used by programmers to give instructions to computers. Such machine-oriented languages will not be taken into consideration in our analysis.

1.1. Specialization and borrowing

The first category of words found in the language of computer science includes all words borrowed from the general language and to which a new contextual meaning is given. This is the case, for example, of words such as *hardware, chat group, program* and *disk*. The latter two words draw our attention to a prime feature of this specialized language, which consists of a preference for American spelling. This preference is due to the supremacy that the American computer industry has achieved not only in the development of the technological know-how of such a field, but also in the creation of its language, widely used in manuals and literature illustrating hardware and software made in the U.S.A. and exported all over the world.

Another method of borrowing general English words to make up the terminology of computer science is the use of metaphors. The recurrence to metaphorical processes is quite frequent, especially in the early stages of development of a new discipline when the concepts are still rather vague and can therefore be named only tentatively. This process is vital for the formation of new concepts as at their inception these can only be explained by reference to a vague and sometimes even erroneous analogy to existing objects or processes. Common examples of the metaphorical transfer of everyday words into computer science texts are *memory, address, bus, gate, store, menu, domain, mouse* and *spamming*. The explanation of the metaphorical process in the adoption of the latter term is thus made clear:

Most news groups have rules that discourage the posting of items relating to their topics. So, the net community was enraged by the indiscriminate and voluminous way in which the lawyers posted their ad. Among network veterans, such random posting is called 'spamming' - a term derived from a brand of pink, canned meat that splatters messily when hurled.

(*New York Times*, 11 May 1994)

When given a new meaning, some of these words are also assigned a new form, and are therefore considered as new terms which no longer have the same properties as the original words. This is the case, for example, of *mouse*, whose plural form is irregular in general English, while in the language of computer science it is regular, as can be seen from the following quotation: "The computer world, which operates on keys and buttons as well as mouses [...]" (Safire 1988). Another example is *e-mail*, which is commonly used nowadays as a countable noun and even as a verb. In other cases, words borrowed from general English are assigned to a different grammatical category. Some examples of this process of conversion are *abort* and *interrupt* (used as nouns in specialized contexts besides their general use as verbs), *format* (used as a verb besides its nominal value) and *peripheral* (used as a noun besides its general adjectival function). Apart from general English, a few terms have also been borrowed from other fields, in particular mathematics, engineering, physics, and electronics, that is, from the branches of knowledge most closely linked to information technology. It is interesting to note, however, that some terms have also been borrowed from the field of linguistics, especially where a metalinguistic terminology is required. Thus, for example, in dealing with programming codes, the term *languages* is used. Such programming languages, moreover, make use of specific *statements* based on their own *syntax*.

When borrowed, terms usually retain their original form, but some are given a new meaning. This is the case, for example, of *mantissa*, borrowed from the language of mathematics, where it means the positive decimal part of a common logarithm, while in computer science it refers to a fixed point number composed of the most significant digits of a given floating point number. Some other words, instead, when borrowed from other specialized languages, are modified in form. Such terms are usually compressed - that is, reduced in length - to comply with the norm of economy common to

all specialized discourse. Some examples of the results of this compression technique are *alphameric* (derived from *alphanumeric*), *digitize* (from *digitalize*), and *optronics* (from *optoelectronic*). All the cases reported so far are examples of internal borrowing from the English language; rarely are terms borrowed from other languages; those deriving from Latin (cf., for example, *catena* and *post-mortem*) are representative of the 'Fifth Borrowing' (Hughes 1988), that is, of the fifth stage of the process of classical borrowing, characterized by the enormous influx of technical terminology in the 19th and 20th centuries, meant to confer a universal possibility of usage on the neologisms based on these languages (cf. Nybakken 1959).

1.2. Neology

When new words are required and cannot be borrowed from general English, or other specialized languages or from foreign languages, they are expressly created for the purpose. There are some cases in which the origin of a certain form is difficult to trace, and the coinage of the term does not seem to follow a logical criterion. This might be the case of the word *byte*, whose various suggested explanations – a blend of *bit* and *bite* or an acronym of the expression *Binary digIT Eight* (Illingworth 1985: 14) – have not been found sufficiently satisfactory. In general, however, the coinage of a new term makes use of the traditional analytic and syntactic processes of English word-formation (cf. Bauer 1983). One of the processes most frequently employed is that of derivation. By means of the most common prefixes and suffixes present in general English and used also in other specialized languages, new computer science terms are formed. Some examples of this affixation technique are: *autocode, debug, interfix, kilobyte, macroprogramming, megabit, microcoding, mini-computer, misfeed, multiaddress, non-formatted, postprocessing, pre-edit, re-compile, subroutine, debugger, diskette, buffering and processor.*

Another process very frequently used in word-formation is analogy. By means of this technique a new word is formed by being modelled on an already existing lexeme. An example of this process is the term *software*, created on the analogy of *hardware*. The need for a term to distinguish the computer from its programs has induced the

programmer to find a word to contrast with the term *hardware*, already used to refer to the machine. In such a process of analogy, *hardware* has been divided into its two components: the adjective *hard* and the noun *ware*. The opposite of the adjective (*soft*) was then added to the noun *ware* to form the new term. The word *ware* can be found in several other derived forms, such as *courseware, fontware, groupware, vaporware*, etc. In these lexemes, however, *ware* is used as a fixed combining form representing an abbreviation of the term *software*. The frequent use of this combining form in the language of computer science and its specific semantic value corresponding to that of 'a series of programs' have caused it to become one of the most common suffixes used in that field, although in some cases the different semantic values of *ware* – the analogical form derived from *hardware* and the abbreviation for *software* – have not always been distinguished, and have instead been incorrectly attributed to a common all-purpose element of suffixation (cf., for example, Green 1991: 321).

The use of similes is another technique of word-formation which commonly appears in the language of computer science. This process is generally employed to coin new expressions which refer to the aspect or the category of an item; some examples are: *bridge connector, banana plug, daisywheel, star connection*. In a few cases these similes are made more explicit by the addition of the words *shaped* and *type*. Some examples of these overt similes are: *drum-type printer, star-shaped data network* and *prop-type transistor*.

As concepts become more complex, often the expressions referring to them also become longer. To express the various syntagmatic connotations, the specialized language recurs to more complex forms of composition. However, as has already been mentioned, one of the main features of specialized discourse is economy, that is, the need to make expressions as short and concise as possible (cf. Chapters 2 and 3). One of the ways to achieve such economy is by the process of compounding. In fact, a compound is often the result of a process of compression of various items included in the same syntagm by the omission of linking function words and consequent re-ordering of lexemes: e.g. *programmer of computers* becomes *computer programmer*. In noun compounds and in noun phrases the last term refers to the item being referred to, while the

preceding one(s) specifies its property. Such specification may either concern the material of which a certain item is made (e.g. *ferrite core, silicon chip*, etc.) or its use (*access arm, control byte, load program*, etc.). Often, after a certain period of usage, some of these compounds are joined either by a hyphen or fused into a single word: e.g. *flowchart, plugboard, sumcheck, on-line*, etc.

Compounds often include more than two words, and groups of three, four and even five words are frequently found: *batch processing mode, communications line control procedure, address translation slave store*, etc. Longer groups are not very common, as they may present great difficulties of comprehension. In order to interpret them correctly, the decoder usually groups the various items of the compound in appropriate segments of meaning: e.g. (((*block fill-in*) (*data control*)) *process*) or (((*IBM system/360*) (*operating system*)) *assembler program*). The long compound groups, indeed, are generally considered cumbersome and complicated; therefore, they are often simplified by means of a process of ellipsis. Thus, for example, *alphabetic character string* is usually reduced to *alphabetic string*, *asynchronous data transmission* becomes *asynchronous transmission*, *floppy disk drive* becomes *floppy drive*, and so on. In spite of the abolition of one of the terms of the multiple compound no risks of misunderstanding are likely to arise, as the word omitted can be easily reconstructed from the context. Another way of making compounds shorter is the blending of the various elements into single words. Some examples of these telescoped words¹ are *bit* (from *binary digit*), *infocenter* (from *information center*), *modem* (from *modulator/demodulator*) and *datamation* (from *data automation*). An interesting case of telescoped terms is represented by *pixel*, which is the result of the blending of the words *pictures element*. Instead of the term *pictel* (deriving from *PICTures ELement*), the creator of this word made use of the colloquial abbreviation *pix* corresponding to the word *pictures*.

The derivation of words from a colloquial register of the language is not confined to this example, but is confirmed by other

---

1 Telescoped words are also called 'portmanteaux', a term invented by Lewis Carroll in *Through the Looking Glass* (1872); in fact, Humpty Dumpty observes that "slithy" means 'lithe and slimy' [...] You see it's like a portmanteau – there are two meanings packed into one word."

terms, such as *bootstrap* (meaning the technique of loading a program into a computer by means of certain preliminary instructions which in turn call in instructions to read programs and data) whose meaning of support is derived from the idiom *to raise oneself by one's own bootstraps*. These two examples of colloquial expressions – to which we could add several other examples, such as *bug* (meaning 'fault'), borrowed from the informal register of general English – represent a distinguishing trait of the language of computer science. In other specialized languages, in fact, idioms and colloquialisms are not very likely to occur (cf. Gerbert 1970).

1.3. Acronymy and abbreviation

The need to make groups of words as concise as possible leads the computer specialist to create a great many acronyms. The number of acronyms in the language of computer science is very high. Indeed, of all specialized languages one of the most recurrent uses of this device can be noticed in the field of computer science. Some examples are: *ASCII* (for *American Standard Code for Information Interchange*), *RAM* (for *random access memory*), *ROM* (for *read only memory*), *DOS* (for *disk operating system*). Besides being shorter – and therefore easier to recall and pronounce – acronyms are also sometimes devised in such a way as to suggest a certain meaning or arouse special interest. This can be seen, for example, in the formulation of the acronym *BASIC* (standing for *Beginners' All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code*), which is conceived so as to make the simplicity of the computer language immediately evident. Another example of a 'transparent' acronym is *EDIT* (standing for *Error Deletion by Iterative Transmission*), which evokes at once the function for which such an instruction is used.

Apart from acronyms, this technique of creating a new term to establish associations with other terms is used in other cases of word-formation. For example, a telescoped word such as *bit* may also have been formed in order to suggest a direct similarity with the concept of small quantity which characterizes the analogous general English word. Also the similarity of the pronunciation of the word *byte* to the general English word *bite* has been exploited in the coinage of the

term *gulp*, meaning a group of several bytes. Illingworth (1985:12) also reports the case of the term *nybble* (meaning half a byte) whose relationship with *byte* reflects the ratio of smaller quantity existing in general English between *bite* and *nibble*. The deformation of the word *nibble* on which such a term is based is due to the need to insert a *y* which reminds the addressee of the *y* of *byte*. The desire of the specialist to create acronyms in such a way as to be more easily remembered and to immediately suggest specific ideas to their decoders is more evident if we try to explain the insertion of certain letters besides the initials of the various words giving origin to the acronym. Such extra letters are usually inserted so as to make the acronym resemble a real word, often belonging to either general English or a specialized language. This is the case, for example, of the acronym of another computer language, *ALGOL*, which includes four initial letters of the first word of the compound (*ALGOrithmic Language*) in order to suggest its suitability for mathematical applications. In other cases the extra letters taken from a single word have the function of enabling the speaker to pronounce them more easily. This is the case of *COBOL* (*COmmon Business Oriented Language*) where the first *O* is inserted for pronunciation purposes. Although the tendency is to make acronyms resemble real words, in the language of computer science there are also several cases of abbreviations. Common examples are: *CPU* (*Central Processing Unit*), *ALU* (*Arithmetic and Logical Unit*), *EDP* (*Electronic Data Processing*) and *FAQ* (for *frequently asked questions*).[2] A confirmation that the latter is an abbreviation and not an acronym comes from the use of the article *an* in front of it, as shown by the following quotation:

> An FAQ list is a compendium of accumulated lore, posted frequently to high-volume news groups in an attempt to forestall FAQs. (*Time*, 6 Dec 1993)

---

2 For further examples of abbreviations (as well as other types of neological formations) cf. Beloti 2000.

2. Recent developments

The analysis of recent terms used in the language of computer science testifies to a greater recourse to the internal resources of the language of computer science and a far more limited number of loans from other tongues or other specialized languages. Indeed, widespread use is made of the process of derivation, and – in particular – of suffixation. The most commonly used suffix is *-er*, generally used to refer to the person who performs a certain action: e.g. *Internetter* (user of the Internet), *lurker* (subscriber to a bulletin board who reads messages but never contributes). Another frequent suffix is *-ing*, mainly used in the derivation of nouns from verbs to refer to a particular process: e.g. *cyberizing* (causing someone to be interested in the use of the computer), *netwriting* (writing on the Internet), etc. The tendency of computer experts to make use of colloquial expressions is confirmed by the adoption of the suffix *-ie*, commonly employed to refer to newcomers to the field of computer science; besides *nettie* (indicating an inexperienced user of the Internet), we have found *newbie*; its meaning is made clear in the following quotation:

> Instead of feeling surrounded by information, first-timers ('newbies' in the jargon of the Net) are likely to find themselves adrift in a borderless sea.
> (*Time*, 6 Dec 1993)

Among the prefixes, one of the most common is *re-*, denoting repetition of a certain operation. For example, *remailer* is to be interpreted in this way:

> A remailer is a network-connected computer that takes in e-mail, then sends it on to a destination specified in attached, encrypted instructions, thus placing a veil between sender and receiver. (*Village Voice*, 3 Aug 1993)

Analogical derivations are also common. A recent example is *off-line reader*, a term coined on the semantic opposition between *on* and *off*. The analogical process adopted in the creation of this term is clearly visible in the contrast existing between the process of examining

messages off- versus on-line, as can be seen in the following description:

> Bulletin-board users can save money with an 'off-line reader'. It lets you download messages onto your computer, where you can read them at leisure and compose answers. You then dial up the system and upload your messages all at once. (*Sunday Patriot-News*, 10 April 1994)

The process of derivation also makes use of combining forms. An interesting example is *Internaut* (user of the Internet), which is a phonetic deformation of the word *Internet* by means of the combining form *-naut*, as the meaning of this form is very clear (i.e. "one who explores or investigates", Algeo 1991: 59) since it is frequently used in everyday language (e.g. *astronaut*), its adoption in the neologism *Internaut* is 'transparent' and immediately suggests the concept it aims to convey. The ease of decodification of this form is confirmed by its use in another derived term such as *cybernaut*, having the same meaning.³ An interesting example of abbreviation commonly used in compounds is *cyber*, a shortened form for *cybernetics*, which is frequently adopted as a combining form in the creation of new terms to indicate the computer usage of the element denoted by the following word. This is the function it has in neologisms such as *cyberboard, cyberchat, cybercrime, cyberculture, cyberhype, cyber-kid, cyberstation*, etc. In some cases the combining form *cyber-* is the abbreviation of the word *cyberpunk*, a science fiction genre forecasting a gloomy future world controlled by computer networks. This is the meaning we find in words such as *cyberbabe, cyber-cigarette, Cybergate, Cybersex* encountered in the following quotations:

> This is typical of the genre of science-fiction known as 'cyberpunk', in which protagonists lose themselves inside the universe of computers, having cybersex with cyberbabes and cybercigarettes afterward.
> (*Houston Chronicle*, 9 March 1992)

---

3   This combining form is used very frequently also in the formation of neologisms in the general language; cf., for example, *hydronaut* ('an underwater explorer', Algeo 1991:51)

> The intended effect was to immerse riders in a three-dimensional video game called Cybergate, where they would battle one another for control of the last remaining inhabitable planet in the universe.
>
> (*Wall Street Journal*, 21 March 1994)

When used before compounds, *cyber* is often followed by a hyphen, thus e.g. *cyber-lifestyle, cyber-rights group, cyber-roadkill*. In several cases the combining form is employed as an independent entity, thus denoting a completely autonomous word: *cyber culture, cyber fender-bender, cyber science, cyber station, cyber world*. A confirmation of the syntactic evolution of this term comes from its adoption for further derivational processes, such as its verbal usage in *cyberize*, which in turn originates *cyberizing* (i.e. causing someone to be interested in the use of the computer). As can be seen from the numerous examples quoted above, the combining form *cyber-* has become very popular in the lexis of computer science, up to the point of representing the most common prefix for denoting the connection of a particular element to this specific field.

With this meaning it is at present much more productive than the other combining form used for this purpose, namely *info-*. Indeed, in a corpus we have examined – which includes the neologisms in the language of computer science collected and analysed by Algeo / Algeo (1994) – we only found three examples of neologisms making use of this prefix: *infobahn, info pike, info superpike*; as can be seen, all three terms merely refer to the circulation of messages on the net. The loss of popularity of the combining form *info-* compared to *cyber-* can be attributed to two main reasons: *info-* can be considered inadequate for a precise reference to computer science as it is not used exclusively in that field. Indeed, this prefix is also commonly adopted in other sectors – in particular in those connected to the means of mass media communication – as can be seen from the numerous neologisms based on *info-* that have recently been coined: *infomania* (an excessive enthusiasm for the accumulation and dissemination of factual information), *infomercial*⁴ (a short advertising film which promotes a product, service, etc. in an informative and purportedly objective and spontaneous style), *infopreneur* (entrepreneur who seeks to profit in

---

4   A variant of this term also exists, namely *informercial*, deriving from the combination of the two terms *information* + *commercial*.

business from the collection and dissemination of information) and *infotainment* (broadcast material which aims to inform and entertain simultaneously).[5] Another reason for the preference of *cyber-* over *info-* is that the latter may be seen as more traditional[6] and not indicative of the innovativeness of this field and of the intense development it has undergone in the past few years. A confirmation of the fact that *cyber-* confers an innovative shade of meaning to specialist jargon comes from the following quotation:

> There was *astro*, then *techno*. Now, *cyber* is the prefix that means 'the future'.
> *(Newsweek*, 5 July 1993)

3. Conclusion

The conclusion which may be reached after examining the lexis of the language of computer science is that the processes of word-formation employed are those commonly used in general English and other specialized languages, that is, borrowing, analogy, metaphor, compounding, acronymy, abbreviation, affixation, specialization and so on. What actually differentiates these processes in the language of computer science if compared to general English is the frequency of their recurrence rather than their nature. To further the great terminological development connected with the continuous and rapid advances in this field, the language of computer science makes use of both internal and external resources. As regards the latter, the most common word-formation process is that of borrowing, which is however applied almost exclusively to the general language and only very rarely to other tongues or other specialized languages. It is to be noted, moreover, that over the years the trend has become bidirectional, as the language of computer science has become a

---

5 These examples have been taken from Simpson / Weiner (1993).

6 A confirmation of the greater traditional value connected with *info-* comes from Tulloch (1991: 164): "*Info* has been a popular colloquial abbreviation of *information* for most of this century."

source of terms converted into generalized use in everyday speech.[7] The great advances in the world of computers has led to greater autonomy in the coining of new terminology. Indeed, other processes of word-formation extremely prominent in the language of computer science are those of compounding and affixation, which are essentially based on the internal lexical resources already present in that particular technical jargon. Apart from these, other processes are more productive, namely compression, ellipsis and abbreviation, thus confirming the criteria of conciseness and economy of expression which are typical of specialized discourse.

Other features of specialized languages which have been confirmed by the present analysis are those of 'transparency' (particularly emphasized by the frequent use of specialization and metaphorization of general words, as well as examples of grammatical conversion and analogical formation) and monoreferentiality. As regards the latter feature, the present analysis has pointed out the absence in the corpus examined of ambiguous and polysemic terms – noted instead in previous research papers (cf., for example, Gotti 1990) –, which shows the greater correctness and independence in the formation of neologisms recently achieved in this field. The state of apparent confusion and ambiguity in which the terminology of this new field seemed to be in until just a few years ago was similar to the condition in which other specialized disciplines had found themselves in the past. But like other branches of knowledge – such as medicine, biology or chemistry, where terminology has been revised according to special rules for naming elements, illnesses and compounds –, when a sufficient body of knowledge has been accumulated, also in the language of computer science it has eventually been possible to give some form of order to terminology and provide the functional system that the continuous evolution of the discipline requires.

---

7 It is not the purpose of this chapter to analyse the influence of the language of computer science on everyday speech. It is worth ponting out, however, that this influence has become increasingly relevant and can be traced in various sectors and contexts (cf., among others, Gotti 1994b).

XIII. SEASPEAK: A Special Language

This chapter analyses what is known as SEASPEAK – a code developed specifically for marine communications – in order to establish which of the criteria identified earlier as distinctive of specialized discourse were built also into this language. SEASPEAK is an example of 'special language', as defined in Chapter 1 of this book, insofar as it embraces the rules of general language but also certain features not found in English.

There has always been a need for a common language of shipping, but only in the 20th century was the issue seriously confronted. This led to the development of such non-verbal codes as the International Code (based on a series of flags), the Semaphore, the Signal Lamp, and radiotelegraphy. Only after World War II, however, did the pervasiveness of radio-communications make the need for a common international language so urgently felt. The choice soon fell on English, because of its worldwide use after centuries of British rule overseas, built mainly around the control of international sea routes. Another reason is, the fact that in the post-war period the crews of most merchant ships were composed mainly of native English speakers; in the 1950s, for instance, native speakers accounted for up to 80% of the world's merchant navy officers. Despite subsequent changes in crew composition, affecting also the language spoken (85% of officers today speak another first language), the choice of English has never been challenged, also because no other language is widely spoken enough to offer a viable alternative.

English was officially adopted as the language of maritime communications in 1975 by the Intergovernmental Maritime Consultative Organization (IMCO), renamed the International Maritime Organization (IMO) in 1982. This choice, however, has not ensured a clear or effective use of English by all users, who are prevalently non-native speakers and often employ broken English or an oversimplified version of the language, often more similar to pidgin. Increased inaccuracy in marine radio-communications forced

authorities to develop a strict code, on the lines of the English used in air communications. After adopting English as its common language, the International Civil Aviation Organization had to implement a stricter codification of pronunciation and form in standard messages, following a number of tragic accidents due to bad wording or misunderstanding of English (cf. Turner / Nübold 1981). It therefore developed a new system for reading numbers and letters of the alphabet, in an attempt to overcome the phonetic difficulties experienced by non-native speakers. Thus the word *hotel*, a conventional marker for the letter *H*, was replaced because most pilots omitted the initial sound; similarly, the word *Quebec* for *Q* was replaced because of its different pronunciation in other languages. In sea transport, the risk is equally high: modern ships are huge and extremely fast, usually carrying vast quantities of potentially dangerous goods. A tanker can hold up to 350,000 tonnes of petroleum products and collision can cause serious environmental damage as well as the loss of lives. Goods are very often carried on large container ships, linking a number of specially-equipped ports where traffic is heavy and collision or other accidents are always a strong possibility.

In maritime radio-communications, early attempts to rationalise language targeted lexis. A *Standard Marine Navigational Vocabulary* (normally known as "IMCO English") was issued by the Inter-governmental Maritime Consultative Organisation in 1977 (IMCO 1977). IMCO English is similar to a phrasebook, with some 400 standard expressions containing the common messages sent from ship to ship or from ship to shore and vice versa. This did not solve, however, the difficulties encountered by non-native speakers, mainly depending on the following factors: ambiguity, redundancy, double items, uncommon words or expressions, pronunciation difficulties, translation difficulties (long, complex structures). Moreover, IMCO English restricts considerably the number of messages that can be sent and does not meet the needs of all users because it lacks a generative approach.

1. The SEASPEAK Project

Following criticism of IMCO English, in 1981 Britain's Ministry for Trade and Industry launched a project to develop a codified version of language in this field. For this purpose, it consulted a linguistic society (Language Management) which included, among others, Christopher Candlin, John Sinclair, Peter Strevens and Henry Widdowson. The research project was supported by the Ministry for Trade and Industry (25%) and by the Oxford publishing house Pergamon Press (75%). Language Management established a head office in London and appointed two research teams – one in Plymouth (at the Faculty of Maritime Studies of Plymouth Polytechnic) and one in Cambridge (Wolfson College). The Plymouth team involved Lieutenant Alan Glover and Captain Fred Weeks, two maritime communications experts; the Cambridge team involved two applied linguists: Edward Johnson and Peter Strevens. The two had no difficulty in interacting, as the maritime communications experts had also linguistic knowledge (Weeks, for instance, had graduated with a thesis entitled *Essential Maritime English*) while the linguists were familiar with the world of shipping (Strevens's father and two grandfathers were sea captains). The aim of the teams was to define a language incorporating the following features:

- be in the internationally-agreed language, English;
- meet the practical requirements of the bridge officer and shore authorities;
- reduce confusion and ambiguity in speech communications;
- follow existing ITU and other regulations and incorporate existing maritime usage;
- make it possible to express in a simple and precise manner any and all of the communication needs of professional seafarers;
- be simple to learn, both for native speakers and for non-native speakers.

(Strevens 1984: 3)

1.1. The structure of maritime radio-communications

The research programme started with an analysis of recurring situations in maritime radio-communications, in order to map out the

main communicative purposes and prevailing content of messages. It subsequently targeted the procedures employed in such communications, to account for constraints depending on the type of channel. This led to the identification of seven key structural constituents of radio-communications:

1. Initial call
2. Respond to call
3. Indicate working VHF channel
4. Agree working VHF channel (switch to agreed channel)
5. Message
6. Respond to message
7. End of transmission. (Strevens 1984: 4)

These seven constituents of radio-communications were then analysed in greater detail and were found to incorporate the following procedures:

1. INITIAL CALL
- Select VHF calling channel
- Address station being called
- Identify own station
- Use of phonetic alphabet
- Indicate VHF calling channel
- Speaking of numbers. Return (Over).

2. RESPOND TO CALL
- Address the initiating station
- Identify own station
- Return (Over)

3. INDICATE WORKING VHF CHANNEL
- Address station being called
- Identify own station
- Propose working VHF channel
- Return (Over)

4. AGREE WORKING VHF CHANNEL
- Address the initiating station
- Identify own station
- Agree working VHF channel
- Return (Over)

5. MESSAGE
- Address station being called
- Identify own station
- Message (marker plus pattern)
- Abbreviation ETA
- Offering initiative to other speaker
- Return (Over)

6. RESPOND TO MESSAGE
- Address the initiating station
- Identify own station
- Response to message (marker plus pattern)
- Speaking time
- Abbreviation GMT
- Indication of no further message
- Return (Over)

7. END OF TRANSMISSION
- Address station being called
- Identify own station
- Repeat message response
- Terminate (Out). (Strevens 1984: 5)

The first expressions codified by the group of researchers refers to the channel employed and to the conversational structure. They analysed the different expressions normally used to open, close and maintain radio contact, selecting a single expression for each function so as to avoid pointless redundancy. Thus, the speaker's identity is identified by the expression 'This is', followed by the name of the vessel; any alternative expressions — e.g. 'The name of the ship is', 'You are listening to', 'I am' — are ruled out. Over signals that the speaker has finished and awaits a reply, while Out signals that communication in both directions has ended and that the caller expects no reply. This constraint on phatic utterances ensures an acceptable use of English, with maximum simplification of sentence form. Moreover, by restricting the choice of options for each function to a single expression, the listener is far less likely to misunderstand a phrase. The researchers not only carefully avoided multiple expressions for the same concept but also kept clear of any expression allowing multiple interpretations of the same message. This is why, for example, the word Roger (a standard expression among English-

speaking radio amateurs) was not included. According to the researchers:

Roger is used indiscriminately, imprecisely and with several different meanings possible – e.g. 'I heard you', 'I understood you', 'I agree', 'I will comply', and others. Its function is better conveyed by the use of *Understood*, among the standard Phrases, and by any of the seven Message Reply Markers, INFORMATION-RECEIVED, etc. (Strevens 1984: 6)

Thirty-nine phrases were codified, each with its specific function and well-defined meaning. The meaning is highly conventional and does not always reflect the interpretation observed in everyday English. Examples of this are the following standard phrases and their equivalent meaning in general language:

Calling (= I wish to speak to ...)
How do you read? (= How well are you receiving me?)
Break (= I must break into this conversation for urgent reasons)
Nothing more (= I have finished my messages. You are free to change subject
    or terminate)
Correction. ... (= I have just made a mistake in this transmission. The
    information should be ...)
Mistake. ... (= There is a mistake in your last transmission. The information
    should be ...). (Weeks *et al.* 1984: 38-40)

As observed above, the linguists' first concern was to select a number of fixed expressions for opening, maintaining and closing radio conversations. After developing a range of set procedures used to establish, manage and terminate contact, they tackled the wording of the message itself. A list of set phrases would not have been practical, because of the huge number of possible options. At the same time, the researchers sought to avoid the flaws of IMCO English, which only provided for a minimum number of messages. They decided therefore to allow the use of everyday language, albeit with a few corrections. After analysing a corpus of over 1,600 maritime radio transmissions recorded in various parts of the world, the researchers realised that despite its heterogeneous content, the illocutionary value remained fairly constant. As one of the main difficulties identified among non-native speakers was their misunderstanding of the main communicative purpose of phrases (often conveyed in English by supra-

segmental features that non-native speakers struggle to master), the research group decided to make the message in SEASPEAK explicit through a number of message markers. Each message marker was paired to a reply marker. The terms provided by SEASPEAK for this function are as follows:

MESSAGE MARKERS	REPLY MARKERS
QUESTION	ANSWER
INSTRUCTION	INSTRUCTION-RECEIVED
ADVICE	ADVICE-RECEIVED
REQUEST	REQUEST-RECEIVED
INFORMATION	INFORMATION-RECEIVED
WARNING	WARNING-RECEIVED
INTENTION	INTENTION-RECEIVED

(Weeks *et al.* 1984: 41-42)

These message markers and reply markers were to be placed before each message so as to specify the exact pragmatic value meant by the locutor. Here are a couple of examples of this usage:

(1) QUESTION: What is your ETA at the dock entrance?
     ANSWER: My ETA at the dock entrance is: time:one-six-zero-zero GMT.

(2) INSTRUCTION: Go to berth number:two-five.
     INSTRUCTION-RECEIVED: Go to berth number:two-five, positive.

(Weeks *et al.* 1984: 42-43)

As can be seen from these examples, numbers and time expressions are preceded by words specifying their semantic value. These words are defined 'marker words' and have the function "to indicate to the listener exactly what it is that a group of numbers, a set of letters, a name, etc. refers to. Without such a system these things are easily confused"(Weeks *et al.* 1984: 51). The commonest marker words refer to depth, direction, destination, position, quantity, nouns, numbers, speed, wind, dates, etc. To ensure that the message has been received correctly, SEASPEAK relies on a third phase to complete the MESSAGE MARKER - REPLY MARKER sequence, that is, MESSAGE CHECK. In this phase the message is repeated, so that the sender can check that it has been received correctly. This phase starts with the

word *Understood* followed by the information received. Here is an example of the sequence:

(3) 1st Speaker: QUESTION: What is your ETA at the dock entrance?
2nd Speaker: ANSWER: My ETA at the dock entrance is time:one-six-zero-zero GMT.
1st Speaker: Understood, time:one-six-zero-zero GMT.

(Weeks et al. 1984: 47)

By means of the MESSAGE CHECK move the sender can realise if there has been a mistake in the understanding of the message and can immediately correct it as follows:

(4) 2nd Speaker: ANSWER: My ETA at the dock entrance is: time:one-five-zero-zero GMT.
1st Speaker: Understood, time:one-six-zero-zero GMT.
2nd Speaker: Mistake. Time:one-five-zero-zero GMT.
1st Speaker: Correction. Time:one-five-zero-zero GMT.

(Weeks et al. 1984: 48)

1.2. Phonetic features of SEASPEAK

Since radio-mediated maritime communication is essentially oral, SEASPEAK researchers looked closely at its phonetic realisations. Most of the opening pages in the *Reference Manual* provide guidelines on how to convey a message as clearly as possible. This section instructs users to speak more slowly than normal, pronouncing each word clearly and at a constant pitch. In fact, radio transmission is always prone to faulty reception due to interference from other broadcasts and to frequency fluctuations. These technical problems are worsened by specifically linguistic considerations, as comprehension is often made difficult (if not impossible) by the speaker's excessive speed of delivery or unusual accent. The use (or omission) of certain suprasegmental traits – which has led to serious accidents, especially in civil aviation, when they are either not noticed or misunderstood – has been solved by rejecting their communicative value and using special message markers to signal the pragmatic value of phrases. Another major risk is the misunderstanding of names and numbers. To overcome this danger, users are required to spell the

letters and figures in a name or number. As many accidents are due to mistaken comprehension of letters and figures, the SEASPEAK researchers also redefined pronunciation. When referring to a letter of the alphabet, the advice is to use whole words in order to avoid ambiguity and misunderstanding. For example, the letter A is pronounced *alpha*, B is *bravo*, C *Charlie* and so forth. Even numbers, which are all in English, sometimes take on a different reading for greater clarity. This particularly affects the following numbers:

3   TREE
4   FOWER
5   FIFE
9   NINER
1000 TOUSAND

Each figure must be read individually, except the three zeros of the thousand pronounced *tousand*. The decimal dot is read *dayseemal*. The following are examples of how numbers are expressed:

34   TREE-FOWER
217   TOO-WUN-SEVEN
25,000 TOO-FIFE-TOUSAND
25,256 TOO-FIFE-TOO-FIFE-SIX
36.04   TREE-SIX DAYSEEMAL ZERO-FOWER

(Weeks et al. 1984: 6)

This way of pronouncing figures is also used for time expressions For example, 15.00 is read 'time:one-five-zero-zero'.

1.3. Lexical features of SEASPEAK

SEASPEAK consists entirely of English lexemes, chosen among words occurring in the corpus of radio-communications and navy dictionaries consulted. The terms are divided into three main categories:

- lexemes belonging to general English; these were not included in SEASPEAK because they belong to standard language;

- lexemes belonging to maritime language; these are listed in Section 1 of the *Reference Manual* Appendix;
- lexemes belonging to specialized maritime language for special topics; these are listed in Section 2 of the *Reference Manual* Appendix.

The researchers also identified 47 terms (listed in a glossary) which, although part of the English language, are redefined for use in SEASPEAK to constrain ambiguity. The word *channel*, for example, retains only its reference to telecommunications and loses the meaning of 'navigable waterway', which SEASPEAK conveys through the lexeme *fairway*.

1.4. Syntactic features of SEASPEAK

When targeting the syntactic features of SEASPEAK, the researchers decided to introduce no specific novelties. Users are only advised to employ the simpler forms of English:

> Encouragement is given to use only patterns similar to those provided by the copious examples [in the *Reference Manual*]. These rely on short sentences, little embedding, sparing use of modals, fewer deletions than normal, few complex tenses (*might have been being navigated* is a tense, for example, that does not occur in the *SEASPEAK Reference Manual* and is not recommended), deliberate restriction of propositional content to one or at most two per utterance. (Strevens 1984: 7)

Besides such explicit advice, examples within the Reference Manual incorporate various syntactic suggestions. There are virtually no occurrences of nouns in the possessive form, which is conveyed instead by postmodification involving a prepositional phrase introduced by *of*. For example:

(5) INFORMATION, three: The condition of the survivors is fair and medical aid is not required. (Weeks *et al.* 1984: 56)

Here the form 'the conditions of the survivors' is preferred to the more common 'the survivors' conditions'. The choice is instrumental once

more to the oral channel: in fact, the possessive of plural nouns (signalled in writing by an apostrophe) is not perceptible in spoken English. Its presence in oral communication could therefore lead to ambiguity, which is avoided through postmodification. The use of complex sentences is equally disapproved of. Parataxis and hypotaxis are simply replaced by juxtaposition. The semantic aspects normally conveyed by conjunction are realised by marker words. See, for example, how the following SEASPEAK message avoids using a causal subordinate:

(6) REQUEST: Please send a doctor to Rose Maru, reason: a survivor has broken legs. (Weeks *et al.* 1984: 55)

Another notable feature of SEASPEAK is its lack of contracted forms, which instead are very frequent in the oral variety of general language. Confirmation of this may be found in the following message from the *Reference Manual*:

(7) Dacca chain two bravo is not working. (Weeks *et al.* 1984: 36)

The lack of contraction in SEASPEAK is due to the channel involved: interference and overlapping from other radio stations could in fact undermine correct comprehension. The aforesaid message, for instance, might be perceived as an affirmative instead of a negative statement.

2. SEASPEAK: a specialized language or a special language?

This analysis points to various aspects of SEASPEAK and its relationship to general language. SEASPEAK certainly cannot be placed in the same class as Code Q (presented in Chapter 1), which relies on conventional items alien to common language. SEASPEAK was developed from general language and largely follows the same rules. It cannot be classed as a 'restricted language', as it does not

consist of a set of formulae to be employed only at certain times for certain purposes. Using a rather inappropriate term, the researchers call SEASPEAK a 'generative' language – meaning that it can convey an unlimited range of messages, without any restriction on their ideational content. SEASPEAK is decidedly a type of specialized language, insofar as it is available to a limited number of specialists in a particular field for the exchange of messages pertaining to their profession. Yet SEASPEAK differs significantly from the specialized languages described so far in this volume. It did not arise naturally from the development of maritime communications but from the work and guidelines of a research team, following linguistic rules that do not normally apply among native English speakers. Indeed, certain features (e.g. the different pronunciation of numbers and names, or illocutionary emphasis through suitable message markers and other devices) do not occur in general language or in other specialized languages.

Though clearly related to the English language, SEASPEAK is an altered form, with its own extra rules and conventions. The increasing use of English in international communication means that external factors (due to difficulties of expression and comprehension among non-native speakers, who outnumber native speakers) have made it necessary to introduce variations in the wording of messages. This aspect (rather than the oral channel, which also affects certain features of general language) is arguably the real reason behind certain peculiarities of SEASPEAK and make it in many ways a 'special' language. My view is that the increasing role of English as the *lingua franca* of international communications will eventually lead to further adjustments and additions to the conventional rules of this language as employed by native speakers, and new research projects following the success of SEASPEAK are expected to provide further evidence in support of this hypothesis.

XIV. The Language of Popularisation

The notion of popularisation has attracted several studies, although their conclusions are not always in agreement.[1] There is a basic consensus, however, as to the role of this process, which is usually identified with the conveyance of specialist knowledge for education or information purposes. The main factor that distinguishes a popularisation from a fully specialized text is the lack of discussion, in the former, of new scientific knowledge added to the discipline's conceptual base. The mere lack of innovative theoretical arguments is not sufficient evidence, however, of a popularisation process. Some genres provide no advancement of disciplinary knowledge and yet constitute instances of specialized communication: among these are the review article, the abstract and other genres whose function is mainly informative or comparative of different methodological approaches or research projects. The main criterion for distinguishing between fully specialized texts and popularisations is the different audience targeted. Popularisation in fact addresses not an expert group within the discipline but an audience of non-specialists. This aspect, however, requires further explanation, for unless it is associated with other criteria, the listing of different audiences may be insufficient to formally characterize the text types involved. This is the flaw undermining Darian's (1982) distinction of genres according to five readership groups:

1. Popular magazines, newspapers	Uneducated layman
2. *Scientific American* and popular books	A reader conversant in the general area (e.g. business, social science)
3. High-school text	Layman – limited general knowledge and technical background information

1 Some of the main studies on the subject are: *Langue française* (1982, issue No. 53), Jacobi (1984a, 1984b), Shinn / Whitley (1985), Myers (1990a, 1990b, 1991, 1994), Valle (1996).

4. Introductory college text

5. Scholarly journal, specialized
   book-length study (e.g., a volume
   on optics)

Layman – educated to college
level of general knowledge
Specialist and advanced graduate
student

(Darian 1982: 29-30)

A satisfactory profile of textual differences is possible instead if we consider not only the audience's competence but also the main purpose of such texts. Publications written primarily for non-specialists operate at no fewer than two different levels: pedagogic texts and popularisations. The former aim to provide students with the 'secondary culture' (Widdowson 1979) expected therefore in the discipline; specialized discourse is presented therefore in 'disciplinary' terms, to equip the reader with conceptual and terminological resources suited to the subject content; terminological features are addressed systematically, removing any ambiguity of the meaning of new expressions appearing in the discourse as a form of training for new specialists. Typical examples of such texts are undergraduate textbooks and instruction manuals. Popularisations target instead a wide reading public and deal with specialized topics in a language close to general discourse and to the layman's everyday experience. The purpose here is chiefly informative and seeks to extend the reader's knowledge rather than develop a secondary conceptual system. Typical forms of this type of discourse are popular scientific magazines, books published for a wide readership, videocassettes and specialized articles in daily newspapers. In popularisations, the illustration of processes and phenomena is less technical – which usually means less specialized terminology. Disciplinary terms are not employed systematically but given occasionally in a way that has been equated to that of citations (Mortureux 1986). The different purposes of various text genres also influence the expository technique employed: while pedagogic material shows a constant tendency to assimilate not only the content but also the language and style of the 'secondary culture', popularisations remain as close as possible to the primary culture and its language, introducing select terms in a way that replicates the semantic content of general language.

1. Popularisation and translation

The information process established by popularisation has often been compared to that of translation. Both of these involve the transformation of a source text into a derived text. It is impossible to conceptualise the target of a translation without a source (Newmark 1981) and, similarly, every popularisation implies the presence of a specialized text. The popularisation process is a kind of redrafting that does not alter the disciplinary content – object of the transaction – as much as its language, which needs to be remodelled to suit a new target audience. In the process, information is transferred linguistically in a way similar to periphrasis or to intralinguistic translation. In the past, periphrasis was generally analysed within the disciplinary boundaries of rhetoric; but today the redrafting phenomena of popularisation are normally investigated by linguists, as part of research into the intricate world of levels and registers associated with different language varieties. Another aspect that suggests this analogy between popularisation and translation is the fact that both processes tend to produce an imperfect equivalence of the source text. A popularised text approximates the content of the original text in the same way as a translation diverges from its source text. Whitley aptly argues:

Any communication of knowledge claims involves an amount of redefinition, which subtly alters them so that the popularisation of true knowledge to a wide audience always results in alterations to it. This is not simply a matter of 'distortion' of the true message, but is rather an inevitable concomitant of translation from one system of discourse to another. The greater the linguistic and cognitive distance between such systems, the more alteration occurs.

(Whitley 1985: 7, my italics)

Approximation increases with the size of the non-specialist audience targeted by the popularisation. This idea is confirmed by Deaglio:

There is an inverse relationship between a concept's degree of popularisation and its precision, so that – if popularising skills are equal – the loss of precision, implication and operational potential of a concept is proportional to the number of people for which it is made comprehensible by simplification.

(Deaglio 1983: 195, my translation)

This phenomenon is also favoured by the widespread use of metaphor and simile in popularising processes. Both techniques establish a direct link with the public's general knowledge, which makes the content easier to identify. See, for example the claim that 'an atom is a miniature solar system', where the analogy provides a tangible interpretative framework for such a highly abstract concept as an atom. However, these techniques sometimes risk ambiguity by suggesting wrong associations, unconnected to the idea conveyed by the metaphor or simile.

2. Linguistic features of popularisation

The linguistic redrafting techniques employed in the process of popularisation have not so far attracted much research; for this reason, the results achieved are still partial. Some analyses, however, have produced interesting findings; among these, Halliday's (1987) study of a text redrafted in a more concise and compact way, with far less lexical density, from a piece of legal writing (cf. Chapter 3 of this volume). Another feature that distinguishes the wording of popularisations, as compared to specialized texts, is the absence among the former of linguistic expressions realising the communicative functions of argumentative texts, with their stress on authorial contribution in terms of conceptual innovation. In this genre there is no explicit authorial reference to the illocutionary value of utterances, with the omission of such expressions as 'I have called', 'I mean by this', 'I argue that', 'My contention is', 'Quite legitimately we regard', 'I have to point out', etc. The lack of such expressions in popularisations is no remarkable feature, however, because the prevalently informative nature of the genre implies less emphasis on the argumentative function. Of greater interest are the different linguistic realisations of the same communicative function in each text type. The remaining part of this chapter will focus therefore on the expressive strategies employed in popularisations and specialized discourse to convey a rhetorical function (i.e. Definition) that is

widely present in both genres. The aim is to identify any special textual differences – whether qualitative or quantitative – that deserve attention.

3. Definition in popularised texts

Within the different text types, the use of terminology and definition varies greatly. This is because the occurrence of discipline-specific terms is very high in fully specialized texts (i.e. those produced by specialists for their peers) and in pedagogic specialized texts (written for training new specialists). Fewer technical terms are employed instead in popularisations, where discourse relies chiefly on words drawn from general language. Also the use of definition varies quantitatively, though not in the same way as terminology. Indeed, the defining process is employed repeatedly in pedagogic texts because the author's purpose is to illustrate, systematically, not only the conceptual but also the linguistic organisation within a given discipline. Terminological definition is not so pervasive in specialized discourse, where the meaning of certain expressions is taken for granted within the disciplinary community; definition is not very common even in popularisations, which involve a far more limited use of specialized lexis. In specialized discourse, the author only employs definition when a new term is coined, or new meanings are attached to existing words within the discipline or borrowings from other disciplines or the general language. This produces highly subjective utterances, which in English take on the following appearance (examples from Keynes 1936 / 1973):

(1) We shall call the unit in which the quantity of employment is measured the labour-unit, and the money-wage of a labour-unit we shall call the wage-unit. (p. 41)

(2) My definition is, therefore, as follows: ... (p. 15)

(3) The classical postulates do not admit of the possibility of the third category, which I shall define below as 'involuntary' unemployment (p. 6)

(4) This state of affairs we shall describe as 'full' employment, both 'fictional' and 'voluntary' unemployment being consistent with 'full' employment thus defined. (pp. 15-16)

The first-person subject never appears in definitions from popularisations, whose purpose is informative rather than innovative or interpretative. A further structural distinction between genres regards the way authors refer to third-party definitions. In specialized discourse, the locutor generally names the person who codified a term or rephrased a concept with new words, as in the following examples:

(5) 'The classical economists' was a name invented by Marx to cover Ricardo and James Mill and their predecessors, that is to say for the founders of the theory which culminated in the Ricardian economics. (p. 3)

(6) An increase in the marginal physical productivity of labour in the wage-goods industries (to use Professor Pigou's convenient term for goods upon the price of which the utility of the money-wage depends) [...] (p. 7)

(7) The national dividend, as defined by Marshall and Professor Pigou, measures the volume of current output of real income and not the value of output or money-income. (pp. 37-8)

In popularisations, on the other hand, definitions are seldom linked to their originator; impersonal or passive forms are the norm:[2]

(8) First, individual genes are involved in multiple biological processes – a widely accepted concept known as pleiotropy. (SA2, 22)

(9) A term that has been applied to describe what has happened to many metropolitan areas of the U.S. since World War II is 'doughnut complex'. In many places the hole in the doughnut is a decaying central city and a ring is a prosperous and growing suburban region. (SA1, 40)

Another way for the locutor to refer vaguely to the origin of a definition is to mention an entire disciplinary category or profession, as illustrated below, where the words astronomers and scientists are employed:

2 Quotations of English popularisations are taken from the following sources: D.: Discover, August 1982 / PS: Popular Science, August 1982 / SA1: Scientific American, August 1980 / SA2: Scientific American, April 1993.

(10) Many galaxies, including the Milky Way, have powerful energy sources at their centers that blaze radiation over the entire electromagnetic spectrum, including infrared. 'The machine', as astronomers call it, can outshine (in infrared alone) millions or even billions of suns, even though it is only about the size of the solar system. (D, 42)

(11) [...] relict being the name scientists give to an animal or a plant that was once widespread but is now confined to a small area. (D, 51)

In a pedagogic setting, definitions typically display the following forms:

- P is named x. (where x is the specialized term and P its periphrasis)
- x is P.

These patterns, however, are not very frequent in popularisations. The most common defining technique in such texts is juxtaposition – a process whereby the specialized term is followed by its periphrasis, with the two separated by a comma, dash or parenthesis. See, for example, the following cases:

(12) More than 99 per cent of atmospheric water vapor is in the troposphere, the turbulent, weather-producing zone below about 40,000 feet. (D, 40)

(13) That year, John Vane, a British researcher, discovered that aspirin interferes with the synthesis of prostaglandins – short-lived, hormone-like substances made by most cells in the body after an injury. (D, 19)

(14) A one-inch-diameter rod of super-pure glass is heated and drawn down to a fiber just 125 microns (five thousandths of an inch) thick. (PS, 72)

A variant of this technique is to offer a periphrasis followed (after a comma, parenthesis or dash) by the equivalent specialized term:

(15) After 25 years of repeated review, an injectable synthetic hormone, Depo-Provera, was approved by the Food and Drug Administration last year. (SA2, 8)

(16) The single light beam is pulsed at a rate of 140 million bits (megabits) per second – a multiplexed signal of individual speech channels with full clarity and no cross talk. (PS, 72)

These two patterns reflect two different logical processes – one inductive and the other deductive. In the former, the author first presents the features of the concept conveyed by the term and later gives the term itself, while in the latter the definition follows the term. The two sentences below clearly illustrate this difference:

(17) Certain atoms are unstable combinations of the fundamental particles. These atoms spontaneously emit rays and are thereby transmitted into atoms of different chemical identity. This process, *radioactivity*, was discovered by Henry Becquerel in 1896. (Darian 1982: 37)

(18) In a process called binaural fusion, the brain compares information received from each ear and then translates the differences into a unified perception of a single sound issuing from a specific region of space. (SA2, 34)

The juxtaposition of term and periphrasis establishes a semantic equivalence resembling the typical structure of a monolingual dictionary, where each entry is followed by its periphrasis. Dictionaries also place definitions immediately after a term, using an elliptic expression that usually omits the copula. An example is the following comparison of the same term (*microtubule*) as defined in two different texts: the former is an encyclopaedic definition, contrasting with a popularised version:

(19) MICROTUBULE One of the hollow tubelike filaments found in certain cell components, such as cilia and the mitotic spindle, and composed of repeating subunits of the protein tubulin. (The *McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms* 1978)

(20) Among these structures are the cellular organelles known as microtubules: long, slender tubes that function, sometimes as fairly rigid rods and sometimes as rather flexuous ropes, to maintain and change the shape of the cell or its component parts, to move material through the cell and to separate the duplicated sets of chromosomes in the course of cell division. (SA1, 59)

(21) It has developed a computer-based system of pipeline surveillance, called on-line inspection, using robots which pass through the pipes without impeding

Very often the two parts of a definition are joined by such metalinguistic items as *called, known as, that is, meaning* and others in the same class:

the gas flow, in order to certify that there will be no catastrophic failure of the system through the effects of ageing. (SA1, 26)

(22) Physicists are betting that a Bose condensation of hydrogen can be achieved at a balmy 30 microkelvins, that is, 30 millionths of a degree above absolute zero. (SA2, 14)

(23) Consequently, the M.I.T. experimenters had to work with atoms in special states known as Rydberg states. An atom in a Rydberg state has almost enough energy to lose an electron completely. (SA2, 26)

Sometimes the specificity of a term is emphasised by a special expression – e.g. the adverb *technically* in the sentence below – signalling its divergence from the layman's definition offered earlier:

(24) The barn owl extracts directional information from disparities in the timing and the intensity of signals reaching the two ears – technically called interaural time differences and interaural intensity differences. (SA2, 34)

Another frequent option is the disjunctive conjunction *or*:

(25) Polymer chemistry has entered a new dimension. Most polymers are nothing more than identical molecular units, or monomers, that are linked together to form one-dimensional chains. (SA2, 11)

(26) But it did increase as the speaker was moved up or down from eye level – at least when the sound included waves of frequencies higher than three kilohertz, or 3,000 cycles per second. (SA2, 35)

Sometimes the use of juxtaposition makes the definition too concise and fails to explain the exact function of a given item. This occurs in the text below, where the clotting function of platelets is not mentioned in the brief definition between two dashes and has to be reconstructed by the reader from the text that follows:

(27) When released from platelets – minute discs in the blood – a prostaglandin called thromboxane makes them clump together, which helps initiate clotting. (D, 19)

The specialized term is very often given in inverted commas or in italics, so as to stress its divergence from general language. In the text below, for instance, the term *mono-mode* is inserted through this

device into the first part of the text, and only later explained and related to the term *multi-mode*:

(28)   An ultra-fine thread of glass using 'mono-mode' light transmission does the trick. [...] Such a microscopic core is just large enough to conduct a single ray of light carrying a pulsed digital signal, reflected inside the fiber in a shallow zigzag line. In contrast, a multi-mode fiber carries several hundred different ray paths or modes. (PS, 72)

Elsewhere the use of inverted commas points to the prescriptive value (Naess 1981) attached to the defining process. By this device, the popularised text indicates that from that point onwards the term given in quotation marks should be understood as suggested by the periphrasis. The stipulative value of inverted commas for defining purposes is confirmed by the fact that later in the text the term is used without any marking, as the author takes its semantic value for granted. An example of this process is given below:

(29)   Linde's theory builds on a concept he helped to devise called 'inflation'. It holds that just after the big bang, when the universe was fantastically small, hot and dense, it underwent a prodigious growth spurt before settling down to its current, relatively slow rate of expansion. [...] Early versions of inflation, which relied heavily on particle physics, called for highly specialized, 'fine-tuned' conditions. (S42, 10)

The reader's textual competence and reading strategies are often exploited by popularisers, who are then free to select alternative defining techniques. See, for instance, how the following text signals the hormonal nature of estrogen and progesterone through the deictic item *these*:

(30)   The scientists simultaneously administer estrogen and progesterone to prevent postmenopausal symptoms, but they say the amounts of these hormones are significantly lower than those found in birth control pills. (S42, 8)

Interestingly, the definition may contain metalinguistic items that encode an authorial comment of the periphrasis. Such comments show that the populariser is aware of the semantic approximation inherent in the suggested periphrasis, which is perceived as an imperfect

rendering of the original term. This is signalled by such expressions as *a little, like, a sort of*:

(31)   The brain is a sort of computer.

(32)   En fait le neurone fonctionne un peu comme un clapet. (Authier 1982: 42)

The great need for clarity inherent in popularisations often leads authors to rely on figurative language taken from everyday experience; the lower specificity of such referents is emphasised in the text by such expressions as *in other words* or *so-called*:

(33)   If your switches are fast enough, you can double the clock rate and end up with two independent machines running on the same hardware 'in parallel' - actually interleaved in time. At 100 megahertz, in other words, the BSOC develops a split personality. (S42, 86)

(34)   Because they raid nests, female sticklebacks represent the greatest source of stress for the males (apart from birds). [...] The stress has a so-called femme fatale effect on the male. (S42, 55)

These expressions occur almost exclusively in popularisations, since the degree of approximation is incompatible with the nature of fully specialized texts. Sometimes approximation is signalled by the use of inverted commas. This orthographic device is often employed to connotate similes and metaphoric uses of language, which attempt to establish a concrete relationship between the specialized term and a word from the general language. The following utterances illustrate this type of metalinguistic process:

(35)   In addition, the reactor core would be surrounded by a blanket of depleted uranium which, by absorbing neutrons, could be used to 'breed' new plutonium, for reuse in the core. (S41, 28)

(36)   Pruteen is an animal feedstuff grown continuously in the world's biggest fermenter – 600 tons and over 60 ft. tall – by feeding a bacterium, *Methylophilus methylotrophus*, on methanol made from natural gas. Bacteria yield 50-80 per cent protein. But in order to maintain a high yield of the organism ICI finds it has to inject the 'fuel' very uniformly, at 3,000 points throughout the fermenter. (S41, 28)

Elsewhere popularisers strive to strengthen their informative role by adding etymological or explicative remarks that encourage the receiver to think about given terms and their choice. See, for example, the following cases:

(37) John J. Mulvihill discussed clinical observations bearing on 'ecogenetics', his term (by analogy with pharmacogenetics, the study of genetic differences in response to drugs) for the study of genetic variation in response to an environmental agent. (*S41*, 73)

(38) Actually it is halted: the drug arrests cell division at a particular stage, prometaphase, by destroying the fibrillar apparatus (called the spindle because of its shape) that moves the two sets of chromosomes apart in preparation for making two cells out of one. (*S41*, 59)

(39) The interlopers are called 'sneakers' because of their deceptive ways. (*S42*, 54)

(40) [...] the three-spine stickleback, *Gasterosteus aculeatus*, a small temperate-zone fish about the length of one's middle finger. The name comes from the three sharp dorsal spines that help to protect the fish from its numerous predators. (*S42*, 50)

Besides these linguistic remarks – whose value is both informative and pedagogic – there are others showing that popularisers act not only in a technical but also in a critical way. An example of this is the populariser's reluctance to acknowledge the coinage *gigamolecules* in the following text:

(41) Stupp's sheet polymers are among the largest molecules ever made by chemists, winning them the unattractive moniker 'gigamolecules'. (*S42*, 11)

The critical opportunities available and sometimes carefully exploited by popularisers also in definitions are confirmed by the passage below. Because of the informative rather than argumentative nature of this text, the author opts for cautious expressions exemplified by the dubitative adverb *perhaps*:

(42) Perhaps more novelty lies in what we call empty space. The quantum vacuum is no simple void but a plenum, crammed by fluctuating fields and transient particles. (*S42*, 95)

There are also other ways an author can remark critically on the terms and concepts he is popularising. The wording of a periphrasis is open to variants that affect the reader's perception of its specialized content. This does not necessarily imply a reliance on undesirable periphrastic procedures but adds emphasis to certain properties or features of the object defined. Commenting on a sentence from an economics popularisation that paraphrases the term *inflation* as 'a constant increase in prices', Mortureux (1986) points out that the definition is both simplified and deviant because the term has acquired different meanings over the centuries. For example:

1. Inflation is an excess of global demand as related to global supply.
2. Inflation is an increased mass of circulating money or monetary revenues.
3. Inflation is a general rise in price levels.
4. Inflation is the loss of value of a national currency.

(Bernier, B. 1971, *Macroéconomie* 1, Dunod)

Each of these definitions attributes to inflation a concept which, if not mistaken, is to say the least incomplete. Such phenomena help to account for the indirect clues affecting readers' perception of the disciplinary content conveyed. Any alteration of such content, therefore, is not (as often argued) an accidental consequence of approximation but the effect of a clear strategy deliberately chosen by the populariser.

XV. Conclusions

This investigation of specialized discourse warrants a few concluding remarks on its specific nature. Compared to general language, specialized languages do not display the constraints and simplifications sometimes attributed to them but possess all the lexical, phonetic, morphosyntactic, rhetorical and textual resources of general language. Such resources are normally employed (and at times even hyper-exploited) in the textualisation of specialized discourse.

As for the norms governing phonetic, morphosyntactic, textual and lexical construction, there seem to be no specific rules that distinguish this type of discourse from general language. At times, admittedly, lexical, syntactic and textual patterning diverges from the standard, but this is generally an exception to the rule or remains limited to a given discipline or genre. There are also cases of constant recourse to rules unknown in general language or coined deliberately for specific communicative purposes (cf. Chapter 13 on SEASPEAK) but such phenomena imply the presence of *special* rather than specialized languages. Specialized discourse is usually distinguishable for its specific lexis, which diverges from the standard vocabulary employed in general discourse, and for the higher frequency of certain rules and items occurring in standard language. Moreover, its lexical formation and the greater use of specific syntactic and textual devices signal the diffuse presence of principles that may be considered typical of such varieties.

The fundamental principles identified in this book are: more marked monoreferentiality of lexis, the adoption of a non-emotive tone, and great precision and coherence in terminological choice, not only within a single text or authorial macrotext but also across whole disciplinary traditions, for maximum expressive clarity coupled with formal and semantic transparency. Another prevalent aspect is conciseness, which leads specialists to use the shortest possible wording through compacted lexical items, syntactic rules allowing shorter sentential forms, and sometimes the omission of phrasal

elements that can be easily inferred from the context. This highly denotative tendency also directs authors towards a generally neutral, objective tone based on such depersonalising devices as passivisation and impersonalisation. Specialists also lay great importance on textual organisation, which is adapted as far as possible to the different text models and genres with their sequence of sections and macroacts. Another concern is the logical cohesion and coherence of discourse, achieved by means of anaphoric and thematic devices that help emphasise textual content and clarify communicative purpose. The need for immediate identification of the principal purpose of a text means that specialists conform their discourse to a number of standardised models that clearly encode the desired rhetorical function.

Other phenomena observed in general language occur with equal, higher or lower frequency in specialized discourse, generally in line with the aforesaid criteria. For example, the need to steer clear of ambiguity and confusion accounts for the highly denotative nature of terminology and the strong tendency to coin neologisms to define new concepts or redefine old ones. Moreover, the need for maximum interpretative clarity sometimes makes specialists avoid the (inherently polysemous) verbal code and realise meaning symbolically, which also allows a condensation and schematisation of discourse into formulae, graphs, diagrams, etc. The pursuit of extreme expressive economy produces greater lexical concentration within sentences, as compared to standard language, and a more frequent use of nominalisation, acronyms and other resources available in each language for greater conciseness.

The criticism of excessive obscurity and intricacy sometimes attributed to specialized discourse is therefore unfounded, as one of the specialist's top priorities is the pursuit of precision and transparency. Of course, clarity is self-evident only to members of the disciplinary community, because specialized discourse stands in a class of its own as a language for communication among experts; it is pointless, therefore, to expect that such codes will be easily understood by the layman. A different matter is the use of specialized texts addressed to a wider public, as in popularisations and textbooks, where excessive use of technical language and implied conceptual knowledge is inappropriate.

The analysis presented in this book demonstrates that although all specialized languages share certain basic elements, there is no generalised application of their criteria in all fields or at all levels of specificity. Every speciality displays pragmatic criteria which, according to the author's communicative needs and disciplinary epistemology, result in an adaptation or a violation of its constitutive principles. Every surface variation is a consequence of specific choices made by the author in the semantic and pragmatic construction of discourse. Among the varieties targeted here, legal discourse is the most distinctive, also for its prevalence of the performative aspect. In no other field does language help establish precise cities and obligations, with failure to comply usually inferring a criminal offence. The leading principle in this case is clarity, which prevails over all other considerations, to the point that syntactic rules may be violated for the sake of avoiding ambiguity.

Specialized texts for argumentative purposes are another interesting illustration of the peculiarities of specialized discourse. Here the persuasive element often leads authors to ignore such prominent aspects as lack of emotion and objectivity whenever a violation is instrumental to the text's perlocutory meaning. To make his case stronger, the writer often resorts to a highly personal register which contradicts the typical impersonal stance of specialized discourse. When conventional drafting norms do not suit the author's heuristic method, the latter is modified and moulded according to his needs, with considerable consequences for textual linearity. Even figurative language and metaphor are often deployed for increased persuasion; the purpose of course is to maximise expressive force rather than improve either the aesthetic or literary value of the text, which as a rule are not a concern in professional discourse.

The essential criteria of specialized discourse remain, however, important signposts for textualisation. When they conflict with other authorial requirements, the result is a hierarchy of normative criteria, with the criteria related to specialized use taking precedence over the others: in legal discourse, for example, the main priority is clarity, which comes before any other requirement (even syntactic appropriacy). Also in other disciplines and genres there are frequent inconsistencies between the ideational and pragmatic plane of

discourse, so that one of the two tends to prevail according to the locutor's perception of priorities.

Specialized texts are therefore the outcome of authorial choices made to solve the tension between semantic and pragmatic considerations as the communicative activity unfolds; in this sense, textualisation is similar in specialized and general language. The distinctive quality of specialized discourse stems from the particular semantic and pragmatic values it encodes, which in turn depend on the specificity of content and on knowledge shared by the interlocutors within a professional community. The specialist does not only act subjectively but in compliance with norms that are widely accepted (at times only implicitly) by other practitioners in the field.

Appendices

Appendix 1

5   Date   *1st September 2002*

     Parties   1. The Landlord   *Mr [name]*
                                    Vincent Road
10   *Isleworth*
                                    Middlesex TW7 4LT

             AGREEMENT
         for letting furnished dwellinghouse
           on an assured shorthold tenancy
           under Part I of the Housing Act 1988

10   2. The Tenant   *Mr [name]*
                                Granwood Court
                                The Grove
                                Isleworth
                                Middlesex

15   Property   The dwellinghouse situated at and being
                 Granwood Court
                 The Grove
                 Isleworth
                 Middlesex
                 (2 bedroom flat – fully furnished)
20   Together with the Fixtures Furniture and Effects therein and more
                 particularly specified in the Inventory thereof signed by the parties

     Term   A term certain of *six* months from *1.9.2002*

     Rent   £600.00 *(six hundred pounds)*   (subject
25   nevertheless as hereinafter provided) for every *month* of the Term

     Payable   in advance by equal *monthly* payments on *1st day of each month*
                 First payment to be made on the *1st* day of   *September 2002*
                 terminating on 28th February 2003

Appendices

1. The Landlord lets and the Tenant takes the Property for the Term at the Rent payable as above

2. This agreement is intended to create an assured shorthold tenancy as defined in section 20 of the Housing Act 1988 and the provisions for the recovery of possession by the Landlord in section 21 thereof apply accordingly

3. Where the context admits—

   (a) 'The Landlord' includes the persons for the time being entitled in reversion expectant on the tenancy.

   (b) The 'Tenant' includes the persons deriving title under the Tenant

   (c) References to the Property include references to any part of the Property and to the Fixtures and Effects or any of them

4. The Tenant will—

   (a) Pay the Rent at the times and in the manner specified

   (b) Pay for all gas and electric light and power which shall be consumed or supplied on or to the Property during the tenancy and the amount of the water rate charged in respect of the Property during the tenancy and the amount of all charges made for the use of the telephone on the Property during the tenancy or a proper proportion of the rental or other recurring charges to be assessed according to the duration of the tenancy

   (c) Not damage or injure the Property or make any alteration in or addition to it

   (d) Preserve the Fixtures Furniture and Effects from being destroyed or damaged and not remove any of them from the Property

   (e) Yield up the Property at the end of the tenancy in the same clean state and condition as it was in the beginning of the tenancy and make good pay for the repair or replace all such items of the Fixtures Furniture and Effects as shall be broken lost damaged or destroyed during the tenancy (reasonable wear and damage by fire excepted)

   (f) Leave the Furniture and Effects at the end of the tenancy in the rooms or places in which they were at the beginning of the tenancy

   (g) Pay for the washing (including ironing or pressing) of all linen and for the washing and cleaning (including ironing and pressing) of all counter-panes blankets and curtains which shall have been soiled during the tenancy (the reasonable use thereof nevertheless to be allowed for)

   (h) Permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at reasonable hours in the daytime to enter the Property to view the state and condition thereof

   (i) Not sublet or part with possession of the Property without the previous consent in writing of the Landlord

   (j) Not carry on on the Property any profession trade or business or let apartments or receive paying guests on the Property or place or exhibit any notice board or notice on the Property or use the Property for any other purpose than that of a strictly private residence

   (k) Not do or suffer to be done on the Property anything which may be or become a nuisance or annoyance to the Landlord or the Tenants or occupiers of any adjoining premises or which may vitiate any insurance of the Property against fire or otherwise or increase the ordinary premium for such insurance

Appendices

   (l) Permit the Landlord or the Landlord's agents at resonable hours in the daytime within the last twenty-eight days of the tenancy to enter and view the Property with prospective tenants

5. Provided that if the Rent or any instalment or part thereof shall be in arrear for at least fourteen days after the same shall have become due (whether legally demanded or not) or if there shall be a breach of any of the agreements by the Tenant the Landlord may re-enter on the Property and immediately thereupon the tenancy shall absolutely determine without prejudice to the other rights and remedies of the Landlord

6. The Landlord agrees with the Tenant as follows—

   (1) To pay or indemnify the Tenant against all rates assessments and outgoings in respect of the Property (except the water rate and except charges for the supply of gas or electric light and power or the use of any telephone)

   (2) That the Tenant paying the Rent and performing the agreements on the part of the Tenant may quietly possess and enjoy the Property during the tenancy without any lawful interruption from the Landlord or any person claiming under or in trust for the Landlord

   (3) To return to the Tenant any rent payable for any period while the Property is rendered uninhabitable by fire the amount in case of dispute to be settled by arbitration

   A returnable security of £600.00 which will be held by the Landlord against breach of contract and further against breakage or damage in or to the property and will be fully recovered to the Tenant on termination of tenancy

7. This Agreement shall take effect subject to the provisions of section 11 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1985 if applicable to the tenancy

AS WITNESS the hands of the parties hereto the day and year first above written

SIGNED by the above-named

In the presence of

[*Signatures*]

Appendix 2

NAME AGREEMENT

This Agreement, effective as of *the first day of April, 2003* between *Dale Johnson Ryder Warren*, an Association organized and existing under the laws of Switzerland ("Grantor"), its successors and assigns, and *DJRW Johnson Ryder Simpson & C,* its successors and assigns ("Member Firm")

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, Grantor is the owner of the name *"Dale Johnson Ryder Warren"* and certain service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A, and has been granted the right to use any one or more of the component names *"DALE"*, *"JOHNSON"*, *"RYDER"* or *"WARREN"* alone or in combination with other names or marks (which names and marks are referred to collectively as, "Service marks");

WHEREAS, the Service Marks are used by the Member Firm in connection with the providing and advertising of services in the fields of auditing and accounting, taxation, management consulting and other related areas and are sometimes used on products related to such services (which trademark uses are intended to be included within the definition of Service Marks as used herein);

WHEREAS, the Member Firm may wish to enter into sublicense agreements ("Sublicense Agreements") with sublicensee firms ("Sublicensees") pursuant to the terms and conditions of this Agreement;

WHEREAS, Grantor and the Member Firm wish to ensure the greatest possible protection of the Service Marks and recognize that effective defense of the Service Marks makes it desirable that the Service Marks be subject to uniform policies of protection and quality standards;

WHEREAS, the Member Firm recognizes that the value and goodwill of the Service Marks will be protected and enhanced by the license granted hereby and any Sublicense Agreements entered into pursuant to the terms and conditions of this Agreement;

WHEREAS, the parties recognize that the relationship between the Member Firm and other Member Firms is governed by the *DJRW* Statutes effective as of *April 1, 2002* ("*DJRW Statutes*") and any regulations thereto; and

WHEREAS, it is understood that additional firms will in the future become signatories to the *DJRW* Statutes; it is agreed by the parties hereto that such other firms that subsequently become signatories to the *DJRW* Statutes must also become signatories to an agreement similar in form and substance to this Agreement in order to use the Service Marks; and

WHEREAS, *Johnson Ryder Archer & C, Johnson Ryder Chester & C, Dale Johnson Nelson & C, Dale Johnson Stokes & C.* Grantor, *Johnson Ryder International* a partnership, and *Dale Ryder Warren* an association, have entered into the Component License Agreement, effective as of *April 1, 2002* ("Component License Agreement"), a copy of which is attached hereto as Appendix B (without Appendices A and B attached thereto which are Appendix A hereto and a form of this Agreement) and made a part hereof as if fully recited herein and to which the Member Firm agrees to be fully bound as if originally a party thereto;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth the parties agree as follows:

1. Grant of License
   a. Upon the terms and conditions hereinafter set forth Grantor hereby grants to the Member Firm, and such Member Firm hereby accepts, the exclusive right, license and privilege to use the Service Marks in connection with its providing and advertising of services in the field of management consulting and other related

areas and on products related to such services. Such grant shall also include the right of the Member Firm to enter into Sublicense Agreements with Sublicensees, subject to prior approval by the Executive Committee of Grantor (as defined in the *DJRW* Statutes) of the terms and conditions of the Sublicense Agreement and of the acceptability of the Sublicensee.

b. The license hereby granted shall be effective as of the date set forth above and shall continue indefinitely unless terminated in accordance with the provisions hereof.

2. Terms of Payment

The Member Firm has paid to Grantor the sum of *S.fr.1* and Grantor hereby acknowledges receipt thereof as full payment for this license. The parties also acknowledge the mutual promises made herein as consideration for this Agreement.

3. Grantor's Title and Protection of Grantor's Rights

a. The Member Firm has become a signatory to the *DJRW* Statutes and hereby agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement and the attached Component License Agreement, and recognizes and acknowledges Grantor's exclusive ownership and title to the name "*Dale Johnson Ryder Warren*" and the service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A, and the value of the associated goodwill, subject to the limits set forth in the Component License Agreement. The Member Firm agrees that it will not challenge the title or any rights of Grantor in and to the name "*Dale Johnson Ryder Warren*" and the service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A, or make any claim or take any action adverse to Grantor's ownership therein, or challenge the validity of this Agreement. The Member Firm further agrees that its every use of the name "*Dale Johnson Ryder Warren*" and the service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A shall inure to the benefit of Grantor, subject to the terms and conditions of the Component License Agreement.

b. The Member firm agrees, both during and after the term of this Agreement, to cooperate fully and in good faith with Grantor and to execute such documents as Grantor reasonably requests for the purpose of securing and preserving Grantor's rights in and to the name "*Dale Johnson Ryder Warren*" and to the service marks set forth in the attached Appendix A.

c. The Member Firm shall notify Grantor in writing, of any infringement, imitation, passing off or use of the Service Marks or any confusingly similar marks by any third party which comes to its attention. The Member Firm, as licensee, shall have the right to decide whether or not proceedings shall be brought by the Member Firm against any such third parties. In the event that it is decided that action should be taken against any such third party, the Member Firm may take such action in its own name. If the Member Firm chooses not to bring proceedings against any such third party, Grantor shall be entitled to bring proceedings in the name of the Member Firm and, in such event, the Member Firm agrees to cooperate fully with Grantor to whatever extent it is necessary or appropriate to prosecute such action. All legal costs shall be borne by the Member Firm and any damages awarded shall be equitably apportioned on the basis of damages suffered and costs incurred.

4. Professional Standards and Quality Control

The Member Firm shall conduct its affairs in a manner consistent with the professional standards set forth in the *DJRW* Statutes and any regulations thereto to the end of maintaining the prestige and high professional standards associated with the Service Marks.

5. Withdrawal and Termination

a. In the event of the Member Firm's withdrawal from or termination of membership in Grantor under Article 4 of the *DJRW* Statutes:

(i) such withdrawal or termination shall in no way affect the right of Grantor to use and/or license the Service Marks;

(ii) such withdrawal or termination shall terminate the Member Firm's right to continue using the Service Marks, or any marks or names that are likely to cause confusion therewith, except the Member Firm shall be permitted to use the name *"Dale Johnson Ryder Warren"* or any trade name in use at that time that includes any one or more of the components thereof, alone or in combination with other names, in connection with work in progress as a trade name for signature purposes for twelve (12) months following the effective date of such withdrawal or termination and, in the event the Member Firm is terminated, it shall also be permitted to continue to use the Service Marks for six (6) months after the date of termination;

(iii) the Member Firm shall assign to any successor firm chosen by Grantor ("Successor Firm") all common law rights in and all registrations for the Service Marks or any names or marks likely to cause confusion therewith, and all goodwill associated therewith. Such Successor Firm, upon becoming a member firm of Grantor and upon execution of a license agreement similar in form and substance to this Agreement, shall immediately have the right to use the Service Marks during the period within which the Member Firm continues to have any right to use the Service Marks under Section 5.a.(ii) hereof if such use is not prohibited in the jurisdiction of intended use.

b. In the event of dissolution of Grantor the parties hereto agree that the licenses granted herein shall terminate immediately. The parties agree that after such dissolution the Member Firm may only retain those name and service mark common law rights, registrations, or applications therefor, which do not derive from grants received under the *DJRW* Statutes, the Component License Agreement or this Agreement. The parties specifically agree that in the event of such dissolution they shall be restored to their positions before execution of such agreements, except

that the parties may mutually agree to a phase out period in connection with any such licensed rights.

6. Financial, Statistical and Accounting Information
a. The Member Firm shall supply memorandum accounting information to the International Office of *Dale Johnson Ryder Warren* for the purpose of preparation of a financial and statistical information statement relating to Grantor. Such information will be supplied at least annually as directed by the Executive Committee of Grantor.
b. The Executive Committee of Grantor shall have the right to an inspection or review of the accounting records of the Member Firm.

7. Applicable Law
The relationship between the signatories to this Agreement shall be governed by the terms and conditions set forth herein. In all respects the applicable law shall be the law of Switzerland, except that the validity of the Service Marks in any jurisdiction shall be governed by the law of the jurisdiction in which rights relating to the Service Marks are sought to be exercised.

8. Validity
a. The language of this Agreement and all documents, meetings and proceedings relating thereto shall be English.
b. No modifications, amendments or supplements to this Agreement shall be effective for any purpose unless duly recorded in writing and signed by authorized representatives of all parties hereto or their successors or assigns.
c. If any provisions of this Agreement should be invalid or inoperable, this shall not affect the validity of the remaining provisions of this Agreement. The parties hereto shall in such event use their best efforts to substitute for any invalid or inoperable provision a valid or operable arrangement which achieves results as nearly equivalent as possible to the invalid or inoperable provision.

Appendices

9. Relationship of Parties

Nothing contained herein shall be construed to place the parties in the relationship of agents, partners or joint venturers, and the Member Firm shall have no power to obligate or bind Grantor in any manner whatsoever.

10. No Assignment or Mortgage

This Agreement and all rights and duties hereunder are personal to the Member Firm and shall not, without the written consent of Grantor, be assigned, mortgaged or otherwise encumbered by the Member Firm or by operation of law. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Member Firm may enter into Sublicense Agreements with Sublicensees with the prior approval of the Executive Committee of Grantor pursuant to the terms and conditions of Section 1 of this Agreement.

11. Arbitration

Any dispute arising out of this Agreement between the Member Firm and any other Member Firm, any Sublicensee, any Representative Firm, Grantor or Grantor's administrative entities which cannot be resolved amicably shall be resolved without resort to proceedings outside Grantor. If during the term or after dissolution of Grantor, any such dispute shall not be so resolved, such dispute shall be settled by arbitration in Zurich, Switzerland, in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules then in force. The parties agree that no courts in any jurisdiction shall have jurisdiction over any such disputes, that such arbitration decision shall be final and binding upon the parties and shall be enforceable against any party hereto without any declaration of enforceability in any jurisdiction in which such party is located.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have caused this Agreement to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

Dated: *[Date and signatures]*

References

Algeo, John 1980. Where Do All the New Words Come From?. *American Speech* 55, 264-77.

Algeo, John / Algeo, Adele 1994. Among the New Words. *American Speech* 69/4, 398-410.

Algeo, John (ed.) 1991. *Fifty Years Among the New Words*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Altieri Biagi, Maria Luisa 1974. Aspetti e tendenze dei linguaggi della scienza. In *Italiano d'oggi: lingua non letteraria e lingue speciali*. Trieste: Lint, 67-110.

Andersson, Bo / Gunnarsson, Britt-Louise 1995. A Contrastive Study of Text Patterns in Conference Abstracts. In Wårvik *et al.* (eds), 139-148.

Aronoff, Mark / Anshen, Frank 1998. Morphology and the Lexicon: Lexicalization and Productivity. In Spencer / Zwicky (eds), 237-248.

Asprey, Michèle M. 1991. *Plain Language for Lawyers*. Leichhardt (NSW): The Federation Press.

Atkinson, Dwight 1992. The Evolution of Medical Research Writing from 1735 to 1985. The Case of the *Edinburgh Medical Journal*. *Applied Linguistics* 13/4, 337-74.

Atkinson, J.Maxwell / Drew, Paul 1990. *Order in Court: the Organization of Verbal Behaviour in Judicial Settings*. London: Macmillan.

Austin, John L. [1]1962, [2]1975. *How to Do Things with Words*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Authier, Jacqueline 1982. La mise en scène de la communication dans des discours de vulgarisation scientifique. *Langue française* 53, 34-47.

Bacchielli, Rolando (ed.) 1994. *Historical English Word-Formation*. Urbino: Quattro Venti.

Bacon, Francis 1620. *Novum Organum*. In *The Works of Francis Bacon*. Spedding, James S. / Ellis, Robert Leslie / Heath,

Douglas Denon (eds). 14 vols. London: Longmans; rpt New York 1968.

Baker, Mona / Francis, Gill / Tognini Bonelli, Elena (eds) 1993. *Text and Technology: In Honour of John Sinclair*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Barber, Charles 1976. *Early Modern English*. London: Deutsch.

Barber, Charles 1985. Some Measurable Characteristics of Modern Scientific Prose. In Swales, 3-14. (¹1962) *Gothenburg Studies in English* 14, 21-43.

Bares, Karel 1972. The Morphological Features of Technical English and their Presentation in Teaching. In Fried (ed.), 128-141.

Bargiela-Chiappini, Francesca / Nickerson, Catherine 1999. *Genres, Media and Discourses*. London: Longman.

Barrass, Robert 1978. *Scientists Must Write*. London: Chapman and Hall.

Bartolic, Ljerka 1988. *Technical English in Electronics and Electrical Power Engineering*, Zagreb: Skolska Knjiga.

Bauer, Laurie 1983. *English Word-Formation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Baumann, Klaus-Dieter 1990. LSP Research and Lexical Semantics. *Fachsprache* 12/1-2, 18-28.

Bazerman, Charles 1984. Modern Evolution of the Experimental Report in Physics: Spectroscopic Articles in *Physical Review*, 1893-1980. *Social Studies of Science* 14, 163-196.

Bazerman, Charles 1988. *Shaping Written Knowledge: The Genre and Activity of the Experimental Article in Science*. Madison: The University of Wisconsin Press.

Bazerman, Charles 1994, *Constructing Experience*. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press.

Bazerman, Charles / Paradis, James (eds) 1991. *Textual Dynamics of the Professions: Historical and Contemporary Studies of Writing in Professional Communities*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.

Beccaria, Gian Luigi / Marello, Carla (eds) 2002. *La parola al testo*. Alessandria: Edizioni dell'Orso.

Belotti, Ulisse 2000. Aspects of Word-formation in *Jargon Watch*. *Linguistica e Filologia* 12, 131-154.

Bentham, Jeremy 1843. *The Works of Jeremy Bentham*. Bowring. I. (ed.). Edinburgh: William Tait.

Bentley, Richard 1699. *Dissertations upon the Epistles of Phalaris*. London.

Berkenkotter, Carol / Huckin, Thomas C. 1995. *Genre Knowledge in Disciplinary Communication: Cognition / Culture / Power*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 1987. Textual-mapping in British Legislative Writing. *World Englishes* 6/1, 1-10.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 1993. *Analysing Genre: Language Use in Professional Settings*. New York: Longman.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 1994. Cognitive Structuring in Legislative Provisions. In Gibbons (ed.), 136-155.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 1994. Intertextuality in Legal Discourse. *The Language Teacher* 22/11, 13-39.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 2002a. LSP and Professional Practice: Negotiating Disciplinary Conflicts. In Gotti *et al.* (eds), 41-57.

Bhatia, Vijay K. 2002b. A Generic View of Academic Discourse. In Flowerdew (ed.), 21-39.

Bhatia, Vijay K. / Candlin, Christopher N. / Gotti, Maurizio (eds) 2003. *Legal Discourse in Multilingual and Multicultural Contexts: Arbitration Texts in Europe*. Bern: Peter Lang.

Birch, Thomas 1756. *History of the Royal Society of London*. 4 vols. London: Millar.

Black, Max 1962. *Models and Metaphors*. Ithaca (NY): Cornell University Press.

Bloch, Maurice (ed) 1975. *Political Language and Oratory in Traditional Society*. London: Academic Press.

Bloomfield, Leonard 1939. *Linguistic Aspects of Science*. *International Encyclopedia of Unified Science* 4/4. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Blount, Thomas 1656. *Glossographia*. London: Thomas Newcomb; rpt Menston: The Scholar Press, 1969.

Boas Hall, Marie 1965. *Robert Boyle on Natural Philosophy*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Boas Hall, Marie 1991. *Promoting Experimental Learning*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Bolinger, Dwight 1975. *Aspects of Language*. New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.

Bondi, Marina 1999. *English Across Genres*. Modena: Il Fiorino.

Bowers, Frederick 1989. *Linguistic Aspects of Legislative Expression*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.

Boyd, Richard 1979. Metaphor and Theory Change: What is 'Metaphor' a Metaphor for?. In Ortony (ed.), 356-408.

Boyle, Robert 1661. *The Sceptical Chymist*. Moelwyn-Hughes, E.A. (ed.). London: Dent, 1967.

Boyle, Robert 1772. *The Works*. Birch, Thomas (ed.). 6 vols. London: J. & F. Rivington; rpt. Hildesheim: G. Olm, 1965.

Brekke, M. / Anderson, Ø. / Dahl, T. / Myking, J. (eds) 1994. *Applications and Implications of Current LSP Research*. Bergen: Fagbokforlaget.

Brockriede, W. 1975. Where is Argument?, *Journal of the Forensic Association* 2, 179-182.

Brook, George L. 1973. *Varieties of English*. London: Macmillan.

Brown, Penelope / Levinson, Stephen 1987. *Politeness: Some Universals in Language Usage*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Bullokar, William 1616. *An English Expositor*. London; rpt. Menston: The Scholar Press, 1967; facsimile Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1971.

Busch-Lauer, Ines-A. 1995. Textual Organization in English and German Medical Abstracts. In Wärvik *et al.* (eds), 175-186.

Butler, Christopher S. 1975. Syntactic Analysis of German Chemical Texts. *International Review of Applied Linguistics* 13/4, 320-326.

Camden, William 1605. *Remaines Concerning Britain*. London.

Candlin, Christopher N. / Hyland, Ken 1999. Introduction: Integrating Approaches to the Study of Writing. In Candlin / Hyland (eds), 1-17.

Candlin, Christopher N. / Leather, Jonathan H. / Bruton, Clive J. 1976. Doctors in Casualty: Applying Communicative Competence to Components of Specialist Course Design. *International Review of Applied Linguistics* 14/3, 245-272.

Candlin, Christopher N. (ed.) 2002. *Research and Practice in Professional Discourse*. Hong Kong: Hong Kong University Press.

Candlin, Christopher N. / Hyland, Ken (eds) 1999. *Writing: Texts, Processes and Practices*. London: Longman.

Carlen, Pat 1976. *Magistrates' Justice*. London: Martin Robertson.

Castorina, Giuseppe G. / Villa, Vittoriana (eds) 1993. *La fortuna della Retorica*. Chieti: Métis.

Cawdrey, Robert 1604. *A Table Alphabeticall*. London; rpt. Menston: The Scholar Press, 1966.

Cecioni, Cesare G. 1986. La terminologia inglese del diritto di proprietà. In Gutia (ed.), 21-31.

Chafe, Wallace 1982. Integration and Involvement in Speaking, Writing and Oral Literature. In Tannen (ed.), 35-54.

Chafe, Wallace / Danielewicz, Jane 1987. Properties of Spoken and Written Language. In Horowitz / Samuels (eds), pp. 83-113.

Charleton, Walter 1650. *Deliramenta Catarrhi: Or, the Incongruities, Impossibilities, and Absurdities Couched under the Vulgar Opinion of Defluxions*. London.

Charleton, Walter 1680. *Enquiries into Human Nature. In VI. Anatomic Praelections*. London.

Charrow, Robert P. / Charrow, Veda R. 1979. Making Legal Language Understandable: A Psycholinguistic Study of Jury Instructions. *Columbia Law Review* 79/7, 1306-1374.

Charrow, Veda R. 1982. Linguistic Theory and the Study of Legal and Bureqcratic Language. In Obler / Menn (eds), 81-101.

Charrow, Veda R. / Crandall, Judith A. 1978. *Legal Language: What is it and What Can we Do about it?* Arlington (Virginia): American Institutes for Research and Center for Applied Linguistics.

Chick, Victoria 1983. *Macroeconomics after Keynes*, Oxford: Philip Allan.

Christie, Frances / Martin, James R. (eds) 1997. *Genre and Institutions: Social Processes in the Workplace and School*. London: Continuum.

Christy, Nicholas P. 1979. English is our Second Language. *New England Journal of Medicine* 300, 979-981.

Cicourel, Aaron, 1992. The Interpretation of Community Contexts: Examples from Medical Encounters. In Duranti / Goodwin (eds), 291-310.

Cockeram, Henry ¹1623, ²1626. The English Dictionarie or An Interpreter of Hard English Words. London; rpt. Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1970.

Coleman, Julie / Kay, Christian J. (eds) 2000. Lexicology, Semantics and Lexicography. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Coles, Elisha 1676. An English Dictionary. London: Samuel Crouch; rpt. Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1973.

Comrie, Bernard 1985. Tense. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Cortese, Giuseppina 2002. My 'Doxy' is not your 'Doxy': Doing Corpus Linguistics as Collaborative Design. In Cortese / Riley (eds), 367-414.

Cortese, Giuseppina (ed.) 1996. Tradurre i linguaggi settoriali. Torino: Cortina.

Cortese, Giuseppina / Riley, Philip (eds) 2002. Domain-specific English. Bern: Peter Lang.

Coserin, Eugenio / Geckeler, Horst 1974. Linguistics and Semantics. In Sebeok (ed.), 103-171.

Coulthard, Malcolm / Ashby, Margaret 1976. A Linguistic Description of Doctor-Patient Interviews. In Wadsworth / Robinson (eds), 69-88.

Coulthard, Malcolm (ed.) 1994. Advances in Written Text Analysis. London: Routledge.

Cowie, Claire / Dalton-Puffer, Christiane 2002. Diachronic Word-Formation and Studying Changes in Productivity over Time: Theoretical and Methodological Considerations. In Díaz Vera (ed.), 410-437.

Cowley, Abraham 1656. Pindarique Odes. London.

Crystal, David / Davy, Derek 1969. Investigating English Style. London: Longman.

Danet, Brenda 1980. Language in the Legal Process. Law and Society Review 14/3, 445-564.

Danet, Brenda 1990. Language and Law: An Overview of Fifteen Years of Research. In Giles / Robinson (eds), 537-59.

Danet, Brenda / Hoffman, Kenneth B. / Kermish, Nicole C. 1980. Threats to the Life of the President: An Analysis of Linguistic Issues. Media Law and Practice 1/2, 180-190.

Darian, Steven 1982. The Role of Definitions in Scientific and Technical Writing: Forms, Functions, and Properties. In Høedt et al. (eds), 27-47.

De Marchi, Neil (ed.) 1988. The Popperian Legacy in Economics. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

De Quincey, Thomas 1823. Review of Malthus' The Measure of Value Stated and Applied. London Magazine, December 1823; rpt. in De Quincey, Thomas 1897. Collected Writings. London: A. & C. Black, 9, 32-36.

De Stasio, Clotilde / Gotti, Maurizio / Bonadei, Rossana (eds) 1990. La rappresentazione verbale e iconica: valori estetici e funzionali. Milan: Guerini.

Deaglio, Mario 1983. Per l'Economia, in Il linguaggio della divulgazione. Milano: Reader's Digest, 195-199.

Dear, Peter 1985. Totius in verba: Rhetoric and Authority in the Early Royal Society. Isis 76, 145-61.

Di Pietro, Robert J. (ed.) 1982. Linguistics and the Professions. Norwood (N.J.): Ablex.

Díaz Vera, Javier E. 2002. A Changing World of Words. Amsterdam: Rodopi.

Digges, Thomas 1571. A Geometrical Practical Treatize Named Pantometria. London.

Dijk, Teun A. van 1977. Text and Context. London: Longman.

Dijk, Teun A. van 1980. Macrostructures. Hillsdale (N.J.): Erlbaum.

Dodson, C. F. 1974. A Restricted Language: The Language of Air Traffic Control. Ph.D. Dissertation. University of Leeds.

Drake, Stillman 1957. Discoveries and Opinions of Galileo. Garden City (N.Y.): Doubleday.

Drake, Stillman 1960. Introduction to Galileo Galilei's Discourse on Bodies in Water. Translation by Thomas Salusbury edited by Stillman Drake. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, ix-xxxvi.

Drake, Stillman 1967. Introduction to Thomas Salusbury's Mathematical Collections and Translations. Facsimile edition. London: Dawson of Pall Mall / Los angeles: Zeitlin & Ver Brugge, 1-27.

Dressen, Dacia F. / Swales, John M. 2000. 'Geological Setting / Cadre Géologique' in English and French Petrology Articles: Muted Indications of Explored Places. In Trosborg (ed.), 57-76.

Duranti, Alessandro / Goodwin, Charles (eds) 1992. Rethinking Context: Language as an Interactive Phenomenon. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Duszak, Anna (ed.) 1997. Culture and Styles of Academic Discourse. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

Eatwell, John / Milgate, Murray / Newman, Peter (eds) 1987. The New Palgrave. London: Macmillan.

Eco, Umberto 1989. The Open Work. Cambridge (Mass.): Harvard University Press.

Ehrenberg-Sundin, Barbro 2002. The Swedish Government Promotes Clear Drafting. Clarity 47, 3-9.

Ellegard, Alvar 1978. The Syntactic Structure of English Texts. Gothenburg Studies in English 43. Gothenburg University.

Enright, Dennis J. (ed.) 1985. Fair of Speech. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Evangelisti Allori, Paola (ed.) 1998. Academic Discourse in Europe: Thought Processes and Linguistic Realisation. Rome: Bulzoni.

Finegan, Edward 1982. Form and Function in Testament Language. In Di Pietro (ed.), 113-120.

Finkenstaedt, Thomas / Leisi, Ernst / Wolff, Dieter (comp.) 1970. A Chronological English Dictionary. Heidelberg: Carl Winter.

Firth, John Rupert 1957. Papers in Linguistics 1934-1951. London: Oxford University Press.

Fisiak, Jacek / Krygier, Marcin (eds) 1998. Advances in English Historical Linguistics. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

Flowerdew, John (ed.) 2002. Academic Discourse. Harlow: Pearson Education.

Fried, Vilém (ed.) 1972. The Prague School of Linguistics and Language Teaching. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Frye, Northrop 1957. Anatomy of Criticism, Princeton (NJ): Princeton University Press.

Fulwood, William 1568. The Enemie of Idleness. London.

Galilei, Galileo 1623. Il Saggiatore. Engl. transl. by Stillman Drake The Assayer. In Discoveries and Opinions of Galileo. Garden City (N.Y.): Doubleday, 1957.

Galilei, Galileo 1632. Dialogo sopra i due Massimi Sistemi del Mondo. Florence. L. Sosio (ed.), Turin: Einaudi, 1982.

Garzone, Giuliana 1996. Performatività e linguaggio giuridico: una proposta di classificazione. Milan: Centro Linguistico Università 'Bocconi'.

Garzone, Giuliana 2001. Deontic Modality and Performativity in English Legal Texts. In Gotti / Dossena (eds), 153-173.

Gauthier, Marie-Thérèse / Masselin, J. 1973. L'enseignement des langues de spécialité à des étudiants étrangers. Langue Française 17, 112-123.

Gerbert, Manfred 1970. Besonderheiten der Syntax in der technischen Fachsprache des Englischen. Halle: Saale.

Ghadessy, Mohsen / Webster, Jonathan 1988. Form and Function in English Business Letters: Implications for Computer-based Learning. In Ghadessy (ed.), 110-127.

Ghadessy, Mohsen (ed.) 1988. Registers of Written English. London: Pinter.

Ghadessy, Mohsen (ed.) 1993. Register Analysis: Theory and Practice. London: Pinter.

Giannoni, Davide S. 2002. Worlds of Gratitude: A Contrastive Study of Acknowledgement Texts in English and Italian Research Articles. Applied Linguistics 23/1: 1-31.

Gibbons, John (ed.) 1994. Language and the Law. London: Longman.

Gilbert, G. Nigel / Mulkay, Michael 1984. Opening Pandora's Box. A Sociological Analysis of Scientific Discourse. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Giles, Howard / Robinson, W. Peter (eds) 1990. Handbook of Language and Social Psychology. Chichester: Wiley.

Gläser, Rosemarie 1979. Fachstile des Englischen. Leipzig: Verlag Enzyklopädie, VEB.

Gläser, Rosemarie 1991. The LSP Genre Abstract Revisited. ALSED LSP Newsletter 13, 3-10.

Gläser, Rosemarie 1995. Linguistic Features and Genre Profiles of Scientific English. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang.

Görlach, Manfred 1991. Introduction to Early Modern English. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Gotti, Maurizio 1990. Main Features of the Lexis of Computer Science. *Studi Italiani di Linguistica Teorica e Applicata* 19/1, 49-60.

Gotti, Maurizio 1991. *I linguaggi specialistici: caratteristiche linguistiche e criteri pragmatici*. Florence: La Nuova Italia.

Gotti, Maurizio 1993a. Malthus and the Definition of Economic Terms. In Hart (ed.), 254-264.

Gotti, Maurizio 1993b. Rhetoric and the Language of Economists: McCloskey's Proposal. In Castorina / Villa (eds), 249-258.

Gotti, Maurizio 1994a. The *General Theory* as an Open-ended Work. In Marzola / Silva (ed.), 155-191.

Gotti, Maurizio 1994b. *Ware* – From Compounding to Suffixation. In Bacchielli (ed.), 205-217.

Gotti, Maurizio 1996a. *Robert Boyle and the Language of Science*. Milan: Guerini.

Gotti, Maurizio 1996b. Il linguaggio della divulgazione: problematiche di traduzione intralinguistica. In Cortese (ed.), 217-235.

Gotti, Maurizio 1997. The 'Hard Words' of Levins' Dictionary. In Hickey / Puppel (ed.), 483-501.

Gotti, Maurizio 1998. John Bullokar's 'Termes of Art'. In Fisiak / Krygier (eds), 63-78.

Gotti, Maurizio 1999. *The Language of Thieves and Vagabonds. 17th and 18th Century Canting Lexicography in England*. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer Verlag.

Gotti, Maurizio 2000a. Lexical Choices in an Early Galilean Translation. In Coleman / Kay (eds), 87-101.

Gotti, Maurizio 2000b. The Experimental Essay in Early Modern English. *European Journal of English Studies* 4/2, 145-163.

Gotti, Maurizio 2002a. The Development of English as a Language for Specialized Purposes'. In Cortese / Riley (eds), 65-86.

Gotti, Maurizio 2002b. The Linguistic Contribution to the Analysis of Professional Discourse. In Candlin (ed.), 421-440.

Gotti, Maurizio / Dossena, Marina (eds) 2001. *Modality in Specialized Texts*. Bern: Peter Lang.

Gotti, Maurizio / Heller, Dorothee / Dossena, Marina (eds) 2002. *Conflict and Negotiation in Specialized Texts*. Bern: Peter Lang.

Green, Jonathan 1991. *Neologisms – New Words Since 1960*. London: Bloomsbury.

Greenbaum, Sidney / Leech, Geoffrey / Svartvik, Jan (eds) 1979. *Studies in English Linguistics*. London: Longman.

Gregory, Michael / Carroll, Susanne 1978. *Language and Situation: Language Varieties in their Social Contexts*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

Guilbert, Louis 1973. La spécificité du terme scientifique et technique. *Langue française* 17, 5-17.

Gunnarsson, Britt-Louise 1998. Academic Discourse in Changing Context Frames: The Construction and Development of a Genre. In Evangelisti Allori (ed), 19-42.

Gustafsson, Marita 1975. Some Syntactic Properties of English Law Language. *Publications of the Department of English* 4. Turku: University of Turku.

Gustafsson, Marita 1984. The Syntactic Features of Binomial Expressions in Legal English. *Text* 4/1-3, 123-141.

Gustafsson, Marita (ed.) 1996. *Essays & Explorations: A 'Freundschrift' for Liisa Dahl*. Turku: University of Turku.

Gutia, Ioan (ed.) 1986. *Atti del Convegno 'Lingue straniere per scopi speciali'*. Roma: Università degli Studi 'La Sapienza'.

Hacking, Ian 1983. *Representing and Intervening*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hall, Rupert 1961. English Scientific Literature in the Seventeenth Century. In O'Malley / Hall (eds), 23-46.

Halliday, Michael A.K. 1973. *Explorations in the Functions of Language*. London: Arnold.

Halliday, Michael A.K. 1978. *Language as Social Semiotic*. London: Arnold.

Halliday, Michael A.K. 1987. Spoken and Written Modes of Meaning. In Horowitz / Samuels (eds), 55-82.

Halliday, Michael A.K. 1988. On the Language of Physical Science. In Ghadessy (ed), 162-177.

Halliday, Michael A.K. 1990. The Construction of Knowledge and Value in the Grammar of Scientific Discourse with Reference to Charles Darwin's *The Origin of Species*. In De Stasio et al. (eds.), 57-80.

Halliday, Michael A.K. ²1994. *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. London: Arnold.

Halliday, Michael A.K. / Hasan, Ruqaiya 1976. *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.

Halliday, Michael A.K. / McIntosh, Angus / Strevens, Peter 1964. *The Linguistic Sciences and Language Teaching*. London: Longman.

Halliday, Michael A.K. / Martin, Jim R. 1993. *Writing Science: Literacy and Discursive Power*. London: Falmer Press.

Hart, David (ed.) 1993. *Aspects of English and Italian Lexicology and Lexicography*. Rome: Bagatto Libri.

Hayashi, Tetsuro 1978. *The Theory of English Lexicography, 1530-1791*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

Head, Richard 1673. *The Canting Academy*. London: Printed by F. Leach for Mat. Drew.

Henderson, Willie 1982. Metaphor in Economics. *Economics* 18/80, 147-153.

Hepworth, G. R. 1978. *A Functional Description of Discourse for EST*. MA Thesis. Utah State University.

Herbert, A. J. 1965. *The Structure of Technical English*. London: Longman.

Herzog, R. 1971. Gegenwärtige Tendenzen in der terminologischen Wortbildung. In *Mitteilungsblatt für Dolmetscher und Übersetzer* 17/9-10, 3-6.

Hesse, Mary 1966. *Models and Analogies in Science*. Notre Dame: Notre Dame University Press.

Hickey, Raymond / Puppel, Stanislav (ed.) 1997. *Language History and Linguistic Modelling*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

Hiltunen, Risto 1984. The Type and Structure of Clausal Embedding in Legal English. *Text* 4/1-3, 107-121.

Hiltunen, Risto 1990. *Chapters on Legal English*. Helsinki: Suomalainen Tiedeakatemia.

Hiltunen, Risto 2001. 'Some Syntactic Properties of English Law Language': Twenty-five Years after Gustafsson (1975). In Hiltunen et al. (eds), 53-66.

Hiltunen, Risto / Battarbee, Keith / Peikola, Matti / Tanskanen, Sanna-Kaisa (eds) 2001. *English in Zigs and Zags*. Turku: University of Turku.

Hooke, Robert 1665. *Micrographia*. London: Royal Society.

Høedt, Jørgen / Lundquist, Lita / Picht, Heribert / Qvistgaard, Jacques (eds) 1982. *Pragmatics and LSP*. Copenhagen: The Copenhagen School of Economics.

Hoey, Michael 1979. *Signalling in Discourse*, Discourse Analysis Monographs, 6, ELR, Birmingham University.

Hoffmann, Lothar 1979. The Linguistic Analysis and Teaching of LSP in the German Democratic Republic. *ALSED-LSP Newsletter* 2/3, 2-12.

Hoffman, Lothar 1984. Seven Roads to LSP. *Special Language – Fachsprache* 6/1-2, 28-38.

Hogben, Lancelot 1969. *The Vocabulary of Science*. London: Heinemann.

Horowitz, Rosalind / Samuels, S. Jay (eds.) 1987. *Comprehending Oral and Written Language*. San Diego: Academic Press.

Houghton, Bernard 1975. *Scientific Periodicals*. London: Clive Bingley.

Hübler, Axel 1990. On Metaphors Related to the Stock Market: Who Lives by Them?. In De Stasio et al. (eds), 383-392.

Hübler, Axel 1997. English Stock Market Metaphors – Worldwide. In Ramisch / Wynne (eds.), 109-119.

Huddleston, Rodney D. 1971. *The Sentence in Written English*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hughes, Geoffrey 1988. *Words in Time*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Hunston Susan 1993a. Evaluation and Ideology in Scientific Writing. In Ghadessy (ed.), 57-73.

Hunston Susan 1993b. Professional Conflict: Disagreement in Academic Discourse. In Baker et al (eds), 115-134.

Hunston Susan 1994a. Evaluation and Organization in a Sample of Written Academic Discourse. In Coulthard (ed.), 191-218.

Hunston Susan 1994b. Modal Meanings in the Structure of Argumentation. In Brekke et al. (eds), 619-629.

Hunston Susan / Thompson, Geoffrey (eds) 2000. *Evaluation in Text*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Hunter, Paul J. 1990. Robert Boyle and the Epistemology of the Novel. *Eighteenth-Century Fiction* 2/4, 275-91.

Hutchins, John 1977. On the Structure of Scientific Texts. *University of East Anglia Papers in Linguistics* 5, 18-39.

Hyland, Ken 1998. *Hedging in Scientific Research Articles*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Hyland, Ken 1999. Disciplinary Discourses: Writer Stance in Research Articles. In Candlin / Hyland (eds), 99-121.

Hyland, Ken 2000. *Disciplinary Discourses: Social Interactions in Academic Writing*. London: Longman.

Hyland, Ken 2001. Definitely a Possible Explanation: Epistemic Modality in Academic Argument. In Gotti / Dossena (eds), 291-310.

Hyland, Ken 2002. Directives: Argument and Engagement in Academic Writing. *Applied Linguistics* 23/2, 215-239.

Hyland, Ken / Hamp-Lyons, Liz 2002. EAP: Issues and Directions. *Journal of English for Academic Purposes* 1/1, 1-12.

Illingworth, Valerie 1985. The Language of HIGH TECH. *English Today* 3, 11-15.

IMCO 1977. *Standard Marine Navigation Vocabulary*. London: Intergovernmental Maritime Consultative Organisation.

Inman, Marianne 1978. Lexical Analysis of Scientific and Technical Prose. In Todd Trimble *et al* (eds), 242-248.

Ivanic, Roz 1998. *Writing and Identity: The Discoursal Construction of Identity in Academic Writing*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Jacobi, Daniel 1984a. Figures et figurabilité de la science dans des revue de vulgarisation. *Langages* 75, 23-42.

Jacobi, Daniel 1984b. Du discours scientifique, de sa reformulation et de quelques usages sociaux de la science. *Langue française* 64, 38-52.

Jakobson, Roman 1960. Linguistics and Poetics. In Sebeok (ed.), 350-377.

Johns, Ann M. 1997. *Text, Role, and Context: Developing Academic Literacies*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Johnson, R. L. / Sager, Juan C. 1980. Standardization of Terminology in a Model of Communication. *International Journal of the Sociology of Language* 23, 81-104.

Jones, Richard F. 1953. *The Triumph of the English Language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Joos, Martin 1961. *The Five Clocks*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and World.

Kastovsky, Dieter 1986. Diachronic Word-Formation in a Functional Perspective. In Kastovsky / Szwedek (eds), I: 409-421.

Kastovsky, Dieter / Szwedek, Aleksander (eds) 1986. *Linguistics across Historical and Geographical Boundaries*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

Kedar, Leah (ed.) 1987. *Power through Discourse*. Norwood (N.J.): Ablex.

Kerling, Johan 1979. *Chaucer in Early English Dictionaries*. The Hague: Martinus Nijhoff.

Keynes, John M. 1936 / 1973. *The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money*. In *The Collected Writings of John Maynard Keynes*, vol. VII. London: Macmillan.

Klamer, Arjo / McCloskey, Donald / Solow, Robert (eds) 1988. *The Consequences of Economic Rhetoric*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Kornai, Janos 1983. The Health of Nations: Reflections on the Analogy Between the Medical Science and Economics. *Kyklos* 36/2, 191-212.

Kronic, David A. 1976. *A History of Scientific & Technical Periodicals*. Metuchen: The Scarecrow Press.

Kučera, Henry / Francis, W. Nelson 1967. *Computational Analysis of Present-Day American English*. Providence: Brown University Press.

Kuhn, Thomas S. 1962. *The Structure of Scientific Revolutions*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Kurzon, Dennis 1984. Themes, Hyperthemes and the Discourse Structure of British Legal Texts. *Text* 4/1-3, 31-55.

Kurzon, Dennis 1986. *It is Hereby Performed...: Explorations in Legal Speech Acts*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Kurzon, Dennis 1989. Language of the Law and Legal Language. In Laurén / Nordman (eds), 283-290.

Kurzon, Dennis 1997. 'Legal Language': Varieties, Genres, Registers, Discourses. *International Journal of Applied Linguistics* 7, 119-139.

Kytö, Merja 1996. *Manual to the Diachronic Part of the Helsinki Corpus of English Texts*. Helsinki: Department of English, University of Helsinki.

Lackstrom, John E. / Selinker, Larry / Trimble, Louis 1970. Grammar and Technical English. In Lugton (ed.), 101-133.

Lackstrom, John E. / Selinker, Larry / Trimble, Louis 1973. Technical Rhetorical Principles and Grammatical Choice. *TESOL Quarterly* 7, 127-136.

Lakoff, George / Johnson, Mark 1980. *Metaphors we Live By*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Landau, Sidney I. 1984. *Dictionaries: The Art and Craft of Lexicography*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Laurén, Christer 2002. The Conflict between National Languages and English as the Languages of Arts and Sciences. In Cortese / Riley (eds), 87-97.

Laurén, Christer / Nordman, Marianne (eds) 1989. *Special Language: From Humans Thinking to Thinking Machines*. Clevedon: Multilingual Matters.

Leech, Geoffrey / Coates, Jennifer 1979. Semantic Indeterminacy and the Modals. In Greenbaum *et al.* (eds), 79-90.

Levine, George (ed.) 1987. *One Culture: Essays in Science and Literature*. Madison: The University of Wisconsin Press.

Lugton, Robert C. (ed.) 1970. *English as a Second Language: Current Issues*. Philadelphia: Center for Curriculum Development.

McCloskey, Donald 1983. The Rhetoric of Economics. *Journal of Economic Literature* 21, 481-517.

McCloskey, Donald 1984. The Literary Character of Economics. *Daedalus* 113/3, 97-119.

McCloskey, Donald 1985. *The Rhetoric of Economics*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.

McCloskey, Donald 1987. Rhetoric. In Eatwell *et al.* (eds), IV: 173-174.

McCloskey, Donald 1988a. Towards a Rhetoric of Economics. In Winston / Teichgraeber (eds), 13-29.

McCloskey, Donald 1988b. Thick and Thin Methodologies in the History of Economic Thought. In De Marchi (ed.), 245-257.

McCloskey, Donald 1988c. The Consequences of Economics. In Klamer *et al.* (eds), 280-293

McConchie, Roderick W. 1988. 'It Hurteth Memorie and Hindreth Learning': Attitudes to the Use of the Vernacular in Sixteenth

Century English Medical Writings. *Studia Anglica Posnaniensia* 21, 53-67.

McConchie, Roderick W. 1992. What were Robert Cawdrey's Hard Words? Learned Terms and *A Table Alphabeticall* (1604). In Pahta *et al.* (eds), 51-58.

MacCormac, Earl R. 1985. *A Cognitive Theory of Metaphor*. Cambridge (Mass.): The Massachusetts Institute of Technology Press.

McDermott, Anne 2002. Early Dictionaries of English and Historical Corpora: In Search of Hard Words. In Díaz Vera (ed.), 197-226.

McKie, Douglas 1979. The Scientific Periodical from 1665 to 1798. In Meadows (ed.), 7-17.

Malthus, Thomas R. 1827. *Definitions in Political Economy*. London; rpt. New York: Kelley, 1963.

Mandler, George / Kessen, William 1959. *The Language of Psychology*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Manten, A. A. 1980. Development of European Scientific Journal Publishing Before 1850. In Meadows (ed.), 1-22.

Martin, James R. 1997. Analysing Genre: Functional Parameters. In Christie / Martin (eds), 3-39.

Marzola, Alessandra / Silva, Francesco (ed.) 1994. *John M. Keynes: Language and Method*. London: Edward Elgar.

Mathew, Theobald 1938. Law-French. *The Law Quarterly Review* 54, 358-369.

Mauranen, Anna 1993. *Cultural Differences in Academic Rhetoric: A Textlinguistic Study*. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang.

Mayer, Felix (ed.) 2001. *Language for Special Purposes: Perspectives for the New Millennium*. Tübingen: Narr.

Meadows, Arthur J. (ed.) 1979. *The Scientific Journal*. London: Aslib.

Meadows, Arthur J. (ed.) 1980. *Development of Science Publishing in Europe*. Amsterdam: Elsevier.

Melander, Björn / Swales, John / Fredrickson, K. 1997. Journal Abstracts from Three Academic Fields in the United States and Sweden: National or Disciplinary Proclivities?. In Duszak (ed.), 251-272.

Mellinkoff, David 1963. *The Language of the Law*. Boston: Little, Brown and Co.

Merlini, Lavinia 1982. Aspetti semantici e pragmatici di un tipo di anafora lessicale nel testo economico inglese, in *La lingua inglese nell'Università*. Bari: Adriatica, 187-198.

Merlini, Lavinia 1983. *Gli atti del discorso economico: la previsione* – *Status illocutorio e modelli linguistici nel testo inglese*. Parma: Zara.

Merlini Barbaresi, Lavinia 1988. *Markedness in English Discourse*. Parma: Zara.

Miller, George A. 1967. *The Psychology of Communication*, New York: Basic Books.

Mirowski, Philip 1988. Shall I Compare thee to a Minkowski-Ricardo-Leontief-Metzler Matrix of the Mosak-Hicks Type? In Klamer *et al.* (eds), 117-145.

Mitrofanova, Olga D. 1973. *Jazyk naučno-techničeskoj literatury*. Moscow: Izd-vo MGU.

Moore, Henry L. 1906. Paradoxes of Competition. *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 20, 211-230.

Mortureux, Marie-Françoise 1986. Enseignement des langues et vulgarisation. *Études de Linguistique Appliquée* 61, 67-77.

Murgia, Stefano / Rizzoni, Giovanni 2002. How Politics can be Used to Improve the Quality of Legislation. *Clarity* 47, 20-22.

Myers, Greg 1989. The Pragmatics of Politeness in Scientific Articles. *Applied Linguistics* 10/1, 1-35.

Myers, Greg 1990a. *Writing Biology: Texts in the Social Construction of Scientific Knowledge*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.

Myers, Greg 1990b. Making a Discovery: Narratives of Split Genes. In Nash (ed.), 102-126.

Myers, Greg 1991. Lexical Cohesion and Specialized Knowledge in Science and Popular Science Texts. *Discourse Processes* 14/1, 1-26.

Myers, Greg 1994. Narratives of Science and Nature in Popularizing Molecular Genetics. In Coulthard (ed.), 179-190.

Myers, Greg 1998. The Genres of Biologists' Writing. In Evangelisti Allori (ed.), 43-54.

Naess, Arne ¹1966, ²1981. *Communication and Argument*, Oslo: Universitets-forlaget.

Nash, Christopher (ed.) 1990. *Narrative in Culture*. London: Routledge.

Nencini Rotunno, Licia / Lasorsa Siedina, Claudia 1988. *Lo stile scientifico. Contributi all'analisi del testo scientifico russo*. Rome: Bulzoni.

Newman, James R. (ed.) 1956. *The World of Mathematics*. New York: Simon and Schuster.

Newmark, Peter 1981. *Approaches to Translation*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Nybakken, Oscar 1959. *Greek and Latin in Scientific Terminology*. Ames: Iowa State University Press.

OED ¹1933. *The Oxford English Dictionary*, Murray, James A.H. / Bradley, Henry / Craigie, W.A. / Onions, C.T. (eds.). Oxford: Oxford University Press; ²1989. Burchfield, Robert W. (ed.). Oxford: Clarendon Press.

OEDS 1980. *A Supplement to the Oxford English Dictionary*. Burchfield, Robert W. (ed.). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

O'Malley, Donald C. / Hall, Rupert A. (eds) 1961. *Scientific Literature in Sixteenth & Seventeenth Century England*. Los Angeles: William Andrews Clark Memorial Library, University of California.

Obler, Loraine K. / Menn, Lise (eds) 1982. *Exceptional Language and Linguistics*. New York: Academic Press.

Opitz, Kurt 1983. The Properties of Contractual Language: Selected Features of English Documentary Texts in the Merchant Marine Field. *Fachsprache* 5/4, 161-169.

Ortony, Andrew (ed.) 1979. *Metaphor and Thought*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Paita, Päivi / Taavitsainen, Irma / Kahlas-Tarkka, Leena (eds.) 1992. '*As Who Say*' – *Mary Happy Returns: Essays in Honour of Saara Nevanlinna*, Helsinki: Helsinki University Press.

Palmer, Frank Robert ¹1979, ²1990, *Modality and the English Modals*. London: Longman.

Pannick, David 1985. The Law. In Enright (ed.), 135-150.

Paradis, James 1987. Montaigne, Boyle, and the Essay of Experience. In Levine (ed.), 59-91.

Patinkin, Don / Leith, J. Clark (eds) 1977. *Keynes, Cambridge and 'The General Theory'*. London: Macmillan.

Pearson, Jennifer 1998. *Terms in Context*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Peirce, Charles S. 1931. *Collected Papers*. Cambridge (Mass.): Harvard University Press.

Perelman, Chaïm / Olbrechts-Tyteca, Lucie 1958. *Traité de l'argumentation. La nouvelle rhétorique*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.

Pettinari, Catherine 1983. The Function of a Grammatical Alternation in Fourteen Surgical Reports. *Applied Linguistics* 4/1, 55-76.

Philips, Susan U. 1987. The Social Organization of Questions and Answers in Courtroom Discourse. In Kedar (ed.), 83-111.

Phillips, Edward 1658. *The New World of English Words*. London; rpt. Hildesheim: Georg Olms, 1969.

Piesse, Edmund L. ⁷1987. *The Elements of Drafting*. Aitken, J.K. (rev.). Sydney: The Law Book Company.

Porter, J. 1992. *Audience and Rhetoric: An Archeological Composition of the Discourse Community*. Englewood Cliffs (NJ): Prentice Hall.

Prior, P. 1998. *Writing / Disciplinarity: A Sociohistoric Account of Literate Activity in the Academy*. Mahwah (NJ): Erlbaum.

Procaccia, Uriel 1979. Readable Insurance Policies: Judicial Regulation and Interpretation. *Israel Law Review* 14/1, 74-103.

Pugh, A. K. / Ulijn, J. M. (eds) 1984. *Reading for Professional Purposes*. London: Heinemann.

Ramisch, Heinrich / Wynne, Kenneth (eds) 1997. *Language in Time and Space*. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag.

Recorde, Robert 1547. *The Vrinal of Phisick*. London.

Riddell, James A. 1974. The Beginning English Dictionaries of the First Half of the Seventeenth Century. *Leeds Studies in English* 7, 117-153.

Riddell, James A. 1983. Some Additional Sources for Early English Dictionaries. *The Huntington Library Quarterly* 46, 223-235.

Ringbom, Håkan *et al.* (eds) 1975. *Style and Text*. Stockholm: Språkförlaget Skriptor AB.

Rissanen, Matti 1975. 'Strange and Inkhorne Tearmes'. In Håkan *et al.* (eds.), 250-262.

Rossini Favretti, Rema / Bondi Paganelli, Marina 1988. *Il testo psicologico*. Bologna: Pitagora.

Rovere, Giovanni 2002. L'articolo zero nel linguaggio giuridico. In Beccaria / Marello (eds.), I: 387-404.

Safire, William 1988. *International Herald Tribune*, 7 November.

Sager, Juan C. / Dungworth, David / McDonald, Peter F. 1980. *English Special Languages*. Wiesbaden: Oscar Brandstetter.

Salager, Françoise 1984. Compound Nominal Phrases in Scientific-Technical Literature: Proportion and Rationale. In Pugh / Ulijn (eds), 136-145.

Salager, Françoise 1990. Discoursal Flaws in Medical English Abstracts: A Genre Analysis per Research- and Text-Type. *Text* 10/4, 365-384.

Salager-Meyer, Françoise 1992. A Text-type and Move Analysis Study of Verb Tense and Modality Distribution in Medical English Abstracts. *ESP Journal* 11/2, 93-113.

Salager-Meyer, Françoise 2000. Rhetorical Evolution of Oppositional Discourse in French Academic Writing. *Hermès* 25, 23-48.

Salager-Meyer, Françoise / Zambrano, Nahirana 2001. The Discourse of Competing Knowledge Claims in Academic Prose. In Mayer (ed.), 474-479.

Salusbury, Thomas 1661 (vol. 1), 1665 (vol. 2). *Mathematical Collections and Translations*. London: William Leybourn.

Sarangi, Srikant / Coulthard, Malcolm (eds) 2000. *Discourse and Social Life*. Harlow: Pearson Education.

Schäfer, Jürgen 1970. The Hard Word Dictionaries: A Re-assessment. *Leeds Studies in English* 4, 31-48.

Schäfer, Jürgen 1980. *Documentation in the O.E.D.: Shakespeare and Nashe as Test Cases*. Oxford: Clarendon.

Schäfer, Jürgen 1989. *Early Modern English Lexicography*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Schmidt, Christian 1983. Malthus et la sémantique économique. *Revue d'économie politique* 93/2, 248-269.

Searle, John R. 1969. *Speech Acts: An Essay on the Philosophy of Language*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Searle, John R. 1979. Metaphor. In Ortony (ed.), 92-123.

Sebeok, Thomas A. (ed.) 1960. *Style in Language*. Cambridge (Mass.): The Massachusetts Institute of Technology Press.

Sebeok, Thomas A. (ed.) 1974. *Current Trends in Linguistics*. The Hague: Mouton.

Shadwell, Thomas 1676. *The Virtuoso*. London.

Shannon, Claude E. / Weaver, Warren 1949. *The Mathematical Theory of Communication*. Urbana (Ill.): The University of Illinois Press.

Shapin, Steven. 1984. Pump and Circumstance: Robert Boyle's Literary Technology. *Social Studies of Science* 14, 481-520.

Sharma, Ram S. 1978. The Teaching of Technical English in the Indian Context. *International Review of Applied Linguistics* 16/2, 157-160.

Shinn, Terry / Whitley, Richard (eds) 1985. *Expository Science: Forms and Functions of Popularisation*. Dordrecht: Reidel.

Simpson, John / Weiner, Edmund (eds) 1993. *Oxford English Dictionary Addition Series*. 2 vols, Oxford: Clarendon.

Sinclair, John 1996. The Search for Units of Meaning. *Textus* 9/1, 75-106.

Sinclair, John / Coulthard, Malcolm 1975. *Towards an Analysis of Discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Slaughter, Mary M. 1982. *Universal Languages and Scientific Taxonomy in the Seventeenth Century*. Cambridge University Press.

Spencer, Andrew / Zwicky, Arnold M. (eds) 1998. *The Handbook of Morphology*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Sprat, Thomas 1667. *A History of the Royal Society of London for the Improving of Natural Science*. London: Martyn; rpt. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1959.

Staminesco, Chantal 2002. The Committee to Simplify Official Language (COSLA). *Clarity* 47, 18-19.

Starnes, De Witt T. / Noyes, Gertrude E. 1946. *The English Dictionary from Cawdrey to Johnson 1604-1755*. Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press; rpt. (with an introduction by Gabriele Stein) Amsterdam: Benjamins, 1991.

Staughton, Justice 1987. Courtly Language. *Counsel* 2/2, 50.

Staughton, Justice 1988. Courtly Language. *Counsel* 3/2, 19-20.

Stein, Gabriele 1985. *The English Dictionary before Cawdrey*. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer Verlag.

Stotesbury, Hilkka 2002. A Study of Interpretation in Critical Writing. In Cortese / Riley (eds), 325-344.

Stevens, Peter 1984. International Maritime English (SEASPEAK). *Special Language – Fachsprache* 6/1-2, 2-9.

Swales, John 1971. *Writing Scientific English*. London: Nelson.

Swales, John 1981. *Aspects of Article Introductions*, Aston ESP Research Reports, 1, Birmingham: Aston University Press.

Swales, John 1985. *Episodes in ESP*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Swales, John 1986. A Genre-Based Approach to Language Across the Curriculum. In Tickoo (ed.), 10-22.

Swales, John 1990. *Genre Analysis*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Swales, John 1998. *Other Floors, Other Voices: A Textography of a Small University Building*, Mahwah (NJ): Erlbaum.

Swift, Jonathan 1726 / 1947. *Gulliver's Travels*. New York: Bonauza.

Taavitsainen, Irma 2001. Evidentiality and Scientific Thought-Styles: English Medical Writing in Late Middle English and Early Modern English. In Gotti / Dossena (eds), 21-52.

Tannen, Deborah (ed.) 1982. *Spoken and Written Language: Exploring Orality and Literacy*. Norwood (NJ): Ablex.

Tarone, Elaine / Dwyer, Sharon / Gillette, Susan / Icke, Vincent 1981. On the Use of the Passive in Two Astrophysics Journal Papers. *The ESP Journal* 1/2, 123-140.

Thompson, Greg / Ye, Yiyun 1991. Evaluation in the Reporting Verbs Used in Academic Papers. *Applied Linguistics* 12, 365-382.

Tickoo, Makhan L. (ed.) 1986. *Language across the Curriculum*. Singapore: SEAMEO Regional Language Centre.

Tiersma, Peter M. 1986. The Language of Offer and Acceptance: Speech Acts and the Question of Intent. *California Law Review* 74/1, 189-232.

Tiersma, Peter M. 1999. *Legal Language*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Todd Trimble, Mary / Trimble, Louis 1978. The Development of EFL Materials for Occupational English: The Technical Manual. In Todd Trimble *et al.* (eds), 74-132.

Todd Trimble, Mary / Trimble, Louis / Drobnic, Karl (eds) 1978. *English for Specific Purposes: Science and Technology*. Oregon State University: English Language Institute.

Toulmin, Stephen E. 1958. *The Uses of Argument*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Trimble, Louis 1985. *English for Science and Technology: A Discourse Approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Trosborg, Anna 1997. *Rhetorical Strategies in Legal Language: Discourse Analysis of Statutes and Contracts*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.

Trosborg, Anna (ed.) 2000. *Analysing Professional Genres*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Tucker, Susie I. (ed.) 1961. *English Examined*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Tulloch, Sara 1991. *The Oxford Dictionary of New Words*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Turnbull, Herbert W. (ed.) 1963. *Correspondence of Isaac Newton*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Turner, John / Nübold, Peter 1981. The Language of Air Traffic Control. *Fachsprache* 3/1, 11-17.

Turner, R. 1980. A Note on 'Special Languages' and 'Specific Purposes'. *ALSED-LSP Newsletter* 4/1, 3.

Valle, Ellen 1996. Representation of the Discourse Community in Scientific and Popular Writing. In Gustafsson (ed.), 157-170.

Varttala, Teppo 2002. Hedging in Scientific Research Articles: A Cross-disciplinary Study. In Cortese / Riley (eds), 141-174.

Vickers, Brian 1985. The Royal Society and English Prose Style: A Reassessment. In Vickers / Struever, 3-76.

Vickers, Brian / Struever, Nancy S. 1985. *Rhetoric and the Pursuit of Truth*. Los Angeles: William A. Clark Memorial Library, University of California.

Vihla, Minna 1999. *Medical Writing: Modality in Focus*. Amsterdam: Rodopi.

Wadsworth, Michael / Robinson, David H. (eds) 1976. *Studies in Everyday Medical Life*. London: Martin Robertson.

Walker, Anne G. 1982. Patterns and Implications of Cospeech in a Legal Setting. In Di Pietro (ed.), 101-112.

Wallace, William D. 1981. How Registers Register: Toward the Analysis of Language Use. *International Review of Applied Linguistics* 19/4, 267-86.

Walton, Douglas N. 1989. *Informal Logic*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Wårvik, Brita / Tanskanen, Sanna-Kaisa / Hiltunen, Risto (eds) 1995. *Organization in Discourse*. Turku: University of Turku.

Webster, John 1677. *The Displaying of Supposed Witchcraft*. London.

Weeks, Fred / Glover, Alan / Strevens, Peter / Johnson, Edward 1984. *SEASPEAK Reference Manual*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Weinrich, Harald 1985, *Wege der Sprachkultur*. Stuttgart: Deutsche Verlag.

Werlich, Egon ¹1976, ²1982. *A Text Grammar of English*, Heidelberg: Quelle & Meyer.

Wermser, Richard 1976. *Statistische Studien zur Entwicklung des englischen Wortschatzes (SAA 91)*. Bern: Francke.

Whitley, Richard 1985. Knowledge Producers and Knowledge Acquirers. In Shinn / Whitley (eds), 3-28.

Widdowson, Henry G. 1979. *Explorations in Applied Linguistics*, Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Wieners-Horst 2002. Editing in the German Parliament. *Clarity* 47, 12-17.

Wilkins, John 1668. *An Essay towards a Real Character and a Philosophical Language*. London. Facs. Menston: Scolar Press 1968.

Williams, Raymond 1976. *Keywords: A Vocabulary of Culture and Society*, London: Fontana / Croom Helm.

Winston, Gordon C. / Teichgraeber, Richard F. III (eds) 1988. *The Boundaries of Economics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Zeitlin, Jacob 1959. Thomas Salusbury Discovered. *Isis* 50/162, 455-458.

Index

Linguistic Insights

Studies in Language and Communication

This series publishes mainly the work of scholars linked to the Centro di Ricerca sui Linguaggi Specialistici (CERLIS) and aims to promote specialist language studies, both in the fields of linguistic theory and applied linguistics. The volumes focus on specific aspects of language use in one or several languages and provide valuable insights into language and communication research. A cross-disciplinary approach is favoured and most European languages are accepted.

The series includes two types of books:

- **Monographs** – featuring in-depth studies on special aspects of language theory, language analysis or language teaching.
- **Collected papers** – assembling papers from workshops, conferences or symposia.

Vol. 1   Maurizio Gotti & Marina Dossena (eds.)
Modality in Specialized Texts. Selected Papers of the
1ˢᵗ CERLIS Conference. 421 pp. 2001.
ISBN 3-906767-10-8. US-ISBN 0-8204-5340-4

Vol. 2   Giuseppina Cortese & Philip Riley (eds.)
Domain-specific English. Textual Practices across
Communities and Classrooms.
420 pp. 2002.
ISBN 3-906768-98-8. US-ISBN 0-8204-5884-8

Vol. 3   Maurizio Gotti, Dorothee Heller & Marina Dossena (eds.)
Conflict and Negotiation in Specialized Texts. Selected Papers
of the 2ⁿᵈ CERLIS Conference. 470 pp. 2002.
ISBN 3-906769-12-7. US-ISBN 0-8204-5887-2

Vol. 4   Maurizio Gotti, Marina Dossena, Richard Dury,
         Roberta Facchinetti & Maria Lima
         Variation in Central Models. A Repertoire of Forms and Types
         of Usage in Middle English and Early Modern English.
         364 pp. 2002.
         ISBN 3-906769-84-4. US-ISBN 0-8204-5898-8

Vol. 5   Stefania Nuccorini (ed.)
         Phrases and Phraseology. Data and Descriptions.
         187 pp. 2002.
         ISBN 3-906770-08-7. US-ISBN 0-8204-5933-X

Vol. 6   Vijay Bhatia, Christopher N. Candlin & Maurizio Gotti (eds)
         Legal Discourse in Multilingual and Multicultural Contexts.
         Arbitration Texts in Europe.
         385 pp. 2003.
         ISBN 3-906770-85-0. US-ISBN 0-8204-6254-3

Vol. 7   Marina Dossena & Charles Jones (eds)
         Insights into Late Modern English
         378 pp. 2003.
         ISBN 3-906770-97-4. US-ISBN 0-8204-6258-6

Vol. 8   Maurizio Gotti
         Specialized Discourse. Linguistic Features and
         Changing Conventions.
         351 pp. 2003.
         ISBN 3-03910-027-0. US-ISBN 0-8204-6263-2

Editorial address:

Prof. Maurizio Gotti   Università di Bergamo, Facoltà di Lingue e Letterature Straniere,
                          Via Salvecchio 19, 24129 Bergamo, Italy
                          Fax: 0039 035 235136, E-Mail: m.gotti@unibg.it